



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

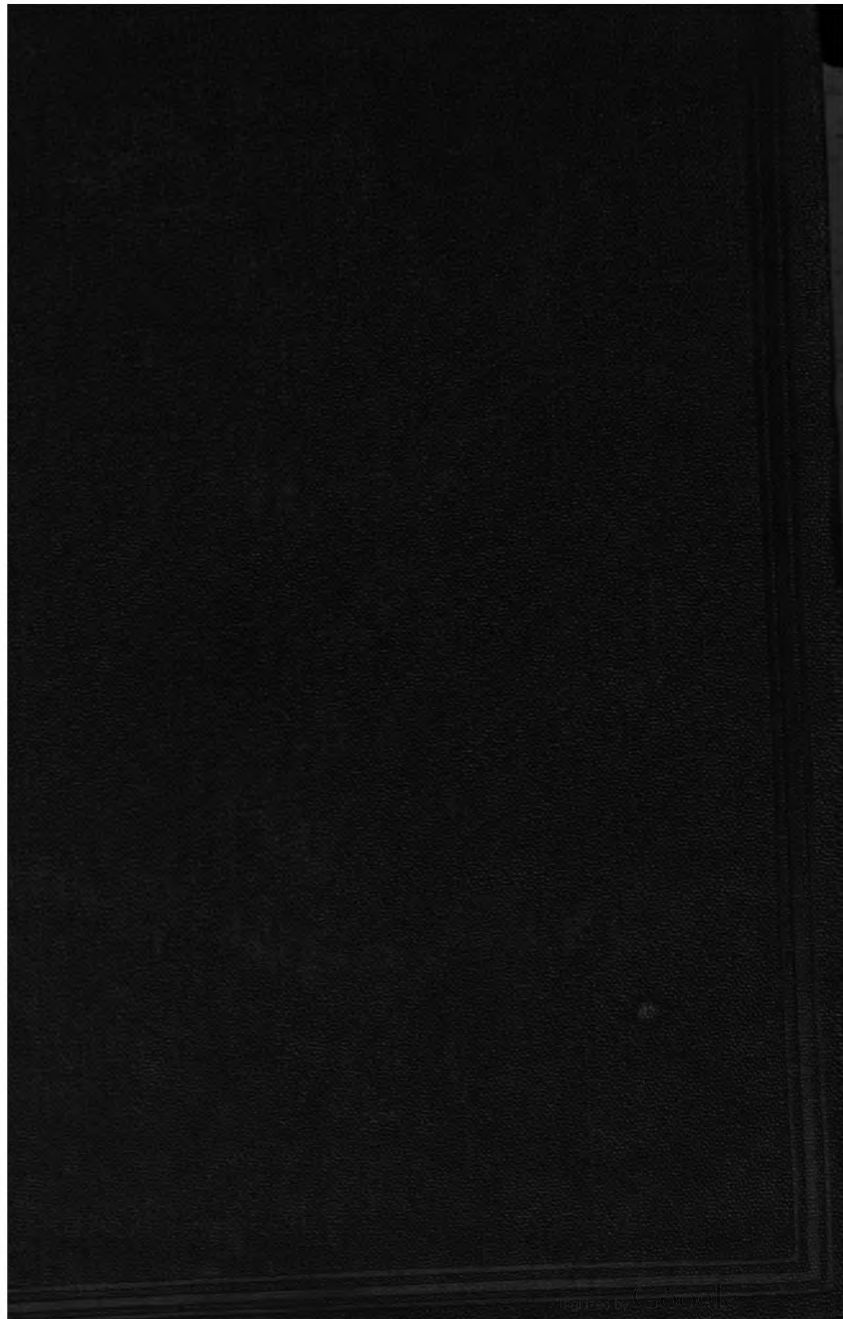
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





600062020G







## **METHOD AND ORGANISATION.**

LONDON: PRINTED BY  
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE  
AND PARLIAMENT STREET

Sanctioned by the Commissioners of National Education, Ireland

---

TEACHER'S MANUAL  
OF  
METHOD AND ORGANISATION

ADAPTED TO THE PRIMARY SCHOOLS OF

GREAT BRITAIN, IRELAND, AND THE COLONIES.

BY

ROBERT ROBINSON,

INSPECTOR OF NATIONAL SCHOOLS,  
IRELAND.



THIRD EDITION.

LONDON:  
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.  
1869.

260. f. 33.



# PREFACE

TO

## THE SECOND EDITION.

---

THIS EDITION has been considerably altered with the view to make it a more valuable text-book for the teacher's guidance. Some of the chapters have been abridged, while others, especially those on arithmetic and geography, have been enlarged—arithmetic, by the addition of numerous questions calculated to test the child's intelligence; and geography, by a description of some plans which have been found effectual in keeping up the interest of the children during the lesson, and in securing a careful revision of the information communicated to them.

In all the chapters, however, will be found alterations both in the wording and arrangement of the rules, &c., which it is hoped will be considered as improvements.

The author has been guided, in making those changes, by the increased experience he has gained as an inspector, and by the numerous opinions on the first edition given to him by the teachers who have made use of it, and by inspectors and other educational authorities in different parts of the country.

To the work is attached a short Appendix on the teaching of music—a subject which, the author regrets to say, is not yet met with sufficiently often as a regular part of the school course.



# EXTRACT FROM PREFACE

TO

THE FIRST EDITION.

---

IN this work I have carefully detailed the most serious of the errors committed by teachers in the management of their schools, and which my long experience as an inspector gave me an opportunity of noticing. Why they are faults is also shown, together with the remedies which have been found best calculated to remove them. The value of these remedies is established by such arguments as appeared to me to be the most suitable, and the principles upon which they depend are explained with sufficient fullness to enable teachers to carry them out intellectually, instead of mechanically, and to vary them judiciously when the special circumstances of their schools require such a course.

My aim has been to mingle theory with practice, but always to keep the former subordinate to the latter, and to produce such a work as would, I hoped, be of benefit even to the most intelligent teachers, and would certainly be practicable by all.

I cannot expect that all advanced by me in the present work will be approved of; but I offer the work to the public as my quota to the general stock of experience out of which more perfect systems will be elaborated at some future time. If it prove the means of enabling any manager to place his



school on a more satisfactory footing ; if it enable any teacher to produce higher and more intelligent results ; or if it draw the attention of those in power to the advancement of that useful body of men in whose hands the primary education of the country is at present placed, I shall feel that the labour devoted to it has not been spent quite in vain.

It is now my pleasing duty to tender my grateful acknowledgments to J. E. Sheridan, Esq., Head Inspector of National Schools, Ireland, for the valuable assistance which he afforded to me in the preparation of this work. Many of the methods described in it, which have been found the most successful in practice, were suggested by him, and it was by his kind encouragement and approval that the work was originally persevered in.

I am also very glad of the opportunity now presented of stating, that I have profited very much by a careful perusal of the Reports of the Inspection staff of Great Britain and Ireland ; and I hope that the extracts which I have largely made from these documents may prove equally serviceable to those for whom my book is intended.

R. ROBINSON.

# CONTENTS.

## CHAPTER I.

### READING.

	PAGE
Definition of good reading . . . . .	1
Defects in reading, enumeration of . . . . .	1
Causes assigned . . . . .	3
Remedies:	
Rule of Imitation . . . . .	4
Hints on carrying out the rule properly . . . . .	5
Rule should be applied early . . . . .	5
Method of teaching the junior classes to group words . . . . .	6
Remedy for rote reading . . . . .	8
Indistinctness, evils of, and remedies for . . . . .	9
Should be taught as a distinct lesson . . . . .	13
Should read poetry . . . . .	13
Reading should be intelligent . . . . .	14
Meaning of words, object of the exercise . . . . .	14
Three faults in teaching it now . . . . .	15
True system described . . . . .	17
Analysis of text necessary . . . . .	21
Interruptions objectionable . . . . .	22
Undue attention to stops . . . . .	23
Length to which each child ought to read . . . . .	25
Means to make the class attentive . . . . .	26

## CHAPTER II.

### LESSON BOOKS.

My remarks apply to any series of Reading Books . . . . .	27
Rules—(1) Question and answer should not be in words of book . . . . .	27
Evils and examples of rote teaching . . . . .	28
(2) Question must relate to <i>subject</i> of sentence, and answer to its <i>predicate</i> . . . . .	29
Marginal notes recommended . . . . .	30

	PAGE
Rules—(3) Expansion of text necessary . . . . .	32
Rambling teaching objected to . . . . .	33
Example of legitimate expansion . . . . .	34
Object cabinet . . . . .	37
„ (4) A Résumé required—value of it . . . . .	38
Dr. Johnson's opinion in its favour . . . . .	39
Hints for carrying it out . . . . .	40
To be written as well as oral . . . . .	41
Preliminary questioning recommended . . . . .	42
„ (5) Lessons should be prepared by teacher—why . . . . .	42
Essentials of good questioning . . . . .	44
Notes of lessons—objections against . . . . .	46
Examples of form recommended . . . . .	47
Special remarks on Special lessons:	
(a) How to deal with the Fables, Stories, &c. . . . .	50
(b) Poetical lessons—memory, &c. . . . .	51
(c) Monosyllabic lessons . . . . .	54

## CHAPTER III.

## SPELLING.

## Oral Spelling:

Old methods of teaching described, defects of . . . . .	57
We do not spell by ear or by rules . . . . .	59
We spell by the eye chiefly—five proofs of this . . . . .	60
Spelling is learned by reading and writing—opinions for . . . . .	61
Phrase spelling explained . . . . .	62
Hints to carry it out . . . . .	63
Distinctness in spelling . . . . .	64
Spelling by syllables, value of . . . . .	64
Spelling books cannot be superseded . . . . .	65

## Written Spelling:

Copying from print . . . . .	66
Dictation exercise—in what it consists . . . . .	67
(1) The passage, selection of, &c. . . . .	68
(2) The writing, paper recommended . . . . .	71
(3) Marking the errors, plan for . . . . .	74
(4) Correcting these errors, value of . . . . .	76
(5) Tests after correction . . . . .	78
Prompting and copying to be prevented . . . . .	78
Graduated exercises for each class . . . . .	80
Special subjects for dictation . . . . .	81

## CHAPTER IV.

## WRITING.

	PAGE
Writing the popular test of a school . . . . .	82
Defective at present, and why . . . . .	83
Rules to secure good writing :	
(1) Paper to be used with all classes . . . . .	84
(2) Pens to be supplied from a stock in school . . . . .	85
(3) Method of holding the pen . . . . .	87
(4) Quality, and supply of ink . . . . .	87
(5) Copy books, quality of . . . . .	88
Method of securing cleanliness . . . . .	89
(6) Position of the child . . . . .	90
(7) Rule to secure imitation of headline . . . . .	91
Method of marking the errors . . . . .	91
Oral corrections insufficient . . . . .	93
Mr. Moseley's system . . . . .	93
Supervision, extent recommended . . . . .	94
(8) Headlines to be written . . . . .	97
Arguments for and against engraved lines . . . . .	98
Superiority of written lines . . . . .	100
Opinions in support of written lines . . . . .	101
Minimum proficiency for each class . . . . .	102
(9) Begin early, and attend carefully to the junior classes . . . . .	103
(10) Do not begin with 'Large Hand' . . . . .	105
Arguments against 'Large hand' . . . . .	106
Rapidity essential—how to secure it . . . . .	107
(11) Not to write much at a time . . . . .	108
(12) School to write by divisions . . . . .	109
Application of writing, writing from memory, &c. . . . .	109
Examples of its value . . . . .	110

## CHAPTER V.

## ARITHMETIC.

## Counting :

Two kinds of, described . . . . .	111
Two laws from names of figures . . . . .	112

## Notation and Numeration :

Unit-ing system described and objected to . . . . .	113
True system simple . . . . .	115

	PAGE
Teaching three places of figures . . . . .	116
True method of teaching notation described . . . . .	120
Test question on notation . . . . .	121
Notation taught mechanically . . . . .	122
Proficiency for each class . . . . .	124
Figures to be neat . . . . .	126
Use of paper in arithmetic . . . . .	127
Tables :	
Method of teaching addition table . . . . .	128
Teaching the other tables . . . . .	131
In what order they are to be learned . . . . .	133
Tables to be written down . . . . .	135
Proficiency for each class . . . . .	136
Simple Rules :	
Carrying explained . . . . .	137
Improper methods . . . . .	138
Mechanical aids in adding . . . . .	139
Desk and floor teaching . . . . .	140
Plans to secure quickness . . . . .	141
Copying to be prevented . . . . .	143
Questions in addition arranged to save teacher's time . . . . .	144
'Borrowing' explained . . . . .	146
Test questions on simple subtraction . . . . .	147
Rule of multiplication . . . . .	147
Long and short division . . . . .	149
Proof of rules . . . . .	151
Rationale of arithmetic . . . . .	152
Style of teacher's explanation . . . . .	155
Test questions . . . . .	156
Compound Rules :	
Connection between simple and compound rules . . . . .	158
Why called compound . . . . .	159
Long division to be avoided in dividing by small numbers . . . . .	160
Reduction . . . . .	161
Proficiency required in compound rules . . . . .	161
Test questions on these rules and reduction . . . . .	162
Proportion :	
What it is . . . . .	164
Statement . . . . .	165
Methods of working described . . . . .	166
Cancelling . . . . .	168
Proof of rule . . . . .	170
Theory of proportion . . . . .	170

# CONTENTS.

xiii

	PAGE
Test questions on theory . . . . .	171
Additional hints . . . . .	172
Practice :	
Its connection with proportion . . . . .	173
Thirteen rules reduced to one . . . . .	175
Shop accounts . . . . .	175
Mental Arithmetic :	
Nature of . . . . .	177
Time for . . . . .	179
Value of . . . . .	179
Interest, hints on . . . . .	181
Rules for . . . . .	182
Stocks, averages, and per cents., questions on . . . . .	183
Monthly exercises . . . . .	183
Miscellaneous exercises, three sets of . . . . .	184

## CHAPTER VI.

### GRAMMAR.

Old method described, faults of . . . . .	186
Etymology to be first taught . . . . .	187
Technical terms can be dispensed with . . . . .	188
Method of teaching these terms' . . . . .	189
Definitions to be applied . . . . .	191
Definitions should be simple . . . . .	193
New definitions of parts of speech . . . . .	194
Hints upon the article . . . . .	196
Hints on the preposition . . . . .	197
Use of text-books . . . . .	199
Rules of syntax . . . . .	200
Parsing—three kinds of . . . . .	201
Too many forms of . . . . .	204
Parsing without technical terms . . . . .	205
Analysis of sentences . . . . .	207
Order in which words ought to be parsed . . . . .	208
Description of a proper treatise on grammar . . . . .	209
Teachers should read good authors . . . . .	210
Written composition . . . . .	213
Derivation of words . . . . .	214
Grammar may be begun early . . . . .	217

## CHAPTER VII.

## GEOGRAPHY.

	PAGE
Two ways of teaching this . . . . .	218
Explanation of certain terms . . . . .	220
Maps to be used—and how to use them . . . . .	222
Cardinal points . . . . .	223
Definitions to be taught on map . . . . .	224
To avoid mere 'map' teaching . . . . .	225
What a knowledge of geography is . . . . .	228
Pupils should fill in skeleton map . . . . .	229
Faults in examining on geography . . . . .	230
Two methods of testing children . . . . .	231
When text-books are to be used . . . . .	232
Proficiency for each class . . . . .	234

## CHAPTER VIII.

## HOME LESSONS.

Necessity for, and value of . . . . .	235
Length of tasks . . . . .	237
Method of carrying out . . . . .	237
Connection of home and school work . . . . .	239
Revision of written exercises . . . . .	241
Rote answering bad . . . . .	241
Against individual teaching . . . . .	242
Method of avoiding this system . . . . .	244
Table book . . . . .	246
Spelling Book Superseded—Method for teaching it . . . . .	247
Exercises in orthography . . . . .	249
Record of answering . . . . .	252

## CHAPTER IX.

## GENERAL HINTS.

(1) Programme of proficiency for each class—value of . . . . .	253
New one drawn up . . . . .	254
(2) Removals—importance of . . . . .	256
General rules for . . . . .	257

	PAGE
Plan adopted by Author . . . . .	257
Junior drafts . . . . .	259
(3) Classification based on programme . . . . .	260
Exceptional cases . . . . .	260
Different classifications for each subject . . . . .	260
(4) Means to keep up attention—(1) Taking places, (2) Hold out hands, (3) Point to the child, (4) Answer together, (5) Children to correct answers, (6) Mutual questioning, (7) Rewarded or punished . . . . .	261
Simultaneous answering leads to different opinions of same school . . . . .	263
(5) State of school in reference to teacher's certificate . . . . .	265
(6) Junior classes, importance of . . . . .	266
(7) Time Tables :	
What these really are . . . . .	268
Examples of bad time tables . . . . .	269
Observations on these . . . . .	271
Hints for forming time tables . . . . .	273
Remarks on these hints . . . . .	275
(8) Monitors, cause of prejudice against . . . . .	282
What they may be used for . . . . .	283
Plan of using them described . . . . .	287
(9) Order, value of . . . . .	289
Evils of over-drilling . . . . .	289
Proper course to adopt . . . . .	291
Arrangement of maps, books, slates, &c. . . . .	292
Monitors of order . . . . .	295
Trifles most important . . . . .	295
(10) Discipline defined . . . . .	296
Anger and passion . . . . .	296
Truth . . . . .	297
Attention and perseverance . . . . .	298
Obedience . . . . .	299
Rewards and punishment . . . . .	301
(11) Neatness and cleanliness, value of . . . . .	302
(1) Cleanliness of master . . . . .	303
(2) Cleanliness of children . . . . .	304
(3) Of schoolroom . . . . .	305
(4) Of premises . . . . .	306
Keeping the windows glazed . . . . .	307
Painting the woodwork . . . . .	309



	PAGE
(12) Attendance, defects of . . . . .	310
Remedies for—(1) Improved schools, (2) Exclude children,	
(3) Make payments quarterly, (4) Speak to parents .	310
Methods for securing punctuality in the mornings .	312
Influence of parents . . . . .	313
How far they ought to interfere . . . . .	315
(13) Teacher's office, importance of . . . . .	316
Appendix on Music . . . . .	319

# THE TEACHER'S MANUAL

OF

## METHOD AND ORGANISATION.

---

### CHAPTER I.

#### READING.

**Definition of good reading.** Reading may be called good when it is easy, yet not flippant; clear and firm in tone, without show or affectation; definite and exact in enunciation, without a parade of distinctness; expressing at the same time the true meaning intended, and joining with this expression judgment and taste.

**Defects of reading.** It unites *expression* with *understanding*; and, therefore, its chief defects must relate to the comprehension of the text, and to the tone and manner in which the sense is conveyed. Defects in tone and manner are indistinctness, hesitation, affectation, monotony, unnatural pitch of voice, mal-pronunciations, &c. Of these I intend to exclude pronunciation; for although a boy may pronounce badly, yet he may be able to collect easily and truly the statements of the author, and convey them clearly and forcibly to others; and these, as I take it, are the two most important elements of reading, and about the only ones we have a right to seek for in most of our primary schools, or that we are at all likely to attain.

**Errors of pronunciation.** Many teachers look upon the correction of such errors occurring in the reading as the most important of their duties. In their extreme desire to secure purity of utterance, they overlook the child's comprehension of the text, and the force and correctness with which he makes himself understood. They appear, as the Rev. Mr. Grant describes them,<sup>1</sup> 'to be lying in wait for provincialisms,' and by their

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1860-1, p. 88.

captious manner, and their constant fault-finding, they worry and distract their children until they force them to commit, in their perplexity, errors which they otherwise might have escaped.

**Best place to attend to mal-pronunciations.** Errors of pronunciation consist chiefly of provincialisms and local peculiarities, and can, therefore, be best checked in that conversational intercourse which always exists between the teacher and children during school hours. They are reducible, as Dr. Woodford remarks,<sup>1</sup> to a few great heads, and therefore it is obvious that a short column of words and a few simple expressions might be selected to represent the whole, which, being carefully and repeatedly pronounced every morning, or as occasion may suggest, would serve for their correction.

**Defects in reading are almost universal.** The defects which I do retain under the head of bad reading are, I regret to say, almost universally met with, notwithstanding the improvement that must have taken place within the last twenty years in the education of the people of Great Britain and Ireland. Inspectors and other educational authorities continually refer to them. The Rev. Mr. Cook says, 'The reading is hasty, monotonous, and unintelligible.'<sup>2</sup> Mr. Moseley 'is not aware that in any school is attention given to just expression or correct emphasis.'<sup>3</sup> Mr. Thurtell: 'It is in general extremely monotonous.'<sup>4</sup> Mr. Alderson: 'I have found in the course of my inspection, nothing more annoying than the indistinct mumbling which in many schools passes current for reading.'<sup>5</sup> Mr. Brodie: 'By great courtesy only and forbearing allowance can that inaudible sound, which, because a pupil is standing with a book in his hands and his lips are doubtfully moving, you hope to hear, but might as easily hope to see, be called reading. Occasionally, but rarely, the other extreme prevails, and the whole class shrieks. Stops are disregarded, and the reader speedily sits down, or, if a female, droops into her place, with a serene indifference to the last words of the sentence, joyous anyhow to have rushed through the small portion of an ungenial task.'<sup>6</sup> While in his report for the next year he adds, 'There is imperfect enunciation and articulation, slurring over of final letters and syllables, little attention to stops, unheeded emphasis, mumbling inaudibility.'<sup>7</sup> Mr. Wilkinson, in the same year corroborates this statement. He says, 'During the past year I have frequently had to complain of the inaudible mumbling, particularly among the lower classes of my schools, which frequently passes current for reading.'<sup>8</sup> Again, in Ire-

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1856-7, p. 620.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 1845-6.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. 1847-8.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid. 1857-8.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid. 1859-60.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid. 1860-1.

<sup>8</sup> Ibid. 1860-1.

land, Mr. Sheridan, Head Inspector, reports that—'Almost universally the practice is to accustom the small children to utter the words *one by one*, and in the same tone throughout, which is always several degrees higher than the natural or speaking tone.'<sup>1</sup>

My own experience as an inspector is in accordance with the statements of these gentlemen. I have found that even with the most advanced children the tone is monotonous, unnaturally high, and, generally, so unlike the tone in which they speak, that, when a child ceases to read and begins to enter into conversation, so great a difference is manifested, that one might suppose he was listening to different persons.

**Reasons assigned by the inspectors in Ireland.** Many different reasons have been assigned for the prevalence of these defects. In Ireland, the inspectors attribute their existence to 'the infrequency of teaching reading,' 'to its not being taught as a distinct lesson,' 'to the neglect of it in favour of geometry, mensuration, &c.,' 'to the habit which most teachers have of interrupting the children to correct errors of pronunciation, or to ask questions on the subject-matter of the lesson, or to require the derivation or meaning of some word,' to the fact that 'the monotonous pronunciation of the words incidental to the early attempts at reading are not diligently removed as the pupils gain fluency.'

**Causes assigned by the inspectors in England.** In Great Britain, the causes assigned, in addition to the above, are: (1) Teachers' unwillingness to engage in the mechanical work of the school;<sup>2</sup> (2) Pupils and teachers too easily satisfied;<sup>3</sup> (3) Shape of class;<sup>4</sup> (4) Pupils do not read enough, owing to the size of class, and time spent in questioning, spelling, meanings, taking places, &c.;<sup>5</sup> (5) Masters not conscious of the necessity which exists for applying special remedies;<sup>6</sup> (6) Too much noise in schools;<sup>7</sup> (7) Reading sentence by sentence, in order of position,<sup>8</sup> and others too numerous to mention here, but to which reference is given in the foot notes.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Report on Southern Districts—National Education Report, Ireland, 1859.

<sup>2</sup> Min. of Council, 1857-8, p. 252.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 1860-1, p. 187.

<sup>4</sup> Education Commission, 1861, vol. i. p. 251; and Min. of Council, 1848-9, vol. i. p. 118.

<sup>5</sup> Education Commission, 1861, vol. i. p. 251; Min. of Council, 1854-5, pp. 170 and 269; Min. of Council, 1856-7, p. 238; 1860-1, p. 62.

<sup>6</sup> Education Commission, 1861, vol. i. p. 252.

<sup>7</sup> Min. of Council, 1847-8, vol. ii. p. 6.

<sup>8</sup> Ibid. 1860-1, p. 188.

<sup>9</sup> Ibid. 1846-7, vol. ii. p. 65; 1847-8, vol. ii. p. 6; 1848-9, vol. i. p. 119, and vol. ii. p. 179; 1852-3, p. 873; 1856-7, pp. 238 and 620; 1859, pp. 30 and 194; 1860-1, pp. 170 and 188; Education Commission, 1861, vol. i. pp. 247, 248, 252, 253, &c.

**These causes can be traced to teachers' neglect.** These causes may, I regret to say, be fairly attributed to some fault in the teaching body. There is scarcely any subject which requires more earnest care, constant labour, and never-failing patience, on the part of the teacher, than reading; but there is no subject on which, in my opinion, a conscientious master should produce a more marked effect, as it is brought almost continually under his notice from the first day of the child's school life until its close.

**1. Rules to produce good reading.** The following rules for teaching reading are chiefly drawn from my own experience. They are easy of application, and in the majority of cases they have proved effectual. I have arranged them, so far as they will admit of so simple a classification, under two heads. Those designed chiefly to secure expression, and those whose chief object is to make the children collect the meaning of the passage read.

**1. Rule of Imitation.** The great means to produce correct expression in reading may be said to consist in a steady adherence to one rule—**THE RULE OF IMITATION**; that is, *to reading the sentence as it ought to be read, and causing the child to exercise his powers of imitation upon the model thus placed before him.*

Reading is, after all, but cultivated talking, and must, of necessity, be acquired as speaking itself is—by imitation. Where it is *taught*—that is, taught in the true sense of the word—the style of master and pupils ought to be very nearly the same; and this supplies a test, not, indeed, as to the quality of the reading, but as to whether it has been faithfully and earnestly attended to or not.

**Two ways to apply the rule.** There are two ways in which the rule of imitation may be advantageously applied in practice: (1) Where the master reads and the child listens, and then endeavours to reproduce; (2) Where both read together. This last should be resorted to, however, only with the most backward, and chiefly in the junior classes; and, whenever used, the master should avail himself of the earliest opportunity of dispensing with it in favour of the other, which is the most rational and correct; for, when both read together, the master, being engaged in reading himself, cannot sufficiently attend to the errors of the child; and the child, being so completely engrossed with his own efforts on the one hand, and the master's style and tone on the other, is in danger of being too confused to imitate correctly, and must to a certainty lose the substance of what he reads.

**A third way described by Mr. Fletcher.** There is, indeed, a third way of applying this rule, but, in my opinion, not so good as either of the others. It consists in allowing the child to make

an effort himself, and then giving him the model, so that he may compare his own results with the true standard. Mr. Fletcher thus describes it: <sup>1</sup> 'First, the selected hard words are spelt by each child in rotation, the monitor spelling them correctly *after* each, and not before it, that it may be enabled to appreciate the correction, if there be any, through having already made an effort. Next, each boy reads a *word* of the text, which is also read correctly *after* him by the monitor; a *whole clause* is then read by each in like manner, and under like correction. Finally, each reads a sentence completely, and, when he stumbles, appeal is made to other boys, when he who makes the true correction gains *one* place, and but one.'

The same gentleman describes the application of one of the other plans to the teaching of the junior classes thus: 'The monitors (who should all read very well) read the lessons sentence by sentence; and each child in turn reads sentence by sentence after them, round and round the class, until all have read each sentence, and then they read without the leadership of the monitors.'<sup>2</sup>

**Hints to carry out rule properly.** When reading *with* the child, the teacher ought not to let his own exemplar reading be too continuous. He ought, occasionally, to cease, and allow the child to fill up the blank by himself, lest in the end he acquires the habit of repeating merely what he hears, and not what he sees. These blanks can be left in the easiest or most difficult parts, and made longer or shorter according to the proficiency of the child himself.

**Not to be too much at a time.** When reading *for* the child, the teacher ought not to read too much at a time. It is clear that if he do, the child is almost certain to forget the tone and style of the beginning while listening to the end. A small sentence, or one or two clauses of a large one, will in most cases be found sufficient, but with the advanced children more may be read. Of the exact quantity the teacher himself will be the best judge.

**Rule should be applied early.** When not applied soon enough, habits are formed which it is almost impossible to remove at any future time. Even the very lowest class children should be taught to group the words naturally—to speak them, in fact, as the master himself would speak them. Instead of permitting them to say, for instance, 'Hie—thee—home—from—school,' pausing after every word, they should be accustomed to say, 'Hie thee home—from school.' And this they can be taught to do by the master's repeating *for* them, or *along* with them, the words in groups as they ought to be repeated, and encouraging them to do

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1847-8, vol. ii. p. 251.    <sup>2</sup> Ibid. 1846, vol. ii. p. 412.

so too. A few trials will produce the desired result, for children are quick in imitating.

**This now neglected.** This grouping of words, although of vital importance, is almost wholly left without any special attention, and on this account pupils of the junior classes can scarcely be said at present to *read* at all. When I say this, I make a distinction between the mere naming of words in their order, which is sometimes, but erroneously, called reading, and *the naming of them in connected groups in accordance with their sense*, which alone is entitled to be so called.

**Mr. Sheehy's opinion of reading in the primer class.** Mr. Sheehy, Inspector of National Schools, Ireland, says: 'When I examine the junior classes, I find that the children repeat the words in the one tone of voice, accent all equally, pause and nod after each word, and seem not to know what they read about. In fact,' he adds, 'their reading resembles very much the reading in time of a piece of music consisting of crotchets and crotchet-rests alternately.'

**This want of grouping natural with young children, if unaided.** This hesitation is certainly very natural with children, for when struggling with the difficulties of distinguishing one word from another, they must fail, if left entirely to themselves, to pronounce them in groups. It is probably because that it is natural, and very probably also from supposing that there will be time enough to remedy it as they advance, that the junior classes are so much neglected in this respect. But let those teachers who act thus remember that they are not only neglecting the duties they have undertaken to discharge, but they are laying up for themselves a mass of trouble from which they can scarcely ever afterwards free themselves. As Mr. Sheridan says: 'The habits the pupils acquire while learning the First Book accompany them into the higher classes, and once contracted are never thoroughly cured.'

**Neglected even in the senior classes.** But even in the senior classes it is too frequently quite neglected, notwithstanding that it does more to destroy the perspicuity of the language, and mar the reading, than any other. In some cases, indeed, the disagreeable effects of erroneous grouping force themselves too strongly upon the teacher's attention to permit him to overlook them altogether, but the remedies applied convince one that the true cause is unknown. The child is told 'to read more quickly' or 'more slowly,' or to 'mind the stops;' but in the majority of cases, when these instructions are given, the defect is not so much in the slowness or rapidity of utterance, or in neglect of the printed pauses, as in that wrong collocation of words of which I am now speaking.

Take, for instance, the following :—

‘With one knee on the grass did the little maiden kneel.’

A slow and hesitating reader would group the words somewhat thus :—

‘With one—knee on—the grass—did the little—maiden—kneel.’

While a quick, but inexperienced reader, would on the other hand join them something like this :—

‘With one knee on the grass did the little—maiden kneel.’

In such cases it is clear that the defects are neither slowness nor quickness, for, in the one, the reading may be made quicker, and, in the other, much slower, without becoming more correct, or more pleasing. Neither will the command, to ‘mind the stops,’ be of any advantage, for there happens to be no stop in the line at all.

‘**Try again.**’ Sometimes the child is told to ‘try again,’ and, probably, after another failure he may be required to make a second, or even a third effort; but to tell a child to read any passage in which he has signally failed, without showing him in what his errors consisted, or affording him a means for correcting them, is like telling him to work an arithmetical question for whose solution he has not yet seen any established guide. Mr. Fussell says :<sup>1</sup> ‘Few things are more painful to me than to see the energies of a young teacher frittered away after this fashion. A child reads a sentence—he commits gross faults. “Read it again,” says the teacher. He reads it again, and, as might be expected, he reads it very much as at first. “Read it again,” says the teacher; and so on. It does not seem to enter into the teacher’s conception that his own labours, and the child’s too, would be immensely lightened if he would but tell the child what his faults are, and *why* he was to read it again.’

**Only true plan is the application of the rule of imitation.** The only true remedy for this defect is in the application of the rule of which I am now treating—reading the sentence as it ought to be read, so that the child may possess something tangible, by means of which he may discover and correct his errors. Without this, the commands, ‘mind your stops,’ ‘read slower,’ or ‘quicker,’ &c., will be valueless; and ‘to try again,’ may, indeed, produce a difference, but it can only by accident produce correctness.

**Faults in applying the rule to the lowest class.** There is little difficulty in applying this rule to the senior classes, but

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1857–8.



in its application to the lowest class I find that teachers commit two faults. (1) In their anxiety to make the pupils join the words together they permit them to read very rapidly, and without any pause until the end of each small sentence, thus making, in fact, one group out of what ought to have been several; (2) or they make the pauses too long and too marked. Thus they either read the sentence, 'Hie thee home from school,' as if in one breath, or else they make as long a stop after the word 'home' as if the sense was completed there.

**Remedy for rote reading.** I find also that the pupils get the sentences by rote, and repeat them without looking at the words. To remedy this, they should be called upon first to name single words selected at random through the lesson, and when they can do so rapidly and correctly they should then be taught to read in groups as explained. In some schools tablets are used from which to teach this class. In such cases the pointer should be used with judgment, for I find that a good deal of the disconnected reading in the lowest classes is owing to the way in which this instrument is handled. The master points to one word after another, and, as a consequence, the child, in following the master, pauses equally after each.

**How to use the pointer.** Instead of this, the pointer should merely indicate the sentence to be read, or, what I have sometimes seen tried with advantage, it should be made to pass rapidly over the words which form a group, stopping after each group so long as the master thinks correct. Thus, with the sentence, 'Hie thee home from school,' the teacher may either say, 'Read that,' or he may pass the pointer over the words 'Hie thee home,' pausing a little after 'home,' and then passing it over the remainder. Thus he indicates each group, each pause, and its exact duration.

**Special faults may require special remedies.** By a careful adherence to the rule of imitation the children will very soon pick up the general features of the master's style, and, in many cases, also, even its minute characteristics, but there still may remain special faults which can be removed more quickly by some special additional remedies.

**Indistinctness is a fault of this kind.** Indistinctness is a fault of this kind, and requires careful attention, not only from its producing bad reading, but from its destroying to a considerable extent the good effects expected from draft teaching. Every child when reading is supposed to be conveying instruction to his class-fellows, and when answering he is contributing to the common fund of information; but it is clear, that when his utterance is indistinct—when he is not clearly heard—time is wasted, and an amount of knowledge lost.

**Inaudible speaking, one cause of.** Pupils are inaudible very frequently from being permitted to stand with their heads down, with their chests cramped, and in other attitudes in which to speak clearly is almost an impossibility. Unless the organs of speech have fair play, unless the body is erect and firm, not only will the child always speak at a disadvantage, but his mind itself will grow languid and listless. He should keep his head well up, his chin and breast well forward; he should stand firmly and uprightly, and hold the book so as not to stop the flow of sound. If held before the mouth, as it sometimes is, the voice is checked considerably.

**Another cause.** Sometimes, however, pupils are inaudible simply from carelessness and from bad habits early contracted. In such cases it is more difficult to effect a cure. The best remedy I have met with—one, indeed, that I have scarcely ever known to fail when intelligently applied—is to place the child at a considerable distance from the teacher, generally at the opposite end of the room, and to encourage him to pitch his voice so as to be heard from there. In such a case nature assists the child in acquiring the true pitch, and by a little care and exactness on the teacher's part, the child will soon succeed in making himself clearly heard. He should then return to his class, and be called upon to read *with the same tone that he made use of when at a distance*. In his efforts to do this he almost invariably succeeds in adopting the very tone he ought to make use of in his class, for a consciousness of the change of position tempers down the high tone to the true standard.

**Remedy when indistinctness is caused by slovenly habits.** Indistinctness, however, may proceed from muttering or mumbling the words, from slurring over their final syllables or letters, or from running one word into another, as, for example, 'he fired with so sure an aim,' may be read as if it were 'he fired with so sure a name.' When it is thus the result of slovenliness of speech, a different remedy should be applied. The master should read very slowly for their imitation, making them read very slowly also, sounding each word clearly and by itself, but paying most attention to the ending syllables of each. A little practice in this way will produce clearness and distinctness, but accompanied with a considerable amount of disconnectedness. Ease and fluency must be afterwards acquired by the proper methods.

**Irregularities of tone are also special faults.** Irregularity of tone is another of those special faults. When the tone is 'irregular,' it may be either too high or too low, or, if in the natural or speaking key, it may be dull and monotonous. It may also be accompanied with a kind of cadence or intonation, giving

to the reading a character between speaking and singing. This is produced by either abruptly stopping at the commas, or else by raising and prolonging the voice at them. To encourage the child to catch the tone in which the master himself reads is one remedy for this fault. The child's expertness in picking up this tone depends very much upon whether his ear is naturally sensitive or not. If he have a good musical ear he will have but little difficulty.

**Best remedy for this fault.** The best plan, however, is to make him speak the words, as he would in conversation, without looking at the book. For this purpose the general meaning of the passage should be explained to him, he should commit the words correctly to memory, and he should be called upon to repeat them to the teacher—or, better, to one of his class-fellows. In verbatim doing this he will almost insensibly adopt the natural or speaking tone. When he has done so, permit him to use the book, and the defects will gradually disappear. In most cases, indeed, at first the tone, when using the book, will differ from that when the book is closed; but this difference will diminish with every trial, until at last it will become almost imperceptible.

If familiar sentences were used in the first case—such, for instance, as the ordinary forms of salutation, the school rules, sentences about the weather, &c., which the child is in the habit of using himself, or of hearing others use—his attention could be more forcibly drawn to the difference between his manner of speaking and reading. But, whatever sentences are used, he will, by careful attention, gradually come to perceive that the more nearly reading approaches in style to speaking, the more correct and pleasing it is deemed; and thus the truest standard of reading will be realised by him, and at all future times, when in doubt, he will recur to it. He will ask himself, 'How should I *speak* this sentence?' and he will try to imitate that when reading.

**To read writing is another remedy.** Another plan is to get him to write down any passage he may think of, and to call upon him to read his own writing. He will invariably do this more naturally than if called upon to read print. This, moreover, is an exercise which possesses an intrinsic value of its own, for to read manuscript is always of considerable importance in our progress through life. As many children at present never learn to read it at all, and some of even the most advanced find great difficulty in doing it, I strongly recommend that even the very youngest should practise it. The Rev. Mr. Kennedy is also of this opinion. He says: <sup>1</sup> 'It is not the practice of any school I have seen in this district to teach children to read handwriting. This, however, might be

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1849-50, p. 180.

done with advantage at an early stage, for some children who leave school never acquire this power. The learning to write the alphabet should be practised simultaneously with the learning to read it, as these two processes are a great mutual help.'

**Simultaneous reading another remedy.** That plan of reading which is called simultaneous,<sup>1</sup> when properly directed and kept within due bounds, is another very admirable remedy for these special defects. It consists in the joint reading of the master and his class, or of the class alone—all keeping time, as it were, and training their voices into harmony with each other. Such an exercise derives its value from its tendency to create a uniformity in the reading, and to oblige the entire class to take the tone from the most proficient. It therefore checks quickness, and gives confidence and firmness to those who are hesitating. It secures body of voice, removes those tones which are unnatural, monotonous, or accompanied with a cadence; while by the very effort which all are obliged to make to keep up to the true standard, and by that sympathy which must exist throughout the class, distinctness of utterance is necessarily produced. Mr. Stokes says also of it,<sup>2</sup> that 'it shortens the process of learning to read, and produces, in good schools, a commendable correctness, which in a few cases rises into elegance.' It must be remembered, however, that these are about its chief advantages, and that the highest excellence in reading must always be the result of well-directed individual effort. It should not, therefore, be too much practised or relied upon, except for the removal of the faults with which it is intended to deal.

**Conditions required to give these suggestions their full force.** But that these suggestions may have their true force, two things are essentially requisite: (1) That the errors themselves are detected; and, (2) That reading is sufficiently practised. The first may appear to be too much of a mere truism to deserve special mention; but, upon reflection, it will be found that the non-detection of error has probably more to do with the bad reading which admittedly prevails than any deficiency of special remedies within the knowledge of the teachers. Teachers are, as a body, intelligent, hard-working, and zealous; and as they must recognise the importance of reading, it is clear that, with these qualities, they would long ago have improved it, or taken steps to improve it (neither of which they have done), had they been conscious of the defects. No doubt but that, in some cases, a want of ability

<sup>1</sup> For remarks upon simultaneous reading, see Min. of Council, 1846, vol. ii. p. 87; 1851-2, pp. 275 and 1079. Also the works on school

education, by Currie, Gill, Woods, Dunn, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Min. of Council, 1856-7, p. 610.

to invent remedies, or a want of zeal in seeking and carrying into practice those already invented, are the chief sources; but, as a rule, reading is bad simply because the defects which are continually brought before the teachers *do not make themselves felt*.

**Reasons that teachers do not perceive the errors in reading made by the children.** It may be asked, how is it that, if capable of judging of them, they do not notice them quite as well as an inspector or a manager? In reply, I think it may fairly be said, (1) That from being accustomed to the frequent repetition of the errors by the children in their presence, they insensibly but naturally cease, after a short time, to notice them; and, (2) even supposing that this was not the case, the habit, which nearly all teachers have, of reading the lesson conjointly with the child, places them in the very worst position possible for doing so.<sup>1</sup> For no master can be a competent judge of how the reading of his children will strike the ear of a stranger (which is the best test for reading aloud), so long as he himself is following the words not only with his ears, but with his eye. In such a case, both of these organs convey impressions to the brain, which it is almost impossible to avoid confounding.

**Evils of this.** Masters thus really *know* what the pupils ought to be saying; and, by mistaking that knowledge for actually *hearing* what they say, they very often pass over errors of expression, of punctuation, and of intelligent grouping. Besides, when following the book, they cannot note properly the general attention of the class, nor the countenance and bearing of the reader himself; and, to omit these, is to neglect an important part of their duty. These evil results follow with more certainty when the master, as is frequently the case, is engaged, when poring over the book, not in following the reader, but in thinking of what question he should ask when he is done.

**Remedy.** The best course to adopt, if the teacher is fully acquainted with the lesson, as he ought to be, is to close the book (keeping, however, a finger between the leaves, for ease of reference), and, standing at some considerable distance, to make the ear the sole judge. That this organ may be a true judge, however, it is necessary that the master should seek every opportunity of hearing good reading.

**Pupils to become mere listeners also.** It is also an excellent plan to make the whole class occasionally form themselves into mere auditors. The reader will thus find that he must speak clearly, distinctly, forcibly, and naturally, if he would have himself understood; and both he and his class-fellows will learn what

<sup>1</sup> Report of Education Commission, 1852-3, p. 70; 1857-8, pp. 381 and 1861, vol. i. p. 254; Min. of Council, 391; 1860-1, p. 170,

the objects of reading aloud are, and in what its excellences consist. This will, no doubt, prove, in the present state of the classes, a very severe test for the junior children, but it is nevertheless the master's duty to apply it early, because, from a want of early attention to the formation of good habits, many teachers are now obliged, too frequently, to occupy their time in *curing* those faults that, had proper means been adopted in proper time, they would have had only *to prevent*. Incorrectness of utterance, apathy in speaking, general listlessness of manner, inattention to what is read, monotonous tones, cadences in speaking, &c., all have their rise in sources scarcely discernible at first, but they grow upon children if permitted, until it is scarcely possible to cope with them. In these cases, therefore, as in most others, 'prevention is better than cure.'

**Reading must be taught as a distinct lesson.** The second condition required to give the previous suggestions full force is that reading should be practised for itself and by itself—*practised, in fact, as a distinct lesson*. At present, the time of the reading-lesson is occupied with reading, spelling, meanings, subject-matter of book, and sometimes, etymologies, grammar, and geography. Among so many subjects the actual practice of reading is exceedingly little, especially so if the classes are large; and, therefore, one of the most important rules about good reading—that *to read well we must read much*—is violated. Besides, so long as it is not the immediate object of the lesson, it will be exceedingly difficult to fix the child's attention satisfactorily upon it and upon any remarks that may be made as to its improvement.

Some inspectors say that every class should receive *four* lessons daily; some *three*; and some *two*; but all agree in saying that *one* lesson at least should be set apart exclusively for mere reading. During this time the portion allotted to each child should be large—in fact, it cannot be too large consistently with the time allowed—not only for the purpose of giving greater practice in reading, but also to accustom him to that continuous and connected reading which aims at taking in the *whole* of the subject, and which he must follow in his more matured studies. The lessons selected should be those which are most familiar, so as to secure the greatest freedom of expression, and to occupy little time in the explanations of such words and phrases as it will be found necessary to explain in order to make the reading forcible and intelligent.

**Should read poetry.** During this time, also, they should read a great deal of poetry; the junior classes from their ordinary reading-books, and the more advanced from good authors, or from good selections from their works, such as those now published

by the Commissioners of National Education. With the advanced classes, the object should be, not so much to *learn to read*, for this they ought to have acquired already, as to *improve in reading*; and I know of no better way to do this than to read poetry extensively. When read and recited well, it tends to produce expressive reading, in the highest sense of that term; it also has a powerful effect in awakening the feelings and in inculcating *sentiment*—one of the most important agents in the formation of character. But that it may be of any advantage, due regard should be had to the repetition. All errors of affectation, exaggeration, hurry, &c., should be carefully watched and removed. The utterance should be clear and distinct, with as little musical intonation as the nature of poetry admits of; and that attention should be paid to the modulations of the voice which is necessary to bring out, not only the true meaning, but the true *feeling* also.

**Intelligent reading: its importance.** It will be noticed that the suggestions up to this refer almost solely to expression and utterance, and relate, in but a secondary way, if at all, to the comprehension of the text. It is now my duty to deal with this, the most important part of reading. It is important, because 'the foundation upon which every system of intellectual instruction must rest is the ability to read with ease and intelligence, so as to evince a clear conception of the subject,'<sup>1</sup> and because, when attained, all other excellences in reading either follow of themselves, or are more easily acquired. Intellectual reading, however, is not only valuable in itself, but inasmuch as it is an exercise which requires a due appreciation of the ideas, as well as of the peculiarities of the language used in their expression, it becomes a valuable agent, in the hands of a skilful person, for developing and strengthening the mind.

**'Meaning of words' at root of it.** As the meaning of the entire sentence depends upon the force of the words made use of, that exercise which has for its object the explanation of those words must necessarily lie at the root of this branch of our subject, and, therefore, it naturally demands our first consideration.

**Object of this exercise.** This exercise seeks to make the text intelligible by translating its imperfectly understood phraseology into a language of more ordinary use. It is sometimes incorrect, therefore, to require the children during this exercise to be very particular in the choice of those words which they give in the explanation of others. A distinction, however, ought to be made in this respect between the two divisions of the school. From

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Fleming, Head Inspector of National Schools, Ireland.

the junior section, because the children have not yet had sufficient opportunities for getting up a good vocabulary, the words commonly used by the uneducated should be accepted; but from the senior classes something higher, I think, ought to be expected. They should convey their explanations not only clearly and definitely, but in neat and correct language; not, indeed, to render their meaning more easily understood—for many of the rough words current among the unlearned cannot be exceeded for terseness and force—but to give them the habit of using the more canonical words of our language. Their acquaintance with the words and style of the advanced lesson books, the improved taste and the increase of ideas consequent upon their progress through these books, naturally point out why a difference should be made, in this respect, between the senior and junior classes.

**This exercise badly conducted at present.** This exercise is very badly conducted in schools at present.

**1. Joined with spelling.** (1) *It is, for the most part, connected with the spelling rather than with the text of the reading-lesson.* The very nature of the exercise ought, however, to show to those teachers who adopt this course that it has no more connection with spelling than grammar has, which they also join with it. The late Mr. McCreedy, Secretary to the Board, writing on this point, says, 'That in a large number of schools, the old and absurd system is persevered in, of teaching the meanings of words in connection with the spelling—in which the sense is unsettled and arbitrary—rather than with the reading exercise, or, more properly speaking, with the analysis of the text of the reading exercise, where only can the words of the lesson have their meaning properly determined by their application.'<sup>1</sup>

**2. Dictionary meanings generally unsuitable.** (2) *The meanings given are also too frequently the mere meanings contained in a dictionary.* But such are almost worthless in securing the object in view, as they are generally less familiar to the children, and much more difficult of comprehension than the words they seek to explain. Take, for instance, the following meaning for 'network,' extracted from Johnson's Dictionary:—

'Network, is anything reticulated or decussated at equal distances, with interstices between the intersections.'

This may be very accurate, but fancy the puzzled expression of a poor child after reading it!

The fact is, that the ends aimed at by a teacher and a lexicographer are so very different, that a dictionary must be used with great

<sup>1</sup> Reports of the Commissioners of National Education, Ireland.



caution. The one seeks solely to explain, the other to define; the one sacrifices precision in his desire to be easily understood, the other sacrifices clearness because it may sometimes prevent his being rigidly exact. The meanings required by a child *may* indeed define, but they *must* interpret, and this they cannot do if couched in unusual language. The children, except some of the most advanced, ought not, therefore, to consult a dictionary at all. The master himself should be their book; and although he may be obliged occasionally himself to consult a dictionary, he should, as a general rule, use his own language only in all the explanations which he gives to his children.

**3. Meanings of the words at the top of the lessons.—Error.**

(3) *In some books, there are small columns of words drawn out at the commencement of each lesson. Where this is the case the teachers confine themselves almost entirely to these.* Their practice is, either to tell the children the meanings of these words before reading, or else to give dictionaries into their hands that they may find them out themselves. By such a course, the pupils are forced to get the meanings of many words of little or no importance, simply because contained in the columns, while many words, upon which the sense of several of the passages in the text may depend, are passed by unexplained.

**It is ineffectual, unintellectual, and laborious.** Such a system, moreover, is ineffectual, unintellectual, and laborious. It is *ineffectual*, because, as the dictionary gives many meanings, the children are left in the dark as to which of them they should select. It is *unintellectual*, because its tendency is to produce mere rote answering, the children in general getting the credit of understanding what they repeat with fluency. Fluent repetition and intelligence do not necessarily, however, go together. What knowledge, for instance, could a child, who never saw a *package* of goods, or heard of a law court, possess of the real meanings of the words *bail* and *bale*, even supposing he could repeat readily and correctly that,

Bail, was a surety for another's appearance in court, and Bale,  
a package of goods?

The system is also *laborious*, for it forces the memory to deal with disconnected and uninteresting facts.

**Opinions.** The following opinions may be of advantage in support of these statements:

1. 'To say that it would be impossible to remember definitions thus abstractedly learned, would be to assert what must be perfectly obvious to everyone; and, even if they could be remembered, they would be of little utility; for, as the right application of a

definition must depend entirely upon the situation of the word to be explained, and the office it performs in a sentence, the repeating of half a score of meanings as obscure, perhaps, as the word itself, conveys no definite thought, and serves rather to darken than illuminate the mind.'<sup>1</sup> And again: 'Merely the learning to spell unconnected words, without any assistance from reason or analogy, is nothing compared with the difficulty of learning the explanation of them by rote, and the still greater difficulty of understanding the meaning of the explanations.'<sup>2</sup>

**Errors in carrying it out, but which do not belong to it.** Those who adopt this custom make it worse (1) by allowing the children to run the several meanings into one. Thus, for the words 'hue,' 'metre,' 'lacks,' &c., they permit them to say, *a colour dye, a measure verse, wants needs*—the two meanings being repeated together without the pause which the sense requires; or (2) they think it their duty to give a meaning for every word, quite overlooking the fact that many words do not admit of being expressed more simply by others. Thus they give the meaning of 'twittering' (making a sharp, chattering noise), of 'singing' (musical articulation), of 'chirping' (the cheerful noise of birds), and fancy that they have explained them. Instead of this, how much better would it be to refer the children to the noise of the swallow, or of the sparrow, for the explanation of 'twittering' and 'chirping'; examples of singing they scarcely need.

**'Meaning' not so good a term as 'application.'** The word 'meaning' is a bad one, and has led in a very great degree to the erroneous system of teaching at present in force. If teachers would discard it, using in its place the word *application*, they would avoid many faults. They would avoid (1) the fault of giving many applications; (2) of giving any but the one necessary to explain the text; (3) of giving it where the word is not applied at all; (4) of endeavouring to give the application of words whose application and force were already familiar to every child; or (5) of defining by other words what can be illustrated *practically* with more advantage.

**The true system.** *The true system of conducting this exercise is to teach the meanings of words in connection with the text, and (as its true office is to assist in the comprehension of the text) before the reading.*

**Examples.** The children should, when called up to class, be directed, in the first instance, to open their books and follow the master line by line as he proceeds through the lesson, selecting the words for explanation. The method which I recommend for the

<sup>1</sup> Thayer's Lecture on Spelling and Definitions.

<sup>2</sup> Edgeworth.

actual explanation of the words so selected, will be best learned from an example. Take, for instance, the following sentences:—

‘The particular favourite of Jacob among his twelve sons was Joseph, the eldest child of his beloved Rachel. This excited the envy and hatred of his brethren. These feelings were increased by reports of their misconduct, which he brought to his father, and by two dreams which he had, indicating his future greatness.’

The questions might run somewhat thus:—What is meant by the *favourite* of a person? What sort of a favourite is a *particular* favourite? What child is the *eldest* child? What is meant when it is said that Rachel was *beloved* by Jacob? When is a person said to *envy* another? When to *hate* him? What is meant by *exciting* these feelings? What by *increasing* them? &c. &c., always *applying* in the question the word whose meaning is required.

And sometimes he should mingle with his explanations of single words explanations of *phrases*; as, for instance, suppose the lesson for the day was on ‘The Salmon,’ which, in the ‘Graduated Series,’ by Longman & Co., Book iii., opens thus: ‘Of the genuine salmon, we believe there is but one distinct species. From its lithe beauty, its wonderful activity, and its value as an article of food, it unquestionably takes precedence of all fish that swim in our waters. The variety of which we speak is a slender fish, particularly solid in texture, and has a small head and delicate fins;’ the teacher may say what is the force of the expression ‘*the genuine salmon*’ (sketching out the doubts to which it gives rise)? What is meant by a *species* of fish? What by a *distinct* species? What by the expressions ‘*its lithe beauty*’ and ‘*wonderful activity*?’ What is meant by ‘*taking precedence of other fish*?’ What by *unquestionably* doing so? What is meant by the word *slender*, as, for instance, ‘*a slender rod*,’ ‘*a slender fish*?’ Explain the phrase ‘*the salmon is extremely solid in texture*.’ Meaning of *delicate*? What is its meaning when I talk of a *delicate* child? &c. &c. Thus going through the entire lesson, with more or less of minuteness according to the age and proficiency of the children who constitute the class.

After this exercise, the pupils should proceed to the actual reading, which they will then be in a position to understand, and, understanding, to make expressive and correct. After reading, the teacher should recur to the previous explanation to see that it is remembered.

**Errors in carrying the true system out.** In carrying out this plan of explaining the meanings of words, I have found that teachers are liable to the following errors:—

1. They read the passage themselves aloud, then ask the mean-

ing of one word, and thus fancy that they are teaching the meanings 'in connection with the text.' Thus, in the foregoing lesson they would read, 'Of the genuine salmon there is, we believe, but one distinct species,' and then ask, 'What is the meaning of *species*?' This is a waste of time, for, when the children are following the reading, there is no necessity for the master to read to them; and, as it is virtually asking the meaning of isolated words, it differs from that plan which confines one to the little columns of the lesson only in being more *troublesome*—the master selecting the words himself, instead of taking those selected for him. All that is in reality required is to frame the questions so that the force or application, as it is in the text, of the word to be explained will be made clear to the children; and this can be done very often much better by using a phraseology different from what is in the book before them. An instance of this is given above, in the words 'slender,' 'delicate,' &c.

2. They consume time unnecessarily in finding out what word they will ask the meaning of, or in determining upon the form in which they will ask it.

3. They very frequently ask the meanings of words of secondary importance, and pass over those upon which the sense of the paragraph turns.

**Remedy for 2 and 3.** The remedy for both these faults is to be had in a careful previous preparation of the lesson. The teacher should provide for his own use a set of class books, and he should, from time to time, mark in these all words requiring explanation. When this is once done, no further trouble would be required, except, probably, to distinguish the most important words by some peculiarity of marking, as, for instance, by using in their case red ink, instead of black, or drawing under them two lines instead of one.

**Fallacy of thinking that the words are known when the drift of passage is known.** 4. They are not sufficiently minute in their selection of words; they take it too frequently for granted that the pupils understand the words when they can read with rapidity and ease, and answer questions upon the general meaning of the passage. The fallacy of this is so well illustrated by Dr. Woodford, that I cannot refrain from quoting him in full. The lesson selected was on '*The sagacity of insects in providing for their offspring*;' and he says,<sup>1</sup> 'It was thought by some intelligent visitors, that, from the way in which the children had answered upon the lesson, it was manifest that they understood the words. I was inclined to think so too, but was yet willing to try. The class was asked to say again what all

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1860-1, p. 215.

this lesson was about. "The sagacity of insects," was shouted from almost every voice. *The sagacity of insects, in what?* "In providing for their offspring," was the equally ready reply. *Then, what do you understand to be the meaning of the word sagacity?* No answer, except the repetition by some of "the sagacity of insects." It was here suggested that sagacity is an abstract term, and cannot therefore be easily defined, though its meaning in a sentence may, as appeared in this case, be quite well understood. It was admitted that this might be the case to some extent, *though it is the safest* (for a teacher) *to assume that what cannot be expressed or clearly indicated in some way, is not very clearly understood.* The class was again asked to explain in some way what they understood by the "*sagacity of insects*;" *was it, for instance, their food, their colour, or their shape, or was it something altogether different from any of these things?* To this the *Dux* was pressed to give some answer or other, and he said, "It was *their food*;" and the rest of the class concurred!

Teachers should always remember that the poor know little of written language, and that, as a consequence, many words familiar to them, are to such children as unintelligible as Greek or Latin.

**This exercise has another use.** Before leaving this subject, I may remark that I have treated it solely in reference to the explanation of the text of the reading-lesson. It has, however, another and an important use, namely, to increase the vocabulary of the children, and give them a command over the language. When this is the teacher's object, he should proceed, of course, differently from what I have already directed. He should get from the children (or tell to them) *all* the meanings which the word admits of, and, in every case, he should cause them to frame sentences of their own, illustrative of each meaning. If he rely upon the mere repetition of the meanings, as given in a dictionary, he will produce rote answering, to which children are exceedingly prone, and he will fail to convince himself that they really understand what they say, or could apply the words correctly when occasion offered. It is a good plan also to require them to trace the connection between the *primary* and the several *secondary* meanings of each word, for this not only improves their knowledge of language—thereby insuring correctness and precision in composing—but it makes thought itself definite and exact, and enlarges the understanding.

**This exercise not sufficient of itself to produce intelligent reading.** One would think that to explain the words of any lesson would be all that was required to make that lesson fully understood; but it is found in practice that something more is necessary.

**Analysis necessary.** *The sentences themselves must be carefully analysed, and their connection with each other clearly explained.*

**Why.** To prove that this is necessary, take, for instance, the following extract: 'How this came about seems very wonderful, but as the same thing is still going on in the world, people who have carefully attended to it, are able to tell us how it happened.'

It is plain, that no matter how well a child may know the meanings of each of these words, he will still be unable to comprehend the drift of the passage, unless, in addition, he knows to what '*this*' relates in the expression 'how this came about,' and can tell to what *thing* allusion is made in the phrase 'the same thing,' and for what '*it*' stands in the two places where it occurs.

The difficulty of understanding the meaning of the passage may arise also from some peculiarities of expression. For instance, 'The knowledge of birds is called ornithology,' has led many children to think that it is the knowledge which birds actually possess which is so called. In the scriptural phrase, 'The land is before thee,' the word '*before*' is not used in its customary sense of expressing the opposite of the word '*behind*,' and therefore needs special explanation. And again in the sentence, 'Geography does not tell us what the land and water are *in themselves*,' children may be quite unable to form any idea of what it is intended to express by the two last words. It may be said, indeed, that these extracts are themselves of faulty composition, and should not therefore occur; but the teacher should be prepared to deal with what actually *does* occur, and not with what *ought* to occur.<sup>1</sup>

**How to conduct this.** The teacher should test by suitable questions, in every case of which he has any doubt, whether or not the pupils fully understand what they say. The form of these questions will be easily seen from the nature of the difficulties themselves. I can give no hint for the detection of peculiarities of expression; this each teacher will do more or else efficiently, in proportion as he is more or less conversant with English literature; but with regard to the other, I may remark generally, that the difficulties will be found to depend chiefly upon the pronouns and connecting words. The teacher should therefore see that the force of these, especially, is understood.

<sup>1</sup> The following is an extract from a circular letter to her Majesty's Inspectors of Schools, dated October 16, 1852 (Min. of Council, 1852-3, p. 70):—

'It is unnecessary to remark that the power to read well does not depend upon distinct articulation, correct accents, and a certain exertion

of the voice only: it depends also, and principally, upon an *intelligent analysis of the several parts of every sentence*; upon the distinction of subject and predicate; of principal and accessory clauses; and, generally, upon a relation of each word, *in sense and construction*, to the rest.'

**This must not be confounded with questions on subject of book.** Such an exercise as this must not be confounded with questions on the subject-matter of the lesson, though it is, of course, most intimately connected with it. It, however, resembles, as will be seen, more nearly a preparatory parsing exercise, and forms, indeed, a most admirable foundation for the intelligent comprehension of that subject.

**To be with open books.** During the time when reading is taught as a distinct lesson, there should be very little of this analysis, as the object then is to acquire fluency and correctness of expression; but at other times it should be frequently resorted to—with the junior classes, however, much more frequently than with the senior. And as its object is not to test what the children have remembered, but simply what their reading has enabled them to understand, it ought to be carried on with the open books before them.

The previous rules are sufficient of themselves to produce good reading; but as many teachers mar their efficiency by some special faults, it is necessary to point those out in order to make my subject complete.

**1. Interruptions.** As reading to be good must be expressive, must be connected, and must make sense, all interruptions, of whatever kind, must tend to injure it, and therefore, when they are permissible at all, it is only as a choice of evils. *Avoid interruptions* is therefore an important general rule. It is one, however, frequently violated by teachers; but, I must say, that they do so with the best motives. They are continually interrupting the reading to make corrections, or to ask questions upon the subject-matter of the lesson. Now, though corrections and explanations are valuable and essential, they become injurious, if ill-timed or misplaced.

**Interruption to produce accuracy explained.** When a child, at present, makes a mistake, we may expect one of the following things to happen: The error is at once detected by the master, and the child is called upon to correct it; or (2) one of the children calls it out; after which he generally goes above the boy who failed, either beginning to read himself, or, which is much less objectionable, reading after the depressed child finishes. Sometimes, however, instead of calling out the error, the children who discover it hold out their hands until the boy has ceased to read, or until some one of them is called upon to name it. The distraction created by such a course is greatly increased when the hands are kept fluttering before the reader's face, as when long continued it is morally impossible he could think of anything else.

And some masters would appear to take a pleasure in this folly, from the length of time which they permit it to go on.

In other cases, when the master detects the error, he does not immediately make it known, but, with the view of testing the attention of the class, he asks them to name the error committed. It generally happens, however, that the error was noticed by none but himself; but, from being unwilling to confess this, the boys answer at random. Hence arises a series of very painful guesses, which is put an end to only by the disclosure of the real fault—one very frequently so trifling as to be beneath notice, or one beyond the comprehension of the children.

My experience of the schools in which these plans are adopted convinces me that they are ineffectual to produce correct reading, though they are specially designed to do so.

**Proper plan.** Instead of adopting any of these, the best way is to wait until the child has finished the reading; the teacher can then draw the child's attention to whatever errors he may have committed, and the remarks will have more weight both with him and the rest of the class from their being made deliberately, and from the children's being attentive and prepared to receive them.

**Interruption to give information.** Interruptions which relate to the text itself, or to subjects connected with it, err from a different cause. They make the reading disconnected, and, by wasting the time of the lesson in continued questioning, they do not allow sufficient opportunity for the actual practice of reading, by which alone fluency can be acquired. This is the fault, generally, into which clever teachers fall, if young and inexperienced. It is the object they have in view which sets them astray. But they ought to remember that there are two rules which no good teacher ever violates—'a time for everything, and everything in its own time;' and 'teach one thing at a time, and only one.' If, for instance, the object be to teach reading, teach it alone; if to teach spelling, confine the instructions to that branch; if the subject-matter of the book be the object aimed at, avoid all digressions about grammar, geography, history, &c. The second of these rules is, in my opinion, one of great importance, and, though violated in nearly all subjects, it is more violated in reading than in any other.

**Interruption for analysis.** With the junior classes the reading *may* be interrupted for the purpose of analysis, but with the seniors it is better to ask no questions whatever until the child has completely finished.

**2. Undue attention to pauses.** Secondly, *they force their pupils' attention too much upon the grammatical or printed pauses.* From an over-anxiety to make them attend carefully to these



marks, many teachers cause them to count at each, to a certain length, determined by its character. Thus, at a comma, they count *one*; at a semicolon, they count *two*; at a colon, *three*; and at a period, they count *four*. When this is done audibly, the effect is very absurd. Take the following as an instance: 'We are told in the Bible that God made all things in six days *one two three four* The earth was at first dark *one* and without form *one two three four* Then God said *one* "Let there be light" *one two* and there was light *one two three four*' No pause being made in the sound until the end; where the pauses ought to occur being filled up by the repetition of the words one, two, three, four.

Children so taught overlook, in their desire to count correctly, the proper grouping of the words, their proper utterance, and the sense they convey.

**Why these pauses are not very important.** These pauses are not, in my estimation, of so much importance in securing good reading as is generally attributed to them. They appear to be intended chiefly to aid a person in collecting and expressing, *at first sight*, the meaning the author intends to convey, and are, as it were, his instructions as to how he intends his words to be taken. When, therefore, his meaning is fully understood, they are, to a great extent, worthless, as, in such a case, nature assists in the proper expression, independently of all printed guides, and this to so great an extent that it is almost impossible, as any one may convince himself of by trying, to speak incorrectly what he thoroughly comprehends.

If this be true, those marks are of but little value to the junior classes, from their not having yet acquired sufficient facility in reading to enable them to collect the meaning of the text by themselves, and when told the meaning, pauses are, as it appears, unnecessary—yet it is with these very children that the system is chiefly practised.

**Reading by imitation renders any special attention to them unnecessary.** Pauses are to the advanced children of the same value that they are to the teacher himself; but these are generally as capable as he of making use of them. I do not think, therefore, that this subject should receive any marked attention whatever from the teacher. If pupils have been taught to read by imitation, and if the master depend solely upon his own ear to detect whether they read too fast or too slow, or stop in the proper places, it will be unnecessary to put them in mind of the pauses. Such children will have learned to be guided by the rhetorical but unprinted pauses, which, after all, are the real ones, and to whose accuracy and minuteness the others are but an approach.

**3. Stopping at each full stop.** *Teachers should avoid the error of limiting the portion for each boy's reading to what is contained between two full stops.* It is true that when there is no fixed limit, the boy who reads is found to hurry over the ending words of the sentence, to begin again before the next boy has time to do so, and his whole anxiety appears to be to get fairly launched into a new sentence, and so place himself beyond the risk of interruption. He pays scarcely any attention to what he reads, or how he reads it. The rule that requires them to stop at each full stop certainly remedies these evils, but its tendency is to destroy both the teaching of the reading and the subject-matter of the lesson; for reading consists not so much in repeating accurately one sentence, as in joining several (correctly repeated, of course) properly together—the voice at the beginning of the one bearing, of necessity, a defined relation to the voice at the ending of the other; and the truest knowledge of the subject-matter is acquired, not by receiving isolated facts, such as are contained in single sentences, but by obtaining several joined together in accordance with the natural connection existing between themselves and the subject to which they belong.

To understand this, take a lesson upon 'The Tree.' This will naturally be arranged under the following heads: (1) the root; (2) the trunk or body; (3) the boughs and branches; (4) the leaves; (5) the blossoms; and (6) the fruit. And, therefore, to gain the most correct idea of a tree, the facts mentioned under each head should enter the mind together. We should read first about the root, then about the body, then about the boughs, and so on, and avoid blending the facts together which appear under different heads. But, however, as several full stops may occur in the description of each part, the system which would limit a boy to one sentence would most certainly destroy the unity of each part, and render the comprehension of the whole vague and uncertain. The facts would enter the mind devoid of that systematic arrangement which forms an essential feature in the ideas we know most of, and remember longest.

**Each should read till the description of each part is complete.** Each boy should, as a general rule, read to where the description of one part is complete. When the description is, however, too small, several of them may be joined together. In lessons which are not descriptive, it may be laid down as a general rule, that each child should read from thirty to forty lines. I see that in the 'Graduated Series of Lesson Books,' published by Messrs. Longman, special arrangements have been made, in the printing, to remedy this fault. The following mark (. . .) indicates the place

where each child may stop with most advantage:<sup>1</sup> 'this,' as the editor says, 'affords to each pupil a complete reading-exercise, and is a more satisfactory resting-point than the mere full stop. Of course, if time permitted, each child may read two or three of such divisions.

**Means to keep the class attentive.** In conclusion, I may remark that all these suggestions proceed on the understanding that the class is attentive. If not attentive, much of their value is lost. To secure attention, the following means may be adopted:—

(1) Do not permit the boys to read until told to do so. (2) Do not select them consecutively. They will thus, from not knowing when they will be called upon, be kept continually on the watch. (3) The most careless ought to be most frequently called upon; and, now and then, a child who has already read may be required to read again, to prevent the possibility of his growing careless, as some are inclined to do, when they have finished their own portion. (4) A vigilant eye and an active manner are, however, the best means. If the teacher is active and attentive, the children will most likely be so too; and if they feel that they cannot idle without being seen, it is almost certain that they will not attempt it.

(5) Avoid what is called 'taking places' during the reading portion of the lesson. It may be adopted, occasionally, in the general questioning upon the text, but it is never adopted with advantage when the pupils are merely reading. At best, indeed, it is but a mechanical means for securing that attention which should be the result of an interest in the lesson, created and sustained by the master's own skill and manner.

<sup>1</sup> See page 30, for a lesson so printed.

## CHAPTER II.

## LESSON BOOKS.

**Object.** Under this head I propose to speak of the *explanation* of the subject-matter of the reading books.

**Why necessary to be separated from remarks on intelligent reading.** This explanation is so intimately connected with what, in the previous pages, I have referred to as the intelligent comprehension of the text, which is a part of intellectual reading, that it might have formed, with propriety, a portion of the last chapter; but as it is a subject of great importance, and upon which my remarks must be extensive, I have deemed it more judicious to devote to it a separate place.

**My remarks apply to any series of lesson books.** My remarks will assist in the teaching of any series of lesson books, though it is from those published by the Commissioners of National Education in Ireland, and from Messrs. Longman and Co.'s 'Graduated Series,' that I have chiefly extracted, when I found that quotations were necessary to illustrate what I advanced. I have selected those, from their being so extensively used in every country where the English language is spoken.

**Chief points to be attended to.** In dealing with the text of the reading-lesson, the chief points to be attended to are evidently the following: (1) The meanings of the words and phrases of the book; (2) the actual reading; (3) the examination upon the statements of the author, and their natural expansion; and (4) such a résumé of the whole as will test the attention and intelligence of the children, and fix the lesson more firmly in their minds.

**First two treated of in previous chapter.** As I have already given, in the previous chapter, the rules by which the teacher ought to be guided in dealing with the first two, it only now remains for me to add those which refer to the remaining points.

**Rule 1. Avoid the phraseology of book in asking questions and in answers.** This rule is very generally violated, but chiefly by old, untrained, or ill-informed teachers. With such, the questions are invariably too mechanical and routine, and inhere

too closely to the exact words of the text. They read to the end of a clause, and add to it one of the interrogatives, *how, what, where, &c.*, to give the form of a question, and the child conveys his answer in the remaining words of the sentence.

**Example, from an actual case.** The questions and answers below, taken down during my inspection of a school, illustrate what I mean. They are recorded in the exact words and order in which they occurred, and refer to the following lesson upon

‘ THE ANT.’

‘ When you are at play on the common, or in the fields, I dare say you have often seen small heaps of earth, thrown up on all sides, and swarming with busy little insects, running to and fro. These little insects are called ants, and it is quite worth while to stop and watch how they build their houses.

‘ You will see them come laden with leaves, bits of wood, sand, earth, and the gum of trees ; with these they form their little hills. When their houses are built, these busy ants go out and seek their food, which they lodge in their little store-houses till the time of need.

‘ Though the ant is so small an insect here, yet in some warm climates it is much larger, and builds a hill from ten to twelve feet high. These ants are very fierce and warlike ; they often destroy rats, poultry, and even sheep. Yet they have their use. In one distant and very hot country, where there are numbers of these ants, the houses swarm with all kinds of nasty vermin, such as rats, mice, and clocks. From time to time, immense bodies of ants may be seen, marching up to a house, and soon the walls, ceilings and floors are alive with them, and they get into all the drawers and chests. Now begins a fierce battle between the ants and the rats, and other vermin ; it goes on for some hours ; after which, you may see the ants dragging off their prey, quite dead, and feasting on their bodies outside the house. Then the people, who have been waiting out of doors, gladly return to their houses, which they find quite clear from all vermin.’

*Teacher.* When you are at play on the common, or in the fields, I dare say you have often seen—what ?

*Child.* Small heaps of earth thrown up on all sides.

*Teacher.* And swarming with—what ?

*Child.* Busy little insects running to and fro.

*Teacher.* These little insects are called—what ?

*Child.* Ants.

*Teacher.* And it is quite worth while to stop and watch— ?

*Child.* How they build their houses.

*Teacher.* You will see them come laden with—what?

*Child.* Leaves, bits of wood, sand, earth, and the gum of trees.

*Teacher.* With these they build—what?

*Child.* Their houses. &c. &c.

**Faults of.** Such questions do not test the *substance* of the text, but merely the *remembrance of its words*; and so little judgment is required in framing them, that any intelligent boy in the class, when put up to the *trick* (for it is but a trick), might examine upon the lesson quite as well as the master himself. He might not indeed put his questions with so much quickness and animation, or with such an air of confidence, but he certainly could frame them quite as well, and convey quite as much information. A lesson so taught does not exercise the child's understanding, nor does it appeal to his intelligence. When a master reads a part of a sentence as a question, nothing is more natural than that the child should give the remaining portion as the answer; and this, if he have a good memory, he can do without understanding the meaning of what he says, and, probably, with his thoughts fixed anywhere but on the subject before him.

**Rule 2. Every question must relate to the subject, and every answer to the predicate.** The master should consider (1) what is the *exact thing* of which each sentence treats, and (2) what the author says of it, and he should frame his question and test the reply accordingly. This rule appears too simple. To require from the master to know what he is going to ask about and what sort of answer he intends to receive, appears at first sight to be not only unnecessary, but absurd. A little experience of schools, however, will convince one that many questions are asked upon the facts of a lesson which would not have been asked had these facts been fully known by the examiner. For instance, in the opening part of the lesson just given the author's object was simply to tell the children where ants dwell or are found (this he certainly does in the very worst way), and the information could be elicited by any of the following questions: Where are ants met with? What places do they inhabit? In what kind of place do they build their hills? &c. The questions previously given, and which are the ones often met with, so evidently fail in testing what the author intended to convey, that it justifies us in saying of those teachers who make use of them that they do not themselves perceive clearly the exact information they ought to elicit.

**Rule 2 would render Rule 1 unnecessary, if carefully carried out.** Were this rule carefully carried out, there would be no need for Rule 1; for if a teacher recognises the *subject* and *predicate* of a sentence, and, by his questions, simply tries whether

his children also understand the statements made in the book, the wording of his questions will naturally differ from the phraseology of the author, because they have different objects to attain.

To carry out Rule 2, mark subject on margin in accordance with the example below. In order to carry out this rule successfully, I would recommend every teacher to mark upon the margin of his class books (I have already said that he should have a special set for himself) the *subject* of each important division of the lesson. The *predicate* need not be marked, as the text will be a sufficient guide to it. Take, for instance, the following lesson upon 'The Martin.' (Longman and Co.'s 'Graduated Series,' book iii. p. 220.) His notes might be written as printed in the margin.

'THE MARTIN.'

Time they visit us.	{	'A few house-martins begin to appear about the sixteenth of April; usually some few days later than the swallow. For some time after they appear, swallows in general pay no attention to nest-building, but play and sport about, to recruit from the fatigue of their journey from warmer countries. . . . About the middle of May, if the weather be fine, the martin begins to think in earnest of providing a mansion for his family. The crust or shell of this nest seems to be formed of such dirt or loam as comes most readily to hand, and is tempered and wrought together with little bits of broken straw to render it tough and firm. . . . As this bird often builds against a perpendicular wall without any projecting ledge under, it requires its utmost efforts to get the first foundation firmly fixed. In doing this, the bird not only clings with its claws, but partly supports itself by strongly bending its tail against the wall; and, thus steadied, it works and plasters the materials into the face of the brick or stone. . . . Then that this work may not, while it is soft and green, pull itself down by its own weight, the provident architect has prudence and sense enough not to advance her work too fast. She builds only in the morning, and gives the rest of the day to food and amusement, so that the clay has sufficient time to dry and harden. . . . About half an inch seems to be a sufficient layer for a day. Thus careful workmen when they build mud walls, informed at first perhaps by this little bird, raise but a moderate layer at a time, and then stop, lest the work should become top-heavy, and so be ruined by its own weight. . . . By this
Their first occupation.		
Time they begin to build.		
Material for crust of nest.		
How fixed to wall.		
Does not build fast.		
Quantity built daily, and time at it.		
A parallel case.		

method, in about ten or twelve days a nearly globular nest is formed, with a small hole towards the top, strong, compact, and warm.

*Time to finish nest.*

'The shell or crust of the nest is a sort of rustic work full of little knobs on the outside: nor is the inside of those that I have examined smoothed with any exactness at all. It is rendered soft and warm, and fit for the laying of eggs, by a lining of small straws, grasses, and feathers; and sometimes by a bed of moss interwoven with wool.'

*Description of complete nest.*

'As the young of small birds quickly arrive at their full growth, they soon become impatient of confinement, and sit all day with their heads out at the hole, where the dams, clinging to the nest, supply them with food from morning till night. For a time the young are fed on the wing by their parents; but this is done by so quick and almost imperceptible a movement, that a person must have attended very exactly to their motions before he would be able to perceive it. . . . As soon as the young are able to shift for themselves, the dams immediately turn their thoughts to the business of a second brood. The first flight, shaken off and rejected by their nurses, meet in great flocks, and these are the birds that are seen clustering and hovering on sunny mornings and evenings round towers and steeples, and on the roofs of churches and houses.'

*Young birds impatient.*

*How the young are fed.*

*Second brood.*

*What becomes of first brood.*

'Martins are by far the least active of the four species; their wings and tails are short, and therefore they are not capable of such surprising turns and quick and glancing movements as the swallow. Accordingly they make use of a quiet easy motion in a middle region of the air, seldom mounting to any great height, and never sweeping long together over the surface of the ground or of the water. . . . They do not wander far for food, but frequent sheltered districts, over some lake, or under some hanging wood, or in some hollow vale, especially in windy weather.'

*Why they are slower than the swallow.*

*Their flying.*

*Where they get their food.*

'As the summer declines, the congregating flocks increase in numbers daily by the constant accession of the second broods, till at last they swarm in myriads upon myriads round the villages on the Thames, darkening the face of the sky. They retire together in vast flocks about the beginning of October, in search of milder climates, to the south.'

*Leaving the country.*

These marginal notes would show the teacher *what* he was to



ask about, and knowing this he would have little difficulty in framing his questions. The very fact of referring to the margin and not to the text would assist him, for it is the rote knowledge of the text that too often confuses and leads to rote questioning.

**Rule 3. Expansion of the text necessary, but it must be legitimate.** It is impossible that any author could adapt his language to the capacity of every child, or convey his information so that all will comprehend it. Neither could he compress into the limits of an ordinary lesson all the most important facts of many subjects; and hence *explanation* and *expansion* are necessary parts of a teacher's duty; but they should be kept within well-defined limits. The expansion of a lesson is legitimate only where the questions can be easily traced to their source in the subject-matter itself. All other questions, in my estimation, come under the head of *rambling teaching*—a system deserving of special mention from the injury it does, and from its extensive use.

**Rambling teaching.—What it is.** The reading books are used to teach spelling, meanings of words, derivations, grammar, geography, history, &c.; and the system I now speak of is that which blends all these subjects together in one common lesson. As an instance, take the following extract from 'The Martin,' just referred to:—

**Example.** 'As this bird often builds against a perpendicular wall without any projecting ledge under, it requires its utmost efforts to get the first foundation firmly fixed.'

The lesson goes on somewhat thus:—

*Against what kind of a wall does the martin build? 'A perpendicular wall.' Spell 'perpendicular.' What part of speech is it? Why? What other part of speech is it often? Give examples. What sort of a ledge is a projecting ledge? Root of projecting? Prefix? Affix? Meaning of these? Give other words from the same root? Their meaning? Give other words beginning with 'pro'? others ending with 'ing'? &c.*

Or, again: *Spell 'foundation.' How many letters are vowels? How many are, therefore, consonants?* This answer is to be found by subtraction, so as to make it, as the advocates of this system say, an interesting question in arithmetic. But they forget that they have no right thus to jumble the elements of grammar and arithmetic together, in teaching a subject which has probably as little natural connection with either as either has with chemistry.

Or, again: *Spell 'firmly.' What is the last letter in 'firmly'? why a vowel? Mention other words ending with this letter* (in order to give, as the advocates of this system again say, a facility in using the English language).

**Why wrong.** Such teaching appears to me to be a violation of common sense, and of that excellent rule already mentioned—

*'Teach one thing at a time, and only one.'*

It jumbles everything so thoroughly together, that it would be impossible for a child to tell what *subject* he had been learning, or for the master to say what he had been teaching. And how can teaching be called rational, where neither master nor child knows at what he aims? If we teach grammar, it is surely not too much to expect that we shall treat of language, and that the child will know that we do so; or if we teach geography, that we shall treat of the earth; or if we wish to treat of arithmetic, that we confine ourselves to number? And why should we not expect that in a reading-lesson the subject-matter will form the sole ground of our remarks, *and that the child will feel that it is so?*

I cannot see anything in the lesson, for instance, from which the above extract is taken, to authorise my asking how many letters there are in *foundation*, or how many will remain when all the vowels are taken away. I might just as well in a grammar-lesson ask how many letters are in the word *preposition*, or *conjunction*, and follow it up by asking how many parts of speech would remain if the noun and adjective were gone. Nor can I at all understand why the time of a class should be taken up in enumerating the words which begin or end with *y*. I know that it is argued that by such an exercise a valuable facility of expression and a command over our language are acquired. But, in my opinion, this is quite a mistake. There is certainly a facility acquired of selecting words beginning or ending with this letter, but I have yet to learn how such a facility is to be made valuable.

**Its display is the chief cause of its popularity.** The chief cause which makes it popular is the display which is naturally attached to it; and on this account it is the vice of many of our most promising teachers at the outset of their career, or after a short course of training in some model school.<sup>1</sup> It is a change

<sup>1</sup> It is probably from finding this system practised by such men, that it is called *intellectual*; but, in addition to other reasons, to show that it is anything but intellectual, we have only to consider the amount of mere routine into which it almost always degenerates. For when teachers are at liberty to depart on every occasion from the subject before them, they

naturally become at last to wear fixed channels, into which they always diverge—their questions become stereotyped in a certain fixed order, and when they ask the first of the series, they continue asking them until the end. And this happens so frequently that, as Mr. McCreedy says, 'any experienced inspector, in the case of many schools, could name

from the old system sufficiently showy to please themselves, and sufficiently like good teaching to deceive most others. They are attracted by the quickness with which questions can be put, and with the appearance of vivacity and skilfulness which a lesson presents when so conducted. But the *trick* will soon be discovered, and must bring discredit upon all who have recourse to it.

No system of teaching can ever succeed that thus fritters away, among several subjects, the time designed for one, which allows the facts to enter the mind distorted and disjointed, and which does not admit of the employment of the best methods of teaching the subjects it treats of.<sup>1</sup>

**Example of legitimate expansion.** Expansion to be legitimate must, as I have said, naturally spring from the text, and be easily traceable to it. To illustrate this, take the lesson on 'The Ant,' already given. It is clear that the author wished to tell: (1) where ants live; (2) in what they live; (3) of what their hills are formed; (4) of their foresight in laying up food; (5) of their size in warm climates; (6) of the injury they do; (7) of the good they do. And it is clear, also, that the following questions would elicit all this information from the children with as much brevity and accuracy as are desirable.

(1) *In what localities are ants found?* 'In fields and waste grounds.'

(2) *What are their little houses called?* 'Ant-hills.'

(3) *Of what are these hills made?* 'Of leaves, bits of trees, gum, earth, &c.'

(4) *What do they do with the food they collect?* 'The part they do not eat, they lay by for use in winter.'

(5) *What size are the ant-hills in other countries?* 'From ten to twelve feet.'

(6) *How do they injure us?* 'They destroy our food.'

(7) *Of what use are they?* 'They kill rats, mice, and other vermin.'

In this there is no expansion of the text whatever. The questions test merely the children's knowledge of the author's statements, and the lesson is valuable in proportion as these statements are satisfactory, important, and complete. It is good, in fact, as far as it goes, but it ought to be expanded somewhat in the following manner, and in the places selected:—

(1) The different places in which insects take up their abode

beforehand thirty per cent. of the questions he is destined afterwards to hear in his presence.'

<sup>1</sup> See Reports of the Commis-

sioners of National Education, Ireland, for Mr. McCreedy's remarks on this subject; and Min. of Council, 1845, vol. ii. p. 388, for Mr. Gordon's.

may be stated. Some dwell in the air, some in water, some in marshes, some in old walls, &c., but ants live in mounds of earth, which they build in commons and the waste portions of fields. (Why the *cultivated* portions would not answer might also be stated.)

(2) The method by which ants carry their food, and the materials for their hills, should be explained; because children cannot understand without explanation how such very small insects can perform these tasks.

(3) The fact that ants live together in societies should be illustrated by the parallel case of the bee. The proof of the foresight given in the lesson should also be shown to be an error, and, from what it sprang.

(4) Some tangible illustration of the size of the ant, in this and other climates, is necessary (that is, when the insects themselves cannot be produced). Their hills, also, should be compared in height with the height of what the children know, as the height of the ceiling, or of the desk, &c.

(5) Again, it should be shown that the injury done by these insects is very little in comparison with the good they do; and, moreover, as we can prevent the injury, we can reap all the benefits of these useful creatures without any of their disadvantages.

(6) And finally, it should be explained how much better it is that they should eat and drag off their prey in warm climates, than that they should simply kill and leave it, as a dog does a rat.

**In expanding a lesson the quality of a teacher is known.** It is in this that the difference between teachers is most perceptible. The man of experience and intelligence easily selects from the information which he has acquired by reading facts illustrative of the lesson. His judgment enables him to reject what is inapplicable, and by his superiority of skill he dovetails what he does select so cleverly into the text, that the whole appears as one completed piece. Whereas, one of the other class of teachers either confines himself exclusively to the text—from having no stock of information from which to cull, or taste to guide him in his choice—or else he wanders into a set of stereotyped questions upon every subject in the school course, distracting and bewildering his pupils.

**Explanations.—Style of.** The explanations should be *brief*, so as not to weary the children, or burden their memories. They should be *definite* and *complete*, so as to suggest no doubt, and require nothing supplementary, and above all, they should be *couched in plain and intelligible language*. The children should, immediately after each explanation, be questioned upon it, as upon

the text itself, to see that it is understood, and in what way; *for much of the value of explanation is lost by taking it for granted that it is understood.*

**Expansion to be noted on margin, or in leaves inserted for the purpose.** In Rule 2, I recommended the teachers to note in the margin the facts to be brought before the class, as contained in the text-book itself; I think they should also note which of these they intend to expand, and how. In doing this each teacher will adopt the system of marking most intelligible to himself. If there is no room on the margin, he should get the lesson books rebound, desiring the binder to insert two or three white leaves between each pair of printed leaves, and use these for notings. The expense would be very trifling.

**Use of maps in explaining reading-lesson.** Where allusion is made to countries, it is sometimes necessary to point them out on the Map of the World—no other map can afford so good an idea of their position in respect to other countries with which they may be compared; but it is not correct to speak of these countries further than it is absolutely necessary to explain the text. If we say, for instance, that ‘the people of Great Britain and Ireland form but a small portion of the people of this world,’ it will not do to take occasion from such a reference to these countries to ask, as some do, the boundaries of Great Britain, the chief towns and rivers in England and Scotland, and the provinces and counties of Ireland. These do not explain the text, and should be postponed until the geography-lesson, to which they really belong.

**When countries are referred to without being named, child should give name in his reply.** In some lessons a country may be referred to without being *named*, as, for instance, ‘the country where man was first placed,’ ‘the country opposite Gaul,’ ‘the most populous empire in the world,’ &c. In such cases, the child should in his answer give not only the description, but the name of the country referred to, and, of course, he should point the country out on the map.

**Manners and customs of foreign countries to be compared with our own.** Again, when reference is made to the manners and customs of foreign countries, the true expansion of the lesson requires that any difference existing between these and ours should be carefully pointed out. For, by thus comparing them with a standard with which they are already acquainted, the children will be enabled to form correct ideas of them.

**The object itself—its picture, or a sketch on Black Board, required often for explanation.** In some cases either the object itself, or its picture, or a rough sketch on the ‘black board,’

gives a distinctness to the lesson which it otherwise could not possess. No amount of description will enable children to realise the true form of any object; or, if it could, would it enable them to do so as quickly and adequately as a glance at its picture or at the thing itself. The impression made is also more vivid, and for that reason more permanent and valuable. How interesting the lesson on 'The Ant' becomes by the production of one of these insects for the inspection of the class; or how vividly the facts of the lesson on 'The Butterfly' would be understood and impressed upon their minds if the teacher laid before them one of these animals in its various stages of egg, larva, chrysalis, and winged inhabitant of air! How easy to explain lessons upon the tiger, lion, fox, &c., by the aid of coloured prints of these animals! Take, again, a lesson on botany. How long would one discourse about the calyx, corolla, stamens, petals, sepals, pistil, &c., without making himself understood, or producing the same impression that he would make by picking a flower to pieces before the class, and naming each part as he threw it aside!

All required in the way of tangible illustrations is happily inexpensive, and the collection of most of them may be made a pleasant occupation to both teacher and children.

**Hints to form an object cabinet.** The chief expense is in the purchase of prints; but teachers, both in England and Ireland,<sup>1</sup> have peculiar facilities afforded them, so that even in this case the amount will not prove heavy. But pictures should be used only where the object itself cannot be had, or conveniently exhibited. The master should collect from time to time, as opportunity offers, a specimen of every article mentioned in the reading books, and he should arrange them in a press or cabinet specially provided for the purpose, *in the order of the lessons themselves*, so that when called upon to teach any lesson he would find in *one* place all the objects he would require for illustration.

In forming this cabinet he should bring in the aid of his children, by requiring each to get specimens of those inexpensive articles with which they are familiar. But whether he forms the cabinet himself, or receives the assistance of his scholars, he should accept no specimens except *working* specimens. Most of the object cases generally met with contain specimens too small to give a correct idea of the object to a large class without considerable trouble, or else so neat and delicate that they cannot be handled without injury. They are thus rendered almost worthless.

A cabinet formed as I point out is infinitely preferable to any

<sup>1</sup> In Ireland the Commissioners of National Education supply their schools with apparatus at an extremely low cost.

that can be purchased. The very acts of collection and arrangement, in which the children take part, will improve their perceptive faculties, and teach them to observe and think; while, as they will naturally take more interest in their own work, they will be more attentive during the lesson, and derive, by this means, more improvement from the master's teaching.

**Rule 4. Résumé of lesson required.** Many teachers examine fairly—their questions are properly framed and directed, either to the exact statements of the author, or their legitimate expansion—and yet the permanent results effected are unsatisfactory, simply from omitting to test, by a recapitulation at the close of the lesson, how and how many of their statements were really understood, and likely to be remembered and applied.

**Teachers sometimes think it unnecessary.** This is a very serious omission; for, next to explaining the lesson, it is clearly necessary to see that that explanation is understood. Many teachers may fancy that their remarks have been so lucidly made, and in such simple language, that no child could fail to comprehend them, and on this account they may think the application of this rule a mere waste of time; but if they reflect upon the great variety in the children of even the best-assorted class, upon the dulness of some, the listlessness, apathy, inattention, or mental preoccupation of others, they will find ample reason to see that, even when the lesson has been most carefully taught, when all the facts have been conveyed in the clearest manner, there will be some children either untouched at all, or very dimly impressed indeed, with what was repeated before them, while others may have picked up facts in so confused a manner as to be incapable of applying them legitimately afterwards.

**Its uses.** A careful résumé will test all this; it will point out the children who are inattentive, or intellectually slow, and in what way the lesson has affected the minds of the others; and it will thus enable the teachers to apply to each the special remedies which his case requires. But it will also accustom the children to express themselves orally with facility and correctness—a part of education now much neglected. To know a thing and to be able to state it ought to be inseparably connected; but now, as the experience of every one will prove, a child may know, and yet be unable to show that he does so.

**Oral composition and résumé neglected in this country.** In Ireland this exercise is scarcely, if at all, attended to. In England it receives a good deal of care; in America it forms an important element in primary school education; while in Germany and some other countries it is carried to so great a length that a considerable time is spent with all newly-admitted children solely

in getting them to express their thoughts *vis à voce*, with readiness and accuracy.

**Dr. Johnson's opinion in its favour.** Dr. Johnson says of it, that it is an excellent plan to encourage children to repeat whatever of importance they may have read, or seen, or heard of. 'The very attempt,' he adds, 'to tell it to others would fix it most indelibly on their own minds;' and he relates that his mother was in the habit of encouraging him to repeat to the gardener whatever she had taught him.

**Chiefly from neglect of this rule that the lesson books are not known.** It is chiefly from a neglect of this exercise that masters themselves do not know the books better than they do, and that their children, even those who have gone over them twice or three times, are unable to answer upon a lesson selected at random from the table of contents, unless they are allowed to refresh their minds by reading it again. Both teachers and children labour under a mistake with respect to the information these books contain. The one regards it as his duty to *explain* it, the other tries to *understand* it, but neither seems to think that it is compulsory upon him to *remember* it. And as a consequence of this, it happens that there are few teachers indeed who could teach a lesson without hearing it read again, and without the aid of the book, although they had frequently taught it before, and very few scholars who could answer upon what they had passed over for a few weeks, or even for a few days.

**This is not so in grammar, geography, &c.—Should not be so in reading books.** But surely it is not too much to expect that this should be otherwise? If a teacher be called upon to examine a child upon grammar, geography, arithmetic, or geometry, for instance, would he not be ashamed to confess his inability to do so unless allowed to read the book again? And unless the child can answer creditably on these subjects so far as he has gone, will not the results be looked upon as unsatisfactory? What is there in the nature of the reading books to make a similar test unfair?

**It may be said that the scattered arrangement of the lessons interferes.** This is true to some extent: for when the subjects treated of are broken up into chapters, which are separated by others with which they have no connection, the information does not enter the mind in that connected and methodised form which gives to other studies much of their permanence and value; but the whole fault cannot be traced to this cause, especially as many of the lessons, such, for instance, as those upon zoology and history, are not so separated, and as the others may be read connectedly if the teachers wish. The truth is, that whatever other



causes may be aiding and assisting, the principal one is to be had in the neglect of the present rule.<sup>1</sup>

**Points to be attended to in carrying out this rule.** In carrying this rule out, the following points require attention: (1) the pupils should be encouraged to give *first in order*—no matter in what order they learned them—what appeared most new and most interesting to them, and when any child obviously fails in this, the others should be induced to excel him; (2) the expansion of the text should be repeated as well as the text itself; (3) nothing should be accepted but what has been actually touched upon by the teacher, and it should be conveyed by the child *in the way it was intended to be used*; (4) in all cases the pupils should use the words of their own simple vocabulary; and (5) the pupils should answer as they are selected at random through the class.

**Object and advantages of these.** The object of all these is to make the résumé *intelligent and exact*. If the pupils are taken consecutively as they sit, each will have an answer prepared, and when delivered no more attention will be given; if the children are left to themselves, the first child called upon will select the opening part of each lesson, though, in general, it is not the part which is the most interesting, and which ought, therefore, to make the most vivid impression and be first quoted; if not encouraged day by day to excel each other in giving the facts in order of their importance, and arranged with respect to what the master intended them to prove, or if allowed to answer in the words of the book, the exercise will degenerate into mere rote work; and, finally, the very meaning of the word résumé shows that all things touched upon, whether in the text or its expansion, should be repeated, and none others.

**Children at first find a difficulty in expressing themselves.** Children, at first, very often experience a difficulty in giving in their own words the substance of what they are taught, even when they fully comprehend it. This often proceeds from their failing to perceive what it is which is exactly required from them. The best guide is to tell them to remember any question that was put

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Sheridan (Report of the Commissioners of National Education in Ireland for 1858) gives another reason for the ignorance spoken of. He says: 'When a class has read one-half or one-fourth of its lesson book, the common practice is to make the children *commence the book again*, and this alternation of progress and retrogression goes on so often, and so long, that the children at last come to have the lessons in the beginning of the

book off by heart, or nearly so, while they know little or nothing of the lessons in the latter half of it. This has the twofold effect of detaining the children too long in the class, and of depriving them of a good deal of the information which the lesson books are intended to supply.'

The fact is, a child should not be put back until all the lessons are finished.

during the lesson, to themselves or others, and to give the answer which was given to it. They are not, of course, to repeat the question when called upon to remember it; they are merely to think of it, and repeat the substance of the answer.

**Exemplification of the connection between question, answer, and fact.** The following may exemplify the connection which exists between the *question*, the *answer*, and the *fact* which in the résumé the child should give:—

<i>Question.</i>	<i>Answer.</i>
When do birds begin to sing?	In spring.
<i>Fact.</i>	

When do birds begin to build their nests?	In March.
<i>Fact.</i>	

The fact being thus formed of the answer joined to a part of the question. 'Birds begin to sing in spring,' 'Birds begin to build their nests in March'—what the children ought to have learned from the above questions, and what they should repeat when called upon—are evidently so composed.

We may learn from this how very much the character of the question has to do with the quality of the answering. If the *question* be conveyed in the exact words of the book, the *answer* and the *fact* will naturally be so conveyed also.

**Résumé should close every lesson, and be commenced with the lowest classes.** This exercise should close every lesson. It should also be in force even with the lowest classes, for it is quite within the power of every child in them to repeat the few simple facts to which the teacher will consider it his duty in their case to confine himself. The habit also thus early formed will produce very many advantages as the children proceed, while from all that I have already advanced, it is easy to see that every lesson is incomplete, whether of the junior or the senior classes, which does not close with a recapitulation or summary of its parts.

**Résumé should be written as well as oral.** A very valuable form which this exercise may assume is as a written instead of as an oral résumé, and I think that during some portion of the day it should be so practised. The written exercise should differ from what I have just sketched only in being on paper, and in its being immaterial at what time after the lesson it is performed. It may also form a part of the home duties allotted to the children. I need scarcely say, however (for all written exercises prove the same), that if it be conducted unfaithfully or carelessly, if the

papers are not diligently examined, and all errors marked and corrected, it will be valueless, if not actually injurious.

**Preliminary summary and questioning recommended in addition to recapitulation.** Closely allied with this exercise is the practice which prevails in some schools, and which I should be glad to see more common, of giving to the children, before they begin to read, a very brief and familiar account of what they are proceeding to read about. When this is well done, it is astonishing what an amount of interest it excites in the lesson, and how greatly it deepens the impression which they afterwards receive from the language of the text. Along with this the 'teacher should put before his pupils *previously* to their reading each lesson, some questions preliminary to the matter of it, requiring of them answers oral or written, the best they can think of, without consulting the book. Next, let them read the lesson, and afterwards let them be examined as to the portion they have learned.<sup>1</sup>

This preliminary questioning and summary will create the desire to learn, which all good teachers should endeavour to create before proceeding to impart information. It is like creating an appetite before supplying the food to satisfy it.

**Rule 5. Prepare lessons beforehand.** It is a careful and judicious adherence to this rule that enables the teacher to carry out the previous ones as they ought to be carried out, and gives to them the greater portion of their value. Without this preparation there can be no freshness, no suitable variety in the matter to be taught, and the whole scheme of instruction must become a dull and monotonous routine.<sup>2</sup>

**Why necessary.** Preparation is necessary for several reasons. Among others—(1) to discover the facts of the author as simply recorded in the book; (2) to meditate upon their suitable illustration and expansion; (3) to methodise all; and (4) to frame the questions correctly and rapidly, and deal satisfactorily with the answers received.

**1. Time required to discover the facts of author.** The *first* should not, as a general rule, take much previous preparation. Men of intelligence will find it easy to detect the exact points which the author of any ordinary lesson wishes to place before his readers, and men less happily gifted will probably do as much after the first or second reading of the lesson over, as they will by more laborious and longer study.

**2. Time necessary for illustration and expansion.** The

<sup>1</sup> Whately's Annot. Bacon's Essays.

<sup>2</sup> On this point see Reports of the National School Commissioners, Ire-

land, and Min. of Council, 1852-3, p. 872; 1859-60, p. 30; and 1860-1, p. 170.

*second* will be easy or difficult in proportion to a man's tact, and his previous reading. He who has been in the habit of reading general literature extensively, of studying in the way he was afterwards to teach, and of noting in a commonplace book whatever struck his attention, and arranging it in the light in which a child could comprehend it, will have but little difficulty in selecting the information required for illustration and expansion; but all others must necessarily consume, and often very ineffectually, a large amount of time in consulting proper works. A teacher, therefore, to be successful in conducting a lesson, should study himself; he should be ever reading, ever noting new facts, and arranging and simplifying others. No man can make others love reading unless he loves it himself, and no man can sympathise with the difficulties of a student unless he is a student too.

**3. Arrangement.** The *third*, which treats of the regular arrangement of the information, renders previous preparation to some extent a matter of absolute necessity. Many lessons are written so carelessly as to admit of more suitable arrangement, and in many the statements advanced as proofs are so loosely connected with the conclusion which it is sought to establish, that their efficacy is lost if the teacher himself do not remove the error. I remember an instance of failure on this account, which happened with a very good teacher. The lesson was written to prove that all the people in the world are of one race, and consisted of a certain number of distinct and appropriate facts, which the teacher explained fully and clearly enough; but when, at the end of the lesson, I asked the children to use them in proving that we all come from Adam, not one, even of those who remembered them, could do so. The fact was, that the master omitted this part of his duty. His error arose from a want of classification founded upon the object which the lesson had in view.

**This makes special study of each lesson essential.** No amount of *general* reading will remedy this defect. Each day's lesson must have its share of special attention, but, as in the other cases, the difficulty will vary with each teacher. Some men's minds are so comprehensive as to seize the whole subject at a glance, and so methodical as to arrange the parts correctly without trouble, while the minds of other men are neither methodical nor comprehensive, and of course in their case the matter is one of labour and study. Whatever may be the amount of study required, the teacher, however, must undergo it in order to be successful. It is his duty to extract from the lesson all that it is capable of yielding for the child's instruction, and to arrange this information so that he will be able to present it in the most correct form to the minds of his children.

**4. Necessary to prevent hesitation and stumbling in forming questions.** The *fourth*. Some previous preparation is necessary to enable the teacher to put his questions with ease and correctness. It is very painful to witness the exhibition presented by teachers who stumble and hesitate after every question. One question is asked with much labour, the master then pores over the book for some minutes—the class looking on listlessly, or else talking to each other—and then he asks another. He next reads a second piece of the lesson, and asks another question, and so on; his questions are thus delivered to an inattentive class at long intervals; they are ill-directed, ill-worded, ill-arranged, and the lesson itself is sadly stupid and lifeless. He confounds the intelligence of his children, and stamps his own dulness upon them.

**Cannot deal with pupils' answers without previous preparation.** Without previous preparation many teachers will be unable, also, to deal properly with the answers they receive: for these are often incomplete, and require to be supplemented; often mixed with error, and require sifting; and often apparently to the point when quite off the mark, and therefore require direction. Without it, in fact, the questions are likely to be obscure, hesitating, desultory, and ineffective, and the answers of the children to be deficient in accuracy, clearness, and precision.

**Some of the requirements for good questioning.—1. As to tone of voice.** Being led into the subject of questioning, I may add before leaving it that questions to be good must be conveyed in proper language, and in a tone of voice neither monotonous nor disagreeable. Many teachers put their questions in a loud, abrupt, mechanical tone, often flippantly and thoughtlessly, and never vary their voice with the subject. In such cases nature is not acting, and neither the children nor the teachers are impressed with what they are doing. Monotony wearies, while variety of inflection awakens the attention, deepens the impressions made, and gives the pupils a pleasure in what they are taught. I do not recommend the teachers, however, to be always thinking of the tone they ought to use. Let them feel what they say, and the tone will take care of itself.

**2. As to varying the words.** Questions should also be varied. One set of words may not be fully understood by some, which, if slightly altered, would be answered by all. One form of illustration may strike a certain number of children, while a different form may strike the others. And this change is a lesson in expression and language to the class.

**3. Should not be vague, indefinite, &c.—‘Yes’ and ‘No’ answering not good.** The questions should not be vague and indefinite, for thus they admit of many answers equally correct.

Fancy how many answers could be given to the question, 'When you are at play in the fields, I dare say you have often seen—what?' not one of which can, in fairness, be rejected, and yet not one of which may be the answer sought. Questions ought to admit of but one answer, and that the answer actually expected. Those that admit of 'Yes' and 'No' answering are not in general good.

**Incomplete answers bad.** Approximations to answers should always be rejected if given in place of the answers themselves. They may of course in many places be taken for as much as they are worth, but the child should always feel that they are deficient in completeness and exactness. When the master is careless in this respect, a habit of mind is established which prevents the formation of any clearly defined ideas, and leads to great looseness in thinking and reasoning.

**A distinction in this between examining and teaching.** It is right, however, to make in this matter some small distinction between *examining* and *teaching*, as the objects in view are different. In examining, the object is to test acquired information; and to do this correctly, the child should be left entirely to himself, so that he may express his thoughts exactly as he likes. In teaching, on the other hand, as the object of the master is to lead him on gradually from familiar ideas to those which are known but little or not at all, a slight hint casually thrown out to aid the child is quite permissible.

A catch word, a gesture, an emphasis, would promote the one object, and destroy the other. But as examination should always follow teaching, the *exact* answer must at some time be insisted on.

**All these make preparation a great advantage, if not an absolute necessity.** These requirements cannot in any way be so satisfactorily secured as by previous thought and study. Men of great skill and intelligence may certainly avoid many errors without much previous preparation, their tact enabling them to examine and even teach very creditably, after merely hearing the class read; but this is no argument against the necessity for previous study; for how many are not so gifted; and even in the case of those who are, they must have studied at one time to have acquired their present skill, and no matter how great that skill may be, they would teach much better did they arrange beforehand what they were going to ask, and how they were to ask it.

**Something can, however, be done without previous preparation.** Many men hold that nothing can be done at all without previous study. I do not agree with them. There appear to me to be two ways of teaching a lesson, both much better than those in common use—one, where the facts of the author only are touched upon, as in the questions already given upon 'The Ant,'

and the other where these facts are explained, expanded, and classified, as in the sketch which immediately follows these questions.<sup>1</sup>

The first kind can by no means be called a *bad* lesson. It is simply imperfect; and yet such a lesson can be taught by any experienced and intelligent man without much, if any, previous preparation. It is a kind of lesson that all must learn to give, because, sometimes, pressing business may prevent previous study altogether, or one may be called upon to examine at a moment's notice. It is therefore valuable, so far as it goes, and in its own way.

**Notes of lessons.** But when a teacher aims at excellence, careful study beforehand on each lesson becomes essentially necessary. He should arrange his remarks systematically, or, in other words, he should make out *notes of lessons*. The notes that I have seen are not, in my opinion, the best adapted to teach a reading-lesson. They are all too complete, and look too much like what an author would draw up were he about to write a *regular treatise* on the subject-matter. They begin at the very beginning of the subject, and thus, for the sake of a logical arrangement of all the parts, they deal extensively with the most uninteresting portion of the lesson, and sometimes even absorb the whole of the allotted time in this. Some notes also are arranged in the form of question and answer, and thus become a mere catechism, deficient in elasticity, and admitting of no adaptation to the trains of thought which the answers of the children must suggest. Others, again, deal too much with the meanings of words and phrases, with roots, etymologies, &c., and are so far not notes of lessons at all, but aids to intelligent reading.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See pp. 84 and 35.

<sup>2</sup> Mr. Moseley, in his Report on Male Training Schools (Min. of Council, 1854-5, p. 296), says: 'One of the defects of lessons, arising from the use of notes arranged according to some type which the teacher has learned to regard as logically adapted to all lessons (subjecting the subject to the notes, rather than the notes to the subject), is *this*, that such a lesson almost invariably passes into mere *word* teaching; and into the teaching of the *same* words, being for the most parts words applicable to the qualities of many things. An example, which I have recorded *verbatim*, will make this more apparent than any explanation I can give. The subject of a lesson was "Gold." The teacher began by saying that he should speak first of its *qualities*

(guided in this by his notes). "But," said he, addressing himself to the children, "what do I mean by a 'quality?'" This question might have puzzled a class of older metaphysicians; however, to my astonishment, an intelligent child answered that it was a "property." This being accepted as an explanation of the term, the teacher proceeded to elicit (for he used the interrogative method) that gold was "ductile," that it was "malleable," that it was "adhesive" (?), that it was "inelastic," and "yellow." And when he had explained to them that it was found in "sandstone" and "quartz," and that "quartz" was "metallic stone" (?), the time allotted for the lesson had expired. I have made an omission which I will now supply. It was the only passage of the

**Form recommended.** I have already referred to the marginal notes, which, in my opinion, should be made by every teacher, in his own set of the lesson books. Were these classified and arranged, they would constitute the best form of notes, and the most easily applied in practice.

**Three examples.** The following may be taken as specimens; the first two lessons being taken from Book III. of the Commissioners of National Education in Ireland, and the remaining one from Book II. of the 'Graduated Series' of Longman and Co.

### THE FOX.

#### *The Text.*

1. *Description.* Of the dog kind—brown colour, sharp muzzle—ears small, erect, coming to a point—tail straight, bushy—top white—voice, a yelping bark.

2. *Locality.* Found everywhere—lives in dens or burrows.

3. *Food.* Hares, rabbits, poultry, feathered game; moles, rats, mice, *fruit*—takes hares by the scent—hunts at nights.

#### *Its Extension, &c.*

Wolf, jackal, hyena, &c. of the same kind. Refer also to lesson previously read (called 'The Dog and his Relations')—colours in northern regions variable—in this country a reddish brown—called in Irish, owing to his colour, the red dog—Arctic fox, white in summer, brown in winter, changes like the ermine—obliquity of the eye gives a cunning look.

Few animals met with in all climates—adapted to each by change of fur and colour—takes up his abode in plantations and low brushwood—near farm-houses, to lie in wait for fowl—sometimes in mountain wilds.

Will also eat toads, lizards, insects, if very hungry—eats honey also, kills the bees and wasps to get it, though receiving many stings (anecdote of fox and bear about honey)—hunts from evening to morning; the animals on which he lives are then at rest, or, like the rabbit, out

lesson which seemed to awaken and fix the attention of the class, and was perhaps the only one of which any traces would be found in their minds, when the lesson was finished. He told them that gold dust was found in Africa, in the sand of rivers; that the sand was washed away from it; and that it was kept by the people of the country in quills, which the women hung round their necks. I do not vouch for the accuracy of this information; but, supposing it to be true, it may serve as

an illustration of that kind of knowledge of other countries, of like kind to the knowledge familiar to a child's observation in its own, which is likely to remain longer in its memory, and to be more suggestive than any other. The abstract qualities of things do not furnish such topics, or the very beginnings of the knowledge of them; nor do they require that the terms in which they are discussed, so as to be intelligible to children, should first be logically defined.'



*The Text.*

4. *Harm he does.* Destructive to poultry and game, lambs, &c.

5. *Use.* Destroys noxious animals—fur valuable for garments, ladies' tippets, &c.—affords amusement to gentlemen hunting—flesh eaten in some places.

6. *Character.* Great endurance in running—been known to run fifty miles, and escape—his cunning in taking prey, and avoiding enemies—  
anecdotes of.

7. *Scriptural allusions.* Samson burned the corn-fields of the Philistines—Herod was called a fox by Christ. Our Saviour affectingly alludes to it, when he says, 'The foxes have holes,' &c.

*Its Extension, &c.*

feeding—does not need sight much, as he hunts by scent—when in poultry yard, kills all he can get—drags off and hides—carries them slung over his shoulder.

These evils can be prevented by care to a great extent.

Feeds chiefly on noxious animals—the fur of the fox is best in cold climates—hunting cruel, but improves the breed of horses, &c.—will take her cub, when pursued, in her mouth—brush a trophy.

Give one or two more simple and short anecdotes.

'Go ye, and tell that fox, Behold, I cast out devils,' &c.

## THE REINDEER.

1. *Description.*  $4\frac{1}{2}$  feet high—back and sides brown, belly white—grows white as he grows old—horns long, slender, and branched—male's horns largest.

2. *Locality.* Northern regions of the Old and New World—hilly parts of a country in summer, to avoid the gadfly.

3. *Use alive.* Whole wealth of Laplander—rich man has 1,000—supplies place of cow (milk and butter)—of horse (carrying its owner in a sledge, traveller tied in this sledge; it is like a boat—pace, half-trot—feet spread to keep on snow)—of the sheep and goat. *When dead,* spoons are made of its bones, glue of its horns, thread and cords of its tendons—clothes of its skin, and its flesh is eaten.

This is minute enough for all the purposes of an ordinary lesson. Show the class the print of the reindeer.

(Chiefly from Brooke.)

Reindeer of Lapland and Finland best—those of Norway and Sweden not so strong or large—move in *droves* from hills to lowlands. Gadfly lays an egg in each wound—hatched by the heat of its body. As Laplanders cannot live without the deer, they move from place to place with them—return to woods in September.

With 300 to 500 a man can live comfortably, can make butter enough, and kill sufficient for food and clothes. With 200 he can live tolerably. With 100, poorly. With 50, he becomes a servant, and must join his stock to some rich man's. Butter very palatable. Will carry  $2\frac{1}{2}$  cwt. at the rate of 10 miles per hour, 150 miles in 19 hours, or about 8 miles per hour, without stopping. One went 800 miles in 48 hours, but died afterwards—his picture is kept in palace of Stockholm. Travel in *herds*—a long line,

*The Text.*

4. *Food.* In summer, various plants—in winter, lichen from under the snow, or on trees.

*Its Extension, &c.*

the second almost touching with its nose the back of the first traveller—will not deviate from this. If any left behind, he will follow the others by the scent. Many travellers saved by this quality in the reindeer.

Nothing but lichen grows in winter, called grey reindeer moss. A barren tract covered with this a valuable property—no hay in winter. If, therefore, rain falls, and ice succeeds, the animals die, and many Laplanders also.

## A NOBLE ACT.

## (Book II. 'Graduated Series.')

1. *The actors in the story.* An old man, wealthy—three sons.

2. *Division of property.* Father divided all the property among his sons, except a valuable jewel—this to be given for the most noble act performed within three months.

3. *The acts performed.* First, eldest gave back money entrusted to him, for which the owner had no receipt, and took no recompense—father said the act was one of *justice*.

*Second son* saved a child's life at the risk of his own, and brought it to its mother—father said this was but the *instinct* of human kindness.

*Third act.* Youngest son found his enemy in danger of death, yet rescued him—he got the jewel.

Nothing necessary in the way of expansion.

The usual course is to divide property after death of owner, by will—property generally left to eldest son, &c.

This an act of strict honesty, deserving of great credit. Many persons would think that, because the *law* would not compel them to pay the money in such a case, they need not do it; but not to do it would be, in reality, to steal it.

This is a more praiseworthy act than the first. All are bound to be honest, but none are bound to put their own life in danger. It shows great courage, great humanity, and great forgetfulness of self.

In this case, the person dealt with is an *enemy*, one whom the tendency is to injure; whereas, in the other cases, the persons were strangers, who had, to a certain extent, a claim upon the good offices of their fellow-creatures. He might have gone away and left the enemy to perish by his own act; but, instead of that, he *saved* him. It thus combines magnanimity, generosity, and the noblest triumph over the worst passions of our nature.

*General conclusion.* It is much easier to overcome temptations to dishonesty, or to encounter physical danger, than to do good to an enemy when we have it in our power to injure him with impunity. Revengeful passions are strongest, and require the most control.

**'Notes' solely of use when preparing.** It must be remembered that these 'notes' are solely to assist the teacher in *preparing* the lesson. No good teacher will willingly use them when actually before his class. A constant reference to notes would make the best-prepared lesson tame and lifeless. The teacher should, therefore, study them so carefully, so completely, and so accurately, that he could enumerate without reference to them every statement in the lesson book itself, every fact he proposes to illustrate and expand, and to what extent, and be able to tell the exact order in which he will lay the whole before the children.

#### LESSONS REQUIRING SPECIAL NOTICE.

##### (a) *Fables.*

**Some special remarks on special lessons.** These remarks and rules apply to the teaching of nearly all the lessons, but there are a few which require some special notice; as, for instance, the *fables, stories, poetry, the lessons in monosyllables.*

**1. Fables, &c., how to deal with.** The object of the lessons called fables, and the object of many of the stories contained in the reading books, is chiefly to illustrate and thereby inculcate some moral truth, and this can be fully attained without such a minute analysis of the text as I have recommended for the other lessons. All that is necessary is to question the children upon the truth itself (making it as plain as possible by suitable explanations, as in example, p. 49), and upon some few of the leading incidents brought forward to establish and explain it. This, in general, will require but little time from the master, for the lessons are so clearly written and so homely in style and matter that they are fully within the unaided comprehension of the children. I therefore think that the master should chiefly devote his attention to those lessons that imperatively call for his explanations. I do not wish to convey the impression that the others are to be neglected, or that the inculcation of moral truths by such means is a matter of secondary importance; I merely wish to state that it appears to me to be absurd to take up the particulars of such narratives, sentence by sentence, as some teachers do.

**To be read at home.** The children should be induced to read these lessons at home—there will be no difficulty in getting them to do this, as the form in which they are written has a strong attraction for them—and then some convenient time should be selected to test their knowledge of the objects which the lessons had in view. Or, if these are read in the school, they may be used chiefly to teach *reading*, each lesson always finishing, however, with the necessary reference to its *moral*.

(b) *Poetry.*

**2. Poetical lessons.** With regard to the poetical lessons, I think they should be not only explained and taught as the others, but they should also be committed to memory.

**Value of.** Poetry embodies in a pleasing and easily remembered form many moral and valuable truths. The study of it softens and refines the feelings, raises the general tone of the mind and of our thoughts, makes us familiar with the beauties of our language, and brings us into direct converse with some of the best and greatest of men. There can be, also, no better means for developing the taste, and storing the memory with a choice vocabulary, than an extensive and careful study of poetry.

**Should be explained before committal.** Before children are allowed to commit any piece to memory, whether prose or verse, the meanings of all unusual words and the general sense itself should be fully explained. They should read it over in the presence of the master, who should accompany this reading with suitable explanations, giving the meaning as briefly and clearly as possible, and then, *but not till then*, should he direct the boys to get it off. The best and easiest function of the memory is to register what is understood. Such previous explanation will, therefore, not only make the matter itself more intelligible, but it will render it more easily committed, and cause it to be remembered for a longer time.

When this is not done, the pupils are very inexact in the committal, and too frequently, when repeating it before the master, they utter, instead of the words, unintelligible sounds akin to them. The Rev. Mr. Brookfield, one of her Majesty's inspectors of schools for England, gives two very forcible examples of this defect. In his examination of some Sunday-school children he obtained the following replies to the questions, 'What is thy duty towards God?' and 'What is thy duty towards thy neighbour?' 'My duty toads God is to bleed in Him to feering and loafing with old your arts, with old my mine with old my sold, and with my sereneth, to whirchip and to give thinks, to put my old trust in Him, to call upon Him, to honor his old name, &c. ;' and again, 'My dooty tords my nabers to love him, as thyself and to do to all men as I wed thou shalt do to me, to love honner and suke my father and mother, to onner and bay thee Queen.'

These replies were given in writing by two children, after, in each case, about four or five years' teaching. Such defects could exist only in very inferior schools indeed, but in a less degree they are to be met with in many, from inattention to exactness in utterance when repeating from memory, and to the neglect of applying the

same written test that the inspector applied. The written test may be applied during the ordinary dictation exercise, and instead of that exercise. I am myself in the habit very frequently of varying the dictation exercise in this way. My custom is to require each boy to write down any piece which he may select himself, depending solely upon his memory for the words, and I find many errors similar to, but none so bad as, those above.

**Pupils should quote poetry occasionally.** None but the best poetry, however, should be selected, and the pupils should, as Dean Dawes suggests, be required to quote it at every fitting opportunity. If, for instance, a word occurs in one passage of peculiar application, the children should be required to quote other passages where it is used in the same way; or they may be required to quote poetical descriptions of objects, of scenery, of countries, &c., thus making them thoroughly familiar with our best authors, improving their taste and manners, giving character to their reading, and enabling them hereafter to make a proper choice of books.<sup>1</sup>

**Memory not cultivated in present system of education.** The study of poetry not only improves the taste of the children, and the quality of their reading, but it cultivates and strengthens the faculty of memory. That this faculty is not sufficiently attended to, is a charge brought against the present system of education. This, though true to a certain extent, is by no means true to the point, they say, or in the sense intended. In the old system of teaching, facts were heaped on facts, without assimilation or arrangement, and thus memory alone was taxed; but in the present system we explain and then call upon the memory to record what is understood. This it does naturally of itself; and although there may not seem to be any special cultivation of it, the very fact of registering such things as are thus presented to the understanding improves its powers. The charge, therefore, that the understanding is cultivated at the expense of the memory, is not true, in the proper acceptation of these words; nor indeed could such a thing be possible, for what the mind knows fully it registers and remembers.

**Mr. Keenan's views.** The memory, however, like all the other faculties, is the better for special training, and this it does not sufficiently receive in the present system. Mr. Keenan, Chief of Inspection, in his report for 1855,<sup>2</sup> says, that 'teachers appear to

<sup>1</sup> The Commissioners of National Education in Ireland are now publishing an annotated edition of the English poets, for the use of the teachers and advanced pupils in their schools. These will supply a want

long felt, and be the means of making our standard poets known to thousands who would otherwise be ignorant of them.

<sup>2</sup> Reports of Commissioners of National Education, Ireland.

be afraid to call the *memory* of their pupils into exercise. Rote learning, which means learning that begins and ends in the memory, and which has no association with the understanding, has been so unequivocally condemned, that inexperienced teachers think memory is not to be used at all, or only as a depository of the impressions of the judgment. But look at fifty things we must learn while relying entirely upon the memory. Music is impressed upon our ears without any exercise of the understanding, and children acquire language through the power of memory alone. Mere rote work is condemned as a system of teaching, but what is called "committing to memory" can never be dispensed with as a matter of learning.'

**Dr. Newell's.** Dr. Newell, when Head Inspector, says in his report for 1856:<sup>1</sup> 'The cultivation of the memory has not, in my opinion, received due attention in our schools. I am, by no means, an advocate for mere *rote* lessons, or for burthening the memory of a child by requiring him to repeat columns of words, or to rehearse rules of syntax or arithmetic in their precise terms; but I do say, that if pupils were to learn by heart occasionally many of the prose passages and most of the poetry in the Board's books, much of which is calculated to awaken the purest sentiments, and to lead to moral reflection, the practice would prove a healthful exercise of the memory, which, to use the words of a deep thinker, must be exercised in the education of a people, as in that of an individual, before the powers of reason and fancy can be expanded.'

**Mr. Marshall's.** The English inspectors are nearly all of the same opinion. Mr. Marshall says,<sup>2</sup> 'It was never intended that teachers should neglect the memory; and this, from want of due consideration, many of them seem to do. Formerly, almost everything was "learned by heart"—a process so superficial and irrational, that it may be fairly doubted whether even the memory, which naturally refused to retain what it could not digest, gained by it in the long run; and now, by a curious reaction, the immense importance of this faculty is overlooked.'

**Mr. Morrell's.** Again, Mr. Morrell says,<sup>3</sup> 'So strong has been the reaction against the old *memoriter*, or *rote* system, that nothing (it is frequently imagined) can be at all serviceable for true mental development, except direct appeals to the perceptive faculty on the one hand, or the reasoning powers on the other. . . . It does not follow that because *rote* teaching is essentially and intolerably *bad*, therefore nothing should be learned off by memory and repeated by rote *at all*. Exercises of this kind not only strengthen that most important faculty, but aid in storing the mind with nume-

<sup>1</sup> Reports of Commissioners of National Education, Ireland,

<sup>2</sup> Min. of Council, 1855, p. 612.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 1854, p. 614.

rous and valuable ideas, that become, as it were, the necessary furniture, and the inward supply for future intellectual use.<sup>1</sup>

The fact is, that it is almost impossible to cultivate any faculty too highly, whether it be the memory or any other, provided always that proper steps are taken, and the proper balance of all carefully maintained.

**Faults of teachers at present.** Teachers, at present, either do not insist upon the committal to memory of the poetical lessons, or else they allow the pupils, when saying them, to speak without clearness or feeling. Both these faults require correction. All these lessons should be got off, even by the youngest children, for they are generally written in a style adapted to them; and when repeating them it is impossible to take too much care to make the utterance what it ought to be.

If the recitation were in some cases made in the presence of the whole school, and if some little pomp and show were occasionally attached to it, the good effects of the exercises would be enhanced.

### (c) *First Book.*

**The First Book.** This is of very special character, and requires special treatment.

The little sentences may be divided into two classes: (1) those containing useful information, and (2) those containing information of no practical value. In the first we have, for instance, the following:—

God loves us, and sent His Son to save us.  
We get oil from the whale.  
Tea is the leaf of a plant.  
Tears wash the eye.

And in the second class, we have the following and all similar sentences:—

Jane will not drink wine.  
A wet mop hit my face, &c.

**Their difference.** It is obvious that these two classes stand upon a different footing. In the latter the statements may be true or false, and the child may or may not know them without the smallest advantage or disadvantage.

This is not the case with the other sentences, for they contain

<sup>1</sup> For further remarks upon the Study of Poetry, and the Cultivation of the Memory, see Min. of Council, 1847-8, vol. ii. p. 188; 1848-9, vol. i.

p. 119, vol. ii. pp. 472 and 473; 1854-5, pp. 294, 475; 1855-6, p. 619; 1856-7, p. 238; 1859-60, p. 195; 1860-1, pp. 62, 188, and 259; 1861-2, p. 174.

information relating to the external world in which the child is placed, and to its moral obligations, which it can hereafter apply with advantage.

**One to be explained and the other passed over.** The teacher should, therefore, omit the consideration of the meaning of the sentences in the one class, while he should see that his children understand the meaning of those in the other. The facts, indeed, are very simple, but they cannot on that account be treated cursorily, for it is their very simplicity which renders them adapted to the minds of the young children who read them; and, besides, not one of them is so simple but that, in the hands of a skilful man, it can be made the means of calling forth the thoughtfulness and intelligence of the child.

**No difficulty in framing questions.** The teacher will find no difficulty in framing the questions in the way best suited to elicit the required information, for each sentence contains but one idea, and this idea is very plainly expressed. He has merely to understand the fact himself, in which he cannot possibly fail, and then to frame his question in homely words.

**Modification of questions in accordance with the object in view.** Care should, however, be taken to modify the question in accordance with the object in view. Thus, for instance, the sentence, 'Tar is got from pine,' admits of two forms of question. I may ask, 'Whence do we get tar?' or, 'Can you name some of the uses of the pine tree?' In the one case the object is to call the child's attention chiefly to the substance called *tar*, and in the other case to the tree called *pine*. In the one case the question might naturally be followed up by an enumeration of the other sources whence tar is procured, and in the other case the question might be followed up by an enumeration of the different articles got from the pine tree, and probably a very casual reference to a few other trees with which the child is familiar. Each question could be made the means of causing the child to observe and reflect, but the train of thought and the points of observation would obviously vary very considerably. The teacher, therefore, should form his question in accordance with the channel into which he wishes to direct the current of the child's ideas.

As my remarks upon the meanings of the words, upon rote questioning, &c., already given, are applicable to this book, as well as to the others, it is of course unnecessary to repeat them here. I shall merely remark that, whatever disadvantages attend the errors pointed out for the senior classes, they are vastly increased in the lowest class, and therefore they should, if possible, be even more carefully avoided in teaching it than in teaching the others.



**The alphabet.** I have not thought it necessary to discuss the different methods of teaching the alphabet advocated by writers on education. The majority of these are, in my opinion, sufficiently successful. If children are not taught many letters at a time, or kept too long at each lesson, they do not, I believe, feel that dislike to learning the alphabet which it is stated they do.

Besides, children very often teach the alphabet to each other, and it is sometimes acquired by merely being in the room where it is continually a-repeating. The real drudgery of learning begins when the letters are fully known.

**Steps in teaching each new lesson in First Book.** The monosyllabic lessons ought to be taught in the following way:— (1) The children should *spell* and pronounce each word—the book being open before them; (2) they should name, *at sight*, each word, as pointed to by the master, indiscriminately through the lesson; and (3) they should read each sentence correctly, joining the words in proper groups as already explained.

These steps should be followed in the teaching of each lesson, and the children should not be allowed to read any of the sentences until perfect in the naming of single words. This will prevent rote reading to a great extent.

I think if these suggestions on the teaching of the various reading books are carried out intelligently they will lead to success, and I do not think that, like some others usually given upon this subject, they trench unduly upon the extra hours of the teacher. They certainly require zeal and faithfulness, carefulness and attention, but no more than any honest man daily gives to the discharge of his duties.

## CHAPTER III.

## SPELLING.

**Bad spelling common, proved by Civil Service examinations.** The *Times*, referring to examinations made by the Civil Service Commissioners, says, 'that of the 1,972 disappointed candidates, *all except* 106 were rejected for the same species of defect. They had either no knowledge of arithmetic, *or they could not spell*. Of course,' it adds, 'these imperfections were coupled with others, but, as a matter of fact, *orthography* and arithmetic were the real stumbling-blocks in the way of success.'

There can be no more reliable test of the merits of the present systems of teaching spelling, and no more sweeping condemnation.

**Use of dictionaries, spelling books, &c.** By the old plan of teaching this subject, the pupils were compelled to commit to memory the uninteresting and disconnected columns of the dictionaries, expositors, or spelling books in common use. They were obliged to go over them, again and again, without the smallest aid from association of ideas, until it was supposed that all the words were mastered. This was a drudgery more useless, more stupid, and more hopeless than to commit to memory all the pages of an almanac.<sup>1</sup>

**Defects of old system.** It possessed three great defects: (1) It was laborious, and made learning distasteful; (2) it could not be applied to the junior classes; and (3) it was *unsuccessful*.

**1. Labour enormous.** (1) The labour of such a system must have been very great. Every little fellow was, in fact, a small Hercules, daily engaged in a task from which the son of Jupiter would have retired in dismay.

**2. Junior classes could not prepare.** (2) By this system spelling could not possibly be taught to the junior classes, as children unable to read were incapable of preparing the tasks of which the spelling lesson consisted. And hence it happened, that many were obliged to leave school before commencing to practise spelling at all. The extent of such an evil will be correctly estimated by those who know how very many children must

<sup>1</sup> Thayer.

necessarily be always in the junior classes, and for how very short a period children remain in our primary schools.

**3. Ineffectual.** (3) But the most serious objection against it is that it was unsuccessful. No memory could possibly retain all these endless columns of disconnected words. They have nothing attractive in themselves, they have no bond of union by which the mind can be brought to consider them as a whole, and, as a necessary consequence, the picture so laboriously impressed to-day, must give place to a new one created by the studies of to-morrow. 'Months and years are devoted to the undertaking, but after going through the whole spelling book, perhaps a whole dictionary, till we can triumphantly spell *zeugma*, we have forgotten how to spell *abbot*, and we must begin again with *abasement*.'<sup>1</sup>

**Made worse by the introduction of certain obsolete and useless words.** Irrational and ineffectual as this laborious system was, it was made worse by the way in which it was carried into practice. The columns over which the children were forced to pore for so many weary years contained many words too far beyond the comprehension naturally expected from young children, together with words rarely, if ever, used, and some even entirely obsolete; such, for instance, as *hight*, *wive*, *wot*, *zeugma*, &c. The same time and the same labour were spent in getting off such words, and the same accuracy was required, as in the case of words whose constant recurrence in ordinary discourse gave them importance.

**Change in the old system.** This system is nearly extinct, but that which has taken its place still partakes too much of its character.

Dictionaries are indeed dispensed with, and the spelling books in use are of a better description than before, but the pupils are still forced to commit tasks to memory without proper explanation, and are allowed to answer solely by rote. In many cases, also, the small columns of the lesson books are committed to memory, just as the larger columns of the old expositor were formerly, or the pupils are called upon to spell isolated words taken at random from the reading—defects which vary very little from the system just treated of.

**Founded upon the error of supposing that we spell by ear.** Those who invented the old system thought that it was the *sound* or *pronunciation* of the word that chiefly guides us in spelling. Pronunciation has certainly something to do with correctness, or rather errors of pronunciation produce errors in spelling, as, for instance, *perventiv*, *nomatif* (case), *natur* (verb),

<sup>1</sup> Edgeworth.

*singular* (number), *feruifful*, *tunder* (thunder), &c. ; but we learn to spell not from the *sound* of the word, though inattention to sound is a prevalent cause of confusion, but from its *appearance*.

**Others think we learn spelling by rules.** Others think that we can learn to spell by rules, and for this purpose they have drawn up a series of these intended as guides to the spelling of certain classes of words. But, to be practically available, they must either be so worded as to admit of no exceptions, or they must give *all* the exceptions in the language. Our language, however, is so irregular, that the exceptions are often too numerous to be enumerated or remembered. Frequently the exceptions are also arranged into subsidiary rules, which have in their turn exceptions, that must be committed to memory like the others. And thus we have rules within rules, and no end of confusion.

The best spellers I know of never learned a rule, and some of the worst can repeat flippantly the very rules of which their written exercises contain frequent violations. Rules of spelling are something like rules of grammar, learned, repeated, and understood, but not effectual.

**They may be learned, but the pupils should be taught to frame them themselves.** As a matter of interest, and, in some cases, of benefit also, these rules may be studied; but I think that, instead of committing them to memory in the first instance, the children ought to be enabled to frame them for themselves. This they can do by laying before them a number of words which follow some one common plan. For instance, in *conceive*, *receive*, *deceive*, *perceive*, we have the sound of *eve* represented by the letters *eive*, whereas in the words *relieve*, *believe*, *grieve*, *thieve*, *reprieve*, &c., the same sound is represented by the letters *ieve*. The child may be brought to see that it is the preceding consonant which determines the order of the letters. In the first words the consonant is *c*, and in the others it varies. He may hence draw the following rule: *As the diphthongs ei and ie have the same sounds in the terminations ieve and eive, the learner is often at a loss to tell whether the e or the i should come first: as a general rule, it may be laid down that e follows c, and i all other consonants.*<sup>1</sup>

**Good spelling depends on the eye.** Good spelling depends very much, if not altogether, upon the power of the mind in retaining and reproducing the impressions conveyed to it by the *eye*.

**Proofs.—1. Writing two forms of a word will determine the correct one.** If one is in doubt as to which of two ways he

<sup>1</sup> See Dr. Sullivan's Spelling Book Superseded.

will spell a word, he can usually convince himself by writing it down under both forms, and observing which of them meets his eye more naturally. The eye in this case is clearly the guide.

**2. The eye will detect a wrong word out of all in a page.** Again, if a person accustomed to reading open any page in which there may be a misspelled word, it is upon that word, as is well known, that the eye will rest. The fact may be thus explained. The eye forms its picture point by point. It rests but upon a single spot at a time, even in the largest landscape, but so rapidly does it pass over all, that it may be said, as in reality it appears to do, to take in the picture as a whole. In passing over the page of a book, all the letters come in succession under its notice, and its attention is naturally fixed by any irregularity it discovers.

**3. Spelling is but the analysis of a picture impressed by the eye.** Every one can easily convince himself how it is that he spells, by noting the process which the mind goes through in any individual case selected. He will soon see that he does not remember the letters and their proper order, in the same way as he recollects any fact or date communicated to him, but that he recollects them something in the manner that he recalls the details of a picture.

If one, for instance, who has learned geography from a constant and careful study of maps, is asked a question about the Mediterranean Sea, the map of the world, from the vivid impression formerly made by careful and constant study of it, instantly rises, as it were, before him; and as he looks upon it, he discovers the bays and gulfs of the sea, its straits and outlets, the rivers which flow into it, and the general configuration of its shores, and he can as easily enumerate them as if the map, upon which he seems to gaze, were real and not mental. In the same way, when asked to spell any word, its picture, as it last appeared, rises before him, and from that picture he can repeat the letters and their order.

**Opinions in support of this view.** The following opinions support this view. Dr. Sullivan says, 'We must know how the word looks, and this the eye will enable us to do, for, as has been well said by an American writer,<sup>1</sup> the eye in such cases may be said to remember.' Mr. Keenan says, 'Orthography is, in most instances, a memory of the eye. Were we to spell phonetically, it would, of course, be simply a matter of accuracy of ear; but since the sound of the word in our language is so seldom an indication of the exact letters or syllables which compose it, correctness must be traced to the

<sup>1</sup> Thayer.

sense oftenest employed, which is that of sight.'<sup>1</sup> Edgeworth says, 'Children learn to spell more by the *eye* than the *ear*;' and the *Times*, in the article already alluded to, says, 'The power of spelling is acquired insensibly by the exercise of the *eye*, and that familiarity with the aspect of the words which necessarily follows.' Mr. Gill, in his work on School Management, page 121, says, 'The only way to produce words accurately is to make them familiar to the *eye*.' Again, Mr. Parkhurst says, 'The *eye* as well as the *ear* must become familiar with a word before it can readily be spelled.'

**Two conclusions from this.** From this we draw two conclusions: (1) that reading and writing much are essentially necessary for good spelling, and (2) that he whose mind is most susceptible of vivid impressions through the eye will spell best. In fact, we may also conclude that reading and writing are not merely essentials, but that they are almost all that are required. The *Times* says, 'Spelling is learnt by *reading*;' and again, 'Nothing but *reading* will teach spelling.' Dr. Sullivan says, 'Persons who *write* or *read* much are, by the very acts, correct in spelling.' Mr. Keenan says, 'When teachers become careful and extensive *readers*, they will also become good spellers.' Again, Edgeworth: 'The more the children *read* and *write*, the more likely they will be able to remember the combination of letters in words which they have continually before their eyes, and which they feel it necessary to represent to others.' M. Marcel, in his work on language, says, 'The ability to spell correctly is the consequence of familiarity with the written words gained from *reading*.'

**Proof from the deaf and dumb, and from foreign languages.** If we wanted any additional proofs, they could be had in the facts that the deaf and dumb, who are taught solely by sight, seldom commit orthographical errors, and that we seldom make mistakes in spelling Latin, Greek, and other foreign languages, although in their case the power is acquired solely from reading and writing.

**Frequent and thoughtful reading and writing would appear to be all that are necessary.** All that would seem necessary therefore to produce good spelling is to secure *frequent* and *thoughtful* reading and writing.

**The teacher must apply special tests, however.** As, however, no teacher can be certain that his pupils will read enough, or with sufficient regard to the construction of the words, it is his duty, in addition to telling them the true means for success, to apply special tests, and treat particular faults as they occur.

<sup>1</sup> 22nd Report of the Commissioners of National Education, Ireland.

## ORAL SPELLING.

**Questioning one of these tests.—Also an aid to learning.** Questioning is one of the instruments which he must use. In some subjects this is a mere test; but in spelling, it creates progress, and prevents error. When questioning is practised, the child's attention is necessarily directed in a special manner to the formation of the words, from the conviction that he will be called upon afterwards to represent them to the master; and being thus specially directed, the impression they make will be more vivid, and, as a consequence, more permanent.

**Two ways of questioning.** There are two ways of questioning upon spelling. First, we may give out single words without any connection in sense with each other; or, secondly, we may give them out as they occur in the reading-lesson.

**First more common, the second more rational.** Of these, the first is the most common, but the second the most rational; for as spelling is acquired by reading, the words which form the test should be proposed in the exact order in which they made their impression upon the eye. By this means the picture is not only not disturbed, but the oral repetition makes it more indelible. Again, spelling is useful for writing, and the words should therefore be acquired in such combinations as ordinarily occur in the pages of a reading-book, or in composition.

**This called the system of phrase-spelling, and forms the new method of acquiring spelling.** The second method is called the system of *phrase-spelling*, and forms, with writing from dictation, the new and improved plan for teaching spelling. It consists in giving out a sentence or part of a sentence instead of a single word, and it thus not only teaches spelling, but it improves the memory.

**Opinions in favour of it.** Dr. Sullivan says, 'I strongly recommend teachers to adopt it; its practical superiority is obvious. Let the reader who may be disposed to dissent dictate a few familiar sentences in the manner recommended to a young person who has learned orthography from the columns of a spelling-book only, and, unless we are greatly mistaken, the inferiority of the old plan will be evinced by the erroneous spelling of some, perhaps, of the easiest words.'<sup>1</sup> Mr. McCreedy says of it, that 'it seems to be the most successful, and certainly it is the most rational, method of teaching spelling.' Mr. Fletcher says,<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 17th Report of the Commissioners of National Education, Ireland.

<sup>2</sup> Min. of Council, 1846-7, vol. ii. p. 412.

that it is 'as efficient perhaps as writing from dictation, without the possibility of copying from each other.' I myself can bear strong testimony to its practical superiority over all other systems, for I have had it in active operation for many years in the schools under my inspection. I look upon it as one of the most successful methods that could be introduced.

**Advantages arising from its use.** The advantages which I have seen to result from it, and which, from being founded upon a large and lengthened experience of its practical working, may be taken as the necessary results of the system itself, may be thus enumerated: (1) Due attention is secured to all the small words, which are frequently the most irregular, and therefore the most difficult. (2) The child learns to make the necessary distinction between words similarly sounded, but differently spelled; and this he does in the best possible way—where the words actually occur. In ordinary sentences for dictation taken from spelling books, the very arrangement of the words and construction of the sentences afford a clue, frequently, by which the child is able to distinguish between such words; but when the pages of a book are taken, the results are more satisfactory, owing to the absence of design. (3) The child learns to depend more upon sight than upon ear. (4) He discovers that spelling is necessary to writing. (5) He acquires readiness in writing from dictation. (6) He spells more; and (7) he spells with greater ease and accuracy.

**Objected that it consumes too much time.** The objection brought against it is that it consumes too much time. No saving of time, however, can excuse the adoption of methods so bad as those already pointed out. The saving of time at the expense of excellence is not a good species of economy. This objection, however, is not true in fact, as the consumption of time upon the new and the old systems is much alike, for, although each pupil spells more in the former than in the latter, he learns to spell with so much more ease, and as no time is wasted in the looking for the words to give out, the lesson does not last longer in the one case than in the other.

**How to carry it out.** In carrying it out, it is necessary to attend to the following points:—

**1. Portions given out to each should be small.** From about four to six words will be found, in general, sufficient. Sometimes, however, the quantity may be judiciously increased, so as to enable the children to remember and reproduce complete sentences when occasion requires. The children of the lowest class may get one of the small sentences entire, in their little books, though this quantity is relatively much larger than what



I have recommended for more advanced classes—for, as they generally know these by heart, they will find scarcely any difficulty in spelling the words consecutively; and besides it is also a great advantage to these children to spell much.

The teacher himself, however, ought to be the best judge of the quantity to be given to each, and he ought, of course, to adapt it to the proficiency of the children before him at the time.

**2. To spell with vivacity.** This is not only necessary to give life to the lesson, to keep up attention, and economise time, but even to secure correctness. For, when the spelling is slow and listless, it is generally inaccurate, owing to the sluggish action of the mind.

**3. With distinctness.** And, above all, it is necessary to attend carefully to distinctness of utterance. At present the pupils of many schools run the letters into each other, and slur over the final letters to such an extent, that it is impossible to tell what they say.

**How to secure distinctness.—1. Attention to each letter.** One way to secure distinctness is to see that *each* letter is articulated as it ought to be—of this the master's ear will be the best guide—and that all letters which require, from any cause, a special stress, receive it. Thus, in spelling the words *practise* and *advertise*, the letter *s* should be sounded more forcibly than the others, to distinguish the first word from *practice*, and to show that the second does not end in *ize*, as might be expected from its sound.

**2. Spelling by syllables.** Another way is to make the pupils spell in syllables. I do not mean to recommend a renewal of the old and absurd system of *pronouncing* each syllable, and all the combinations of syllables in the words, or even to hint that it is an important part of the teacher's duty to get the children to tell, as many do, the *number* of syllables, but merely to say that, when spelling, they should make a very slight, yet a perceptible pause, after each, as *teach—er, du—ty*.

**Other advantages of this plan. Will diminish errors.** This system will not only produce great distinctness, without any additional trouble, but it will be the means of diminishing most materially errors in spelling, since these are most frequently made by the confusion arising from the length of the words, which this tends to prevent. Many children would represent accurately sounds requiring two, three, or even four letters in one syllable, who would certainly fail were several of those syllables united into one word. How many, for instance, would spell such a sentence as, 'The ear will prove a good guide,' who would be sure to go astray if these seven monosyllables formed one huge word! In the

one case the parts of what he has to spell are placed separately and distinctly before the child, and he, therefore, naturally spells each in its turn, and so lessens the difficulty of the whole; but when the parts are not so separated, as is the case with the syllables in a word, he, quite as naturally, grapples with the entire at once, and, as a consequence, he is certain to fail frequently.

He does not know that when the parts are undivided he can nevertheless make a division mentally himself, and that by doing so, and treating each separately, he will spell with the same ease and accuracy in the one case as in the other. It is, therefore, the teacher's duty to show him that he may do this, and also to make him practise it until he can divide with readiness and correctness.<sup>1</sup>

**Valuable in reading.** This system also aids a child in overcoming a difficulty when reading. At present, when he comes to a word which he does not know, he simply spells it letter by letter, and then looks up at the teacher for the answer, who, to save trouble, pronounces the word, and the child goes on.

This would not be the case had he been accustomed to look upon words as composed of so many syllables instead of so many letters.

**Division of syllables need not be perfectly accurate at first.** It is not necessary to insist upon a perfectly accurate division of the syllables at first, and indeed, were it necessary, it would scarcely be possible, for in many words the exact syllables are a matter of considerable doubt. Let the ear guide the child for some time, and then, as he advances, teach him the rules of division to enable him to divide more correctly.

**Spelling-books and tasks.** Though spelling can be acquired solely by reading, yet it is not possible for a teacher to dispense

<sup>1</sup> The following additional remarks on this subject will be found useful: 'All possibility of error is not eliminated by division into syllables. Even with it I can conceive of such mistakes as *alotted, faithfull, begining, preceeding*, which, however, are common to both systems, and can only be corrected by experience; but mistakes like *preception, contunied, furitful*, which are by no means uncommon, and result simply from thoughtlessness, are scarcely possible if each syllable is taken by itself.' Such a system is exceedingly simple, and produces reflection, and this not only assists in determining what is sought, but impresses it on the mind. Mr. Kerr, Min. of Council, 1861-2, p. 227.

Dr. Woodford says that 'we may fairly attribute to neglect of this system not only the errors which are very common in dividing words at the end of a line, but also much of our present inaccuracy in spelling.' The following are a few specimens of the wrong division to which he refers: *whic-h, na-mes, w-ould, appli-ed*, &c., the parts separated by the hyphen being written on different lines. Dr. Woodford, *ibid.* 1857, p. 659.

The Rev. J. Riddell says, 'I have found it the most invariable concomitant of good reading; . . . they thus understand how sounds go to make up a compound word.' Min. of Council, 1856-7, p. 467.

altogether with either *tasks* or *spelling-books*, as these concentrate the attention and hasten the process of learning, which, in a primary school, are essentially necessary. But the system of spelling from dictation renders the requisite tasks easier and more permanently useful.

**In what tasks ought to consist.** Every child should prepare at home two or three paragraphs of a reading-lesson, but he ought to do this by merely reading the words attentively over two or three times, or more frequently if found necessary; and he ought also to test himself by spelling them over, and writing them down.

**The spelling-book must be of a peculiar construction.** The spelling-book which is allowable must be of peculiar construction, and it must be confined chiefly to the senior classes. It should contain all words liable, from whatever cause, to be misspelled, arranged either in columns, or in sentences for dictation—the best arrangement being in sentences—and it should be treated both as a task-book and as a book of reference for both teacher and children.

**Advantages of it.** Such a book collects and arranges all words of irregular orthography, and thus affords the teacher an easy opportunity of including them in the dictation exercises, while the study of the book by the children is one means of making the eye familiar with their forms.

#### TRANSCRIBING.

**Practice in writing also necessary.** Attention to what I have already advanced will enable the children to spell *orally* with correctness and ease. This is a great deal, but it is not enough; for the true test of spelling is in *writing*, and it has been fully established by the experience of all educationists, that children will make blunders in writing down what they would spell orally with accuracy. It is strange that correctness in the one case does not produce correctness in the other; there seems, however, to be no doubt but that some special practice with the pen is essentially necessary to secure perfect accuracy.

**Fingers must be educated as well as lips.** Moreover, it must be remembered that orthography is required for writing and not for speaking, and therefore the fingers and not the lips must be educated, so as to produce the words correctly, without premeditation. The eye, under the influence of correct impressions, must direct the hand, just as in acquiring sounds the ear directs the tongue.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Marcel on Language.

**Value of copying.** Hence the necessity of transcribing, or making a written copy of portions of a printed book. The eye is obliged to look carefully at the printed words, and thus cannot fail to notice effectually each letter, and its true position.

**Should copy passages of interest, &c.** In carrying this out, the passages selected for the senior classes ought to be remarkable for some excellence either in style or thought, or they should be sufficiently interesting to attract the attention forcibly. They would thus not only improve the orthography, but they would also cultivate the taste, create a desire for literature, supply useful matter for thought, and improve the composition of the children.

**Should not merely glance at the words.** The pupils also should not glance merely at each word and then transcribe it, for thus the impression is too casual and transient to be valuable; they should commit at least five or six words to memory, and then, *without looking at the book*, transfer them to the paper. They should insert the pauses as they occur in the passage before them. And finally, when this is faithfully done, they should compare the whole with the original, and note all errors. This induces carefulness, and, of course, produces ultimate correctness.

**May be made available in learning lessons at home, &c.** This exercise may be made available in the learning of home lessons, for, by causing the children to copy out carefully whatever they are to repeat in school, the trouble of committal will be greatly lessened.

#### WRITING FROM DICTATION.

**Remarks divide themselves into those that refer to teaching spelling and those designed to test the teaching.** In spelling, as in most of the other subjects, my observations have been divided into two heads—those which refer to the *teaching* of the subject, and those designed chiefly to *test* this teaching. I have just treated of the one class, and now it remains for me to refer to the other.

**All written exercises test.** All forms of written exercises may be used to *test* spelling, and by suitable corrections, &c., to *teach* it also. The chief of these are, original composition, writing from memory, and writing from dictation. As I refer to the first two in other places, I need here refer only to the last, especially as the system of correction which I am about to describe, and by which these exercises *teach spelling*, is equally applicable to all.

**Writing from dictation.** Writing from dictation<sup>1</sup> has been

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Morrell, Min. of Council, 1861-2, p. 186, says of it: 'Writing from dictation is the only radical

cure for bad spelling.' Mr. Wilkinson even says (1856-7, p. 677, and 1854-5, p. 728) that 'it ought to

required for a very long time from the advanced classes, but it has not been carefully or skilfully taught, and therefore it has not done much good. On the contrary, indeed, owing to the system of teaching at present in force, it is scarcely too much to say that it has been pernicious instead of being advantageous. It is conducted as if its value was in the actual *writing*, instead of being, from its very nature as a *test*, in the detection of errors and their correction.

**Parts of a complete dictation exercise.** A complete dictation exercise consists of the following parts:—

(1) Selecting and reading out the passage; (2) Writing it down; (3) Detecting the errors; (4) Correcting them; and (5) Taking such steps as will prove that this correction has been successful in removing the false impressions permanently from the minds of the children.

**The last three most valuable, but most neglected.** Of these, the last three are the most valuable, as it is upon them almost exclusively it depends whether the exercise will do good or evil; yet they are the most neglected, probably from being the most troublesome.

I shall make a few remarks upon each of these parts in order.

**1. The passage.** Although the primary object of a dictation exercise is to test and thereby teach spelling, it can be made subservient to other purposes, without interfering with its true design. It may, for instance, be made the means of impressing more firmly what has been already communicated to the class, or of imparting valuable information, by selecting the passages for dictation, in the first case from a lesson already read and explained, and, in the next, from books of established reputation. ;

**Should interest and improve.** The passages should be such as would interest and improve. In the junior classes, however, the master should be guided principally by the orthography of the words; as the pupils advance, he may place before them passages worthy of remembrance. In his own studies he should mark, from time to time, for dictation exercises, passages either illustrative of peculiarities of spelling, or containing some valuable or interesting information suitable to the comprehension of his children.

**Explanation of passage necessary before writing.** The passage should always be selected, for the least advanced classes, from lessons which they already know, and to the higher classes

supersede oral spelling altogether,' and in this Mr. Kennedy agrees with him (1849-50, p. 179). In such cases they speak of it more as a

means of teaching than as a *test*, which it strictly is, and they make it include writing from a book, writing from memory, &c. &c.

it should be read over and explained—the master giving a brief running commentary upon its general sense, before any child is permitted to write it down; for, unless pupils fully understand what they are about to write, great confusion and loss of time result, together with their inseparable consequence—incorrectness.

**How to prevent noise in giving out the passage.** This exercise is frequently very noisy; the children are continually asking the master or each other questions, which ought on no account to be permitted. To avoid the necessity which leads to this, the most inexpert should be placed nearest the master, so that he may from time to time glance at their exercises, and tell them what they need quietly and without interrupting the general business. If, however, they fall too far behind, they should be instructed to go on with the rest, leaving a blank space to be filled up when the sentence is being read over the second time to test its accuracy. The sentences should also be dictated in small portions at a time, just sufficient to be easily remembered, and in a firm tone of voice—not in a loud and noisy tone, but in one that is clear and distinct—and directed to the farthest desk.

**The quantity dictated should be the same for each day.** Pupils should write the same amount each day. I have generally recommended that as much should be written as will fill about a page of a small copybook, containing fifteen closely-ruled lines. (The Commissioners of National Education supply these to the schools in Ireland neatly bound in red paper covers.) Ordinary children write at the rate of about one line per minute, and thus the writing of the exercise, allowing for distributing the paper, &c., will occupy about twenty minutes, which I find quite sufficient.

**2. The writing.—Must be neat, &c.** This must be performed very carefully, and neatly, and with the same attention to progress in penmanship as if the exercise were specially designed for that purpose.

**Objection against dictation, that it produces bad writing.** One of the objections most frequently urged against a dictation exercise is, that it tends to injure the style of writing. Such an objection has obtained nearly all the weight it possesses from the many instances met with in which the writing is extremely bad and carelessly executed; but as an argument against a really well-conducted dictation exercise, it is quite invalid.

**Answered.** This will easily appear by considering what it is that does injure the handwriting. It may be injured by scribbling, by rapid and hasty execution, by slovenly and untidy habits, by using improper pens, by holding the pens badly, by sitting im-

properly, &c., but not one of all these causes forms a necessary part of the dictation exercise. If the pupils write carelessly, scribble, blot their books, use bad pens, &c., the blame rests with the master, and not with the exercise. Mr. Jenkins supports my views upon this point. He says, 'There is no reason to suppose that a proper system of inspection would not secure attention to writing being equally well executed in this case as in others.'

**Another cause for the objection.** Another cause for the prevalence of this objection is that the writing in the dictation exercises, *even when the utmost pains are taken by the master to make it good*, appears always worse than what is contained in the ordinary copybooks. The dictation exercise gets the blame of producing the difference which thus becomes apparent; but the fact is that in this case it merely lays bare the defects which it is accused of creating. The error committed is in estimating the true proficiency of the penmanship from the ordinary papers; but these form an unfair test, as children will, naturally, write better with a model line before them which they can imitate, than when they have no such help. It is similar to the error of judging of swimming by witnessing several performances by the aid of corks and floats. When the corks are thrown away, the results are generally less satisfactory, but we do not on that account accuse the corks of creating the difference; on the contrary, we see that it is necessary to take them away, in order to form just conclusions.

**Will actually improve the writing by giving it boldness.** My impression is, that though this exercise will not certainly *teach* writing, it will not, unless carelessly conducted, injure it; and when the hand is formed, it will even give it finish and boldness. What is called 'good penmanship' is merely 'showy penmanship,' every line according to rule like an engraver's piece, and requiring for its execution a large amount of time; but what ought to be aimed at in our schools, is a plain, bold, free, legible hand, and this the dictation, among other exercises, tends to produce.

**Teacher should see that the pupils have good pens, &c., and he must attend to blotting, scribbling, &c., when inspecting the books.** It is the duty of the teacher who conducts this exercise to see that the children are provided with proper pens and holders, that they hold them correctly, and bear their bodies properly on the seats, and that while writing they avoid haste on the one hand and slowness on the other. A glance of the eye is sufficient for all this. The other errors, such as blotting, scribbling, erasures, &c., can be noted during the examination of the copybooks, and specially dealt with afterwards. (I have mentioned erasures as a fault; by that I mean the habit of rubbing

out words, instead of simply putting the pen through them, and writing the proper forms above.)

**Scribbling produces not only bad writing, but bad spelling.** Scribbling should be prevented, not only because it injures the writing, but because it tends to defeat the object of the exercise itself. For as spelling depends, as has been already shown, almost wholly upon the eye, the worst results must be anticipated when the pictures presented are indistinct and irregular. When, for instance, the *e* and the *i*, the *u* and the *n*, the *l* and the *b*, &c., cannot be clearly distinguished, confusion takes place, and if continued, the scribbler will become not only a bad writer, but a bad speller also.

**Punctuation an important part.** Punctuation is an important part of this, as of the *copying* exercise, but I regret to say that it is very generally neglected. Very few of the advanced children, or even of the pupil teachers, can punctuate correctly, and this from inattention to the subject during the written exercises of their school course.

Those who do attempt it generally ignore the full stop, the colon, and semicolon, making the comma reign supreme.

The use of these marks ought to have been partially acquired during the preparatory transcribing exercise; but to the junior classes the stops, the *quotation marks*, the capital letters, &c., may be told as they occur. The senior classes should be accustomed to place the capitals correctly, and to punctuate for themselves—general hints and rules, of course, to enable them to do so, being given to them from time to time.

**Dictation ought to be on paper.** *Slates should not be used with this exercise, as it is impossible to conduct it satisfactorily upon them.*

This is a very sweeping censure upon the general practice, but a little reflection will prove that it is correct.

**Proof.** When slates are used, the dictation lesson, such as it is, is always begun and ended before the class leaves. But to complete a true and thoroughly useful exercise, one that will do good instead of harm, would require more time than could possibly be spared from the other business of the school course. It would require, at the very least, from about one hour and a half to an hour and three-quarters, as the following calculation will show:—

Explanation of sentence previous to reading it	. . .	5 minutes.
Reading the sentence and writing it down	. . .	20 "
Detection of errors (master)	. . . . .	20 to 30 "
Correcting these (children)	. . . . .	20 "
Testing the value of correction	. . . . .	10 to 15 "
Re-correcting any again committed	. . . . .	10 to 15 "



All these are so indispensable, as will appear hereafter, that without them the exercise is an evil; and the times are not too long, being calculated from the actual working of a class of fifteen boys, which I myself conducted in an average national school. Everyone knows that so much time is never given to a dictation lesson when slates are used; and even if it were, to keep a class engaged so long at one lesson would be an abuse of organisation, and an injustice to the children.

**Faults met with when slates are used.** The only conclusion, therefore, to which we can come, is that, when slates are used, the exercise is an injury, and that some or all of the following defects are met with: (1) Too little is given out; (2) too short a time is allowed for writing, and, hence, scribbling and general injury to the style of penmanship; (3) the marking must be cursory and incomplete; (4) the pupils do not correct the errors afterwards sufficiently to remove them fully from their minds; (5) oral and written tests are not applied to try the efficacy of this correction (nor, indeed, could they be applied properly, as the correction would be too recent to make the results fully reliable); and (6) the advanced classes only are taught.

**Paper free from these.** Slates fail from their obliging the teacher to go through with every part of the exercise before he disengages his class for other work; but when paper is used, no such obligation is incurred. In that case the children are free, when they have written the passage, to turn their attention to other duties; for the remaining parts of the exercise, i.e. the detection of the errors—their correction—the after tests—and the re-correction—can all be postponed, not only without inconvenience (as the papers are easily preserved, and the writing in them is not likely to be defaced), but with advantage.

The use of paper, in fact, enables the teacher to conduct each part separately, and thus it allows him to set apart ample time for the full and satisfactory performance of all. Its advantages may therefore be thus summed up:—

It admits of sufficient being written, of careful penmanship, of the marking and correcting of every error (and at the best possible times), of all classes being taught, and, as the copies may be preserved for years, it affords to the master a faithful record of the children's advancement, and to the inspector ample means of testing how frequently the exercise is conducted in his absence, and how faithfully and carefully. It also stimulates the children to avoid errors, for when committed they are indelibly registered against them, and may be inspected by their parents, their clergymen, and their friends.

**Opinions recommendatory of paper.** The following opi-

nions are given in support of my views about the use of paper:—Mr. Butler.<sup>1</sup>—‘After the first few weeks, this exercise should be conducted on paper.’ Mr. M‘Creedy.<sup>2</sup>—‘It should be conducted principally on paper.’ Mr. Sheridan,<sup>3</sup> after strongly condemning the present system, recommends the use of paper, and sketches out the plan to be adopted. He adds that, ‘according to the other method, as soon as the exercise is blotted from the slate, the errors committed escape from the memory. *Here they are on record during the time the books are retained.*’ Mr. Moseley,<sup>4</sup> in finding fault with the schools, says: ‘The children have not been accustomed to copy in writing sentences in print, or to write from dictation on paper.’ Mr. Blandford,<sup>5</sup> again: ‘One certain way to effect improvement in spelling, is to practise the children in writing from dictation on paper.’ Mr. Stokes.<sup>6</sup>—‘I am of opinion that writing from dictation on paper is neither so general nor so well done as I hope to find it in future years.’ Mr. Scoltock.<sup>7</sup>—‘In few schools do I meet with dictation on paper. This, I think, is to be lamented, for as soon as children can write fairly from dictation they ought to have copybooks given to them, and pieces chosen for dictation which would form a subject of interest at home. In addition to this, the habit of rubbing out on the slate and correcting is bad; this, by the use of pen and ink, might be avoided.’ The very happiest results attended the change from slates to paper which I introduced into many of the schools of the Co. Limerick. Where the number

<sup>1</sup> Reports of the National Board of Education, Ireland.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid.

<sup>4</sup> Min. of Council, 1845–6, vol. i. p. 232.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid. 1856–7, p. 373. He adds, that ‘half a sheet of foolscap is sufficient for each lesson; the other side might be advantageously used for the working of sums. I believe there is no exercise better calculated to improve a class in spelling, and to promote accuracy in arithmetic, than this. In writing from dictation, or in working sums on slates, a child may be careless and inattentive from the very facility with which mistakes can be rectified, by rubbing out the misspelt word or the incorrect figure; but this cannot be done on paper, and the effect upon the child is, to make him think and to spell the word mentally before it is written upon the paper; anyone who has given a lesson in dictation

to a class, and made them perform the exercise on paper, must have observed the indication of this reflection in their countenances whilst they are writing. It may be said, on the other hand, that children who can write very fairly from dictation, and work their sums with tolerable accuracy on slates, will make all kinds of blunders when required to do the same on paper; but these mistakes arise from the novelty of the exercise and the want of sufficient practice, and is a strong argument in favour of this paper work; skill in arithmetic, and the power of spelling correctly, will be tested in after-life, not on slates, but on paper, by the quickness and accuracy with which the pen can be used in writing letters, in making out bills, and posting accounts in the ledger.’

<sup>6</sup> Ibid. 1856–7, p. 610.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid. 1860–1, p. 170.

of errors ranged formerly from five to thirty, the average in a short time was never higher than four.

**Dictation copybook.—Kind of.** Separate books should be used for this and the writing exercise, as one will interfere with the other, if on the same paper. Books such as those already described, page 69, are the best, as the close ruling does not require so large a consumption of paper, and as one leaf is exactly sufficient for a single exercise (fifteen lines).

**Should be kept clean.** But, whatever is the kind used, it is essentially necessary that the books should be kept scrupulously clean, free from all blotting, dust, tearing, crumpling, &c. Cleanliness and neatness are essential elements of success in all manual operations, for, until persons take a pride in doing a thing neatly, they will not take a pride in doing it well. Besides, when neatness is insisted upon, a habit is formed which will always be of practical value.

**Should be kept between two boards with strap and buckle, &c.** The copybooks should be kept between two thin boards, and the bundle thus formed bound firmly together by a strap with a buckle. By this simple and inexpensive contrivance, they are much less liable to be bruised, or to be tossed, exposed to dust, &c., while the teacher can at once procure the books of any particular class he wishes, and give them out with ease.

**3. Marking the exercise.** This is of the utmost importance, for the chief value of the dictation exercise may be said to consist in its pointing out the words which each child is likely to mispell. A partial examination, is, therefore, injurious, for, unless all are pointed out, the means adopted to make the results satisfactory will be unsuccessful.

**Different methods, and objections to them.** Several methods have been proposed which are said to possess the two great advantages of being complete and economical of time. 1. The teacher spells every word correctly letter by letter, causing the children to mark the errors as they find them. This system has the greatest sanction of any.<sup>1</sup> But in practice I have always found it to fail. That it does fail can be proved by any one who will take the trouble of going over the exercises after their being noted by the children. He will find, unless I am much mistaken, several errors unmarked. Such a system seems to require not only too much honesty and firmness from children, but too much attention. One half of the unmarked

<sup>1</sup> See Currie, p. 370; Ross, pp. 118 and 114; Mr. Marshall, Min. of Council, 1859, p. 413; and Mr. Bellairs, 1848-9, p. 120.

errors are omitted from thoughtlessness, though some few are passed over wilfully. 2. He causes them to change slates and correct each other's exercises. This, also, is unsuccessful, and depraves the mind by the distrust which it implies. 3. He takes the slate in which he thinks there are most errors, and marks it carefully, and then spells the words so marked for the class, directing all to note the errors on their own slates, if they occur. This is palpably but a makeshift, as he may not be able to select the worst exercise; and even if he were, other boys may commit mistakes not found in it. 4. He makes every boy spell a word alternately, as it is written, and he tells each when wrong. This also is but a makeshift, as the word which falls to each may be quite correct, though the words before and after it were quite wrong. 5. While reading out the exercise, the teacher goes through the desks and marks the errors as he sees them. This plan is ineffectual, wastes time, and affords abundant temptations to dishonesty.

**Others also fail.** There are several other plans, but as they are inferior even to these, it is unnecessary to give them. They fail from being partial, or from requiring more honesty and thoughtfulness in action than it is possible to get from children.

**Teacher should read every word and mark every error.** There is no system of marking, in my opinion, but the one; that is, *to read every exercise carefully and to score each error as it occurs.* Every word should be carefully gone over, and all mistakes marked, whether of spelling, of capital letters, of omissions, of incorrect divisions at the end of lines, &c.; and the number should be summed up at the top of each page, the errors of spelling, however, being put by themselves, while all the others may be collected into one sum. I generally recommend that the spelling errors should form the numerator of a fraction of which the sum of *all* the other kinds forms the denominator. Thus the fraction  $\frac{8}{11}$  would represent eight errors of spelling, and three mistakes of some other kind, either of omission of words or insertion of wrong words, &c.

**True spelling to be written above each mistake.** It is necessary, however, for reasons which will be given farther on (see p. 77), not only to mark the orthographical mistakes, *but to write the true word above each.* Red ink should be used, but only with a quill pen, as a steel pen blackens it. It is neater and more easily seen than black ink.

**This impossible with slates.** With slates such a minute examination would be impossible, as the children would be idling during the time it was going on; but when paper is used, they

need not idle, as this part of the exercise can be deferred, as has been already explained, to any convenient opportunity before or after school, or during play-time.

**By whom the revision should be made.** It may be made by the master himself, or by the assistant, or by both together, or by the aid of the monitors, if they be steady, and also good spellers. Except, however, the number of exercises is very large, it is much better to avoid the use of monitors, for it is rare to find them properly qualified for this duty; and even when they are, the compulsory discharge of an irksome task, which brings with it no equivalent return, is almost certain to generate unfaithfulness, even in the best of them. If, however, it is absolutely necessary to employ them, a certain number of exercises should be given to each, so that whatever deficiencies appear may be easily traced to the proper person. But, no matter by whom it is done, the principal teacher should satisfy himself that it is done thoroughly, and, as Mr. M'Leod says ('English Journal of Education'), 'such a minute investigation will amply repay him for all his labour.'

**Will not take long.** A skilful person will mark an exercise in from one to two minutes, according to the quality of the writing and the number of mistakes met with.

**4. Correction.** The three steps previous to this refer to dictation simply as a *test* of efficiency in spelling. They do not *teach* spelling, but, on the contrary, they rather tend to make mistakes permanent; for, whatever aid writing affords to the memory, it is obvious that its tendency is to perpetuate errors as well as accuracies. It is exactly, however, at the third step that the majority of teachers stop. They give out the sentence, get it written down, occasionally mark it, but, as the time of the lesson is for the most part then up, they rarely pass beyond this.

The entire value of the exercise as a means of *teaching* spelling consists in the permanent removal from the minds of the children of all the errors they commit.

**How to correct.** To secure this we should appeal to the eye more than to the ear, though we ought to appeal to both. We should get the child to write the words, which he misspells, so often correctly that he will become perfectly familiar with their true form. The teacher, after marking the exercise, should bring forward the number of errors from page to page, until they amount to the number of lines in each (generally about fifteen). *Seven* on one sheet, and *eight* on another, would appear at the top thus ( $\frac{7}{0}$ ) on the first, and ( $\frac{7+8}{0} = \frac{15}{0}$ ) on the second; the '0' signifying that there were no errors but those of spelling. When the errors

amount to this number,<sup>1</sup> the child should transfer the words, but in a corrected form, to a new sheet, *writing each word at the beginning of a line*. This being done, he should fill up each line with its own word, writing it as often as the line will hold it.

Suppose that the errors committed were *monstrous, the fled, wilful, beggar, &c.*, and that the page selected for the correction was that within the black lines below, the whole would appear as follows :—

monstrous,	monstrous,	monstrous,	monstrous,	monstrous.
they fled,	they fled,	they fled,	they fled,	they fled.
wilful,	wilful,	wilful,	wilful,	wilful.
beggar,	beggar,	beggar,	beggar,	beggar.
&c.	&c.	&c.		

The word *fled* is put in, although not wrong in the exercise, to show by 'what means the mistake occurred in the word 'they.'

By this means the true form is almost certain to be so thoroughly impressed upon the eye and brain, that a mistake in these words is not likely to occur again.

**Corrections; where to make them, and when.** For the sake of reference, these corrections should all be recorded at the end of the book, writing on the last leaf first, and going back to meet the ordinary exercises. They will thus be all together. All corrections should take place *during the time set apart for the ordinary dictation exercise*, and, as all boys will not have fifteen errors on the same day, it will follow that some will be taking down the new sentence at the time others are correcting the old ones. Hence the value of bringing forward the errors from page to page (as I before recommended), and of writing the true form above each when marking the books; for every child, from such an arrangement, will be able to decide for himself when he is *to correct*, and when to attend to the new passage, and he can also make out the proper spelling of the words to be transferred, without special reference to the master.

It is not a good thing to set apart, as some do, a fixed day for the purpose of correction, as many may be absent on that day, and thus lose the benefit of correction altogether.

**Cause of all prevalent errors to be investigated.** When-

<sup>1</sup> With some boys the mistakes may not amount to fifteen in many weeks. In such cases they may be

corrected at stated intervals, determined by the master himself.

ever there is any prevalent error, pains should be taken to find its cause. For this purpose, the true form may be written beside the wrong one on a *black board*, so that, by comparison, what led to the fault may be detected and avoided.

**5. Tests after correction.** (5) We have now merely to point out the *tests* which are necessary in order to show the efficacy of the preceding corrections.

**Why such tests are required.** The previous step is supposed to be sufficient to remove all errors permanently, and in the majority of cases it will do so; but, from the inattention and carelessness of some, it may in reality fail.

**Tests described.** Hence the necessity of this last course, which consists in giving out the words *from the pages of correction at the end of the books*, to be spelled orally, and in writing. They may be given out individually, or grouped into sentences of the master's own composition, three or four being put, if possible, into each. In either case each boy's book may be taken alternately.

The oral test ought to be applied occasionally, instead of the usual exercise in spelling from dictation, which accompanies each reading-lesson, while the written test may take place instead of a new dictation exercise from a book. The words should be written in the body of the book—not at the end—and all errors should be treated exactly as recommended in step No. 4. The master may keep lists of these errors, or he may refer to the copybooks themselves. The lists, however, though more troublesome, are more satisfactory.

**Errors of capitals, &c.** With regard to the other errors generally met with, as in capital letters, division of words, omissions, &c., a few hints as to the best means of remedying them will be all that is necessary, provided only that the teacher is sufficiently strict in pointing them out.

**Concluding suggestions.** The following additional suggestions will be found advantageous:—

**1. Copying.** (1) Pupils should be prohibited from looking on each other's papers, because, when they do this, it is impossible to discover what are the exact errors of any. If they were required to sit behind each other in straight lines, and as far asunder as desk accommodation would admit of, there would be less danger of prompting, &c.; but the best possible check is the cultivation of such an upright and healthy spirit among the children themselves as would make them regard the act as mean and dishonest, and not only a breach of obedience, but of integrity. By this means the exercise may be made a very important instrument of moral discipline.

**2. Collecting the books.** (2) Some system of collecting the

books expeditiously should be adopted. That which I have found to answer best consists in making the children pass them from hand to hand until they are thus collected into a small bundle at one end of each desk. The monitor then collects these small bundles into one ready for inspection at the time set apart for that purpose.

**3. How to act in small schools.** (3) In many country schools there is not room enough to teach the classes upon the floor, and at the same time to conduct the dictation exercise quietly and reliably; it is judicious, in such cases, to frame the time-table so as to admit of having some of the junior children at play while this exercise is going on.

**4. All classes to write from dictation.** (4) When this exercise is confined to the senior classes, the removal of a child into them from the others occasions a good deal of inconvenience. Such a child, from having no practice in his former class, not only makes bad spelling, but he writes so slowly and incorrectly that he acts as a drag for many weeks. The only remedy is to accustom each class to write the sentences from dictation of which they are capable, making them, of course, progressively difficult. In the very lowest classes we might begin with *words*, then, as they advance, they may get easy sentences, then more difficult, until at last any ordinary sentence may be taken.

**Hints from 'Journal of Education.'** The following hints, from the 'Journal of Education,' may be found useful in showing how the earlier dictation exercises may be commenced: 'The teacher gives out the letters of the first word letter by letter, slowly and distinctly, the pupils writing these letters fairly and carefully. When every letter of a word is given out, the word should be pronounced by the teacher, all of the children repeating it audibly, but quietly, after him. The next word is treated in the same way, and so on until a sentence is given out. The teacher then calls upon his class to spell and pronounce each word as it occurs, each boy taking only one word. They are then directed to rub all out. When this is done, the teacher proceeds to dictate the sentence over again, word by word, very deliberately and distinctly, but without spelling them as at first.'

**Junior ought to be occupied chiefly in copying.** The junior classes, however, should be chiefly occupied in *copying*; it is only occasionally, as on one day in the week or fortnight, that they should be called upon to undergo the severe test of a dictation exercise. Even in the most advanced classes, this should not form a portion of every-day's duty. About twenty minutes, on three or at most four days of each week, will be found quite sufficient for all practical purposes, if the teaching is faithful and correct.



**Opinions for and against teaching it to junior classes.** Mr. Currie is against the early introduction of the dictation exercise. He says: <sup>1</sup> 'The class to which it is given must be sufficiently advanced in writing to warrant the hope of an adequate return for the time devoted to the exercise. A class which is struggling with the mechanical difficulties of writing cannot profitably engage in it as commonly practised.' But the great majority of school inspectors are against this view. They say that 'it ought to be given to all;' that 'dictation should be joined with reading from the very first;' that, when so joined, 'it possesses many advantages.'<sup>2</sup>

**Mr. Gill's graduated exercises for each class.** In conclusion, I will give here the following extract from Gill's work on 'School Management,' to show what he considers to be a properly graduated course of lessons in dictation.

- |                         |   |                   |
|-------------------------|---|-------------------|
| A Course of<br>Lessons. | } | I. Lower Classes. |
|-------------------------|---|-------------------|
1. Simple sentences containing words of like endings, as—John will bend the wire and mend the fire.
  2. Simple sentences containing easy words, especially the names of common objects, as—Tea is cool.
  3. Pieces of simple poetry.

## II. Middle Classes.

1. Sentences containing words of similar pronunciation, but different in spelling and meaning, as—The wind blew the blue-bell away.
2. Sentences containing words with silent letters, and double vowels, or consonants, as—The dumb boy ate a piece of cabbage.
3. Words spelt alike, but different in pronunciation and meaning, as—His conduct will conduct him to ruin.
4. Words spelt and pronounced alike, but different in meaning, as—It was meet she should meet her cousin.
5. Selections of poetry.

## III. Higher Classes.

1. Primitives and derivatives.
2. Columns of anomalous words.
3. Peculiar difficulties, as—Eight heifers and ewe sheep were chewing the cud beneath the tough boughs of an ancient yew-tree in that beautiful field.
4. Selections of poetry.

<sup>1</sup> In his valuable work on Common School Education.

<sup>2</sup> Min. of Council, 1848-9, vol. i.

p. 120; 1859-60, pp. 175 and 272; 1861-2, p. 148; and the Reports of the Head Inspectors in Ireland.

I think it a very useful thing for children to be called upon to write down lists of all the commodities generally sold in different kinds of shops—such as grocers', vintners', butchers', drapers', &c.; and of the tools and other articles used in husbandry and by the tradesmen in their immediate neighbourhood. They will frequently find this of advantage to them, as they are very likely to be called upon to use these words in after-life. They should also write down lists of Christian names, familiar surnames; countries and nations; names of men of note; names of trades and professions; army and navy grades; and also auction bills and ordinary newspaper advertisements. An auction bill, for instance, such as the following, which is extracted from one of the daily papers, will be found a trying exercise for the best spellers in the senior division of the school:—

**UNRESERVED SALE OF HOUSEHOLD FURNITURE AND ARTICLES OF VERTU**, at the Central Bazaar, this day, consisting of mahogany dining tables, couches, pedestal sideboard, wardrobes; oak carved Elizabethan table, buffalo horns, Kidderminster stair-carpeting, &c.; mauve damask curtains and poles, parlour tapestry-carpet; drawing-room furniture of walnut—Cheffonier, whatnot, loo table, Brussels carpet, rich moreen-seated sofa and chairs, gorgeously upholstered, suite of curtains, escritoire, crystal gaselier and candelabra, pianoforte and full-toned harmonium, papier-maché chess-table, with squares of mosaic or marquetry; Albert, French, and iron bedsteads, feather beds, pal-liasses, and mattresses, ottomans, prie-dieu chair, toilet ware; Dresden and Sèvres china and antique delph, Parian marbles, several articles in buhl and ormolu, together with a recherché and extensive collection of paintings in water-colour and oil; also numerous engravings of ancient and modern execution.

## CHAPTER IV.

## WRITING.

**Most important subject to the teacher.** Writing forms the popular test by which the value of a school is tried. In any other branch some inattention or defect of the teacher may pass unnoticed, especially when the parents are illiterate; but in this any neglect of his is so truly reflected in the failings of the child, and his habits of order and neatness, his power of creating similar habits in others, are so fully exhibited and so easily detected, that there is no escape from condemnation if deserved.

**Old teachers popular through attention to writing.** The old race of teachers owed much, if not all of the favour with which they were regarded by the people, to their skill in teaching writing; and even in the present day the school that is the most popular<sup>1</sup> turns out the neatest and best copybooks.

**We should therefore expect writing to be the most successful of all exercises.** Even in the teacher's own interests there ought, therefore, to be no part of the school course in which excellence might be so universally looked for as in writing, especially as, from its thoroughly mechanical nature, even the most unintellectual can practise it with almost a certainty of success. Yet, whether it is that the systems in force of teaching it are faulty in principle, or that they are carelessly carried out, it is certain that this exercise is not all so successful in primary schools as one would naturally be led to expect. In fact, the character of the penmanship has met, from time to time, with the censure of nearly all who are in any way connected with education, and

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Fraser, assistant commissioner appointed to inquire into the working of primary schools in England, thus describes a private school which he met with. He says: 'There were few labourers' children, but mostly those of small tradesmen and farmers, at 6d. per week. They came from great distances. Of the 80 or 90 present at my visit, one boy had come 5½ miles; 14 boys and 7 girls had come 3 miles; 24 boys and

5 girls had come 2 miles. The school is intensely popular in the neighbourhood.' And he adds, '*The secret of success is, that he teaches writing remarkably well.*' The experience of most inspectors could, I am certain, supply many similar instances, where the only claim to popularity, and to successful competition with other schools, was skill in teaching writing well.

even called forth a condemnatory letter from the late Lord Palmerston when prime minister of England.<sup>1</sup>

**Causes for the bad writing in schools.** My idea is, that writing is unsuccessful, both because the *systems* are bad, and because also they are *badly carried out*. When teachers are highly educated, and when the curriculum of their schools is so extensive, as is the case generally, that one subject clashes with another, it will always be found that those parts of each day's duty which are the most mechanical and elementary will suffer, even although such a course is known to be contrary to the true interests of the teacher and the children.

This leaning towards those portions of the course which are most intellectual, and the consequent distaste for the drudgery of teaching the others, are so natural, that they are frequently too much for all, except for those whose faithfulness and good sense no considerations of personal inclination can overcome.

**Defects of present systems.** The systems are also inferior. They either treat writing too much as a science, as Mulhauser's did, or else, by the use of engraved copy slips, they require from the teacher little more than his supervision, and do not *force* upon him that constant personal acquaintance with the defects of each child by which alone he can be certain of success. In fact, by making this exercise to a large extent self-working, these slips afford that very temptation to neglect which a wise foresight would most certainly not only not offer, but would strongly withhold from teachers with such tastes as the majority of this body are known to possess, and therefore it may be said that they are, to a great extent, the cause of the present failure.

**System recommended.** The system which I recommend is free from most of the defects at present met with; and, though it will not of itself create attention, it will certainly not tempt teachers to neglect of it.

<sup>1</sup> The following is a copy of the letter referred to:—

Whitehall, 24th May, 1854.

Sir,—I am directed by Viscount Palmerston to request that you will submit to the Committee of Council on Education, for their consideration, that one great fault in the system of instruction in the schools of the country lies in the want of proper teaching in the art of writing. The great bulk of the lower and middle orders write hands too small and indistinct, and do not form their letters; or they sometimes form them by alternate broad and fine strokes,

which make the words difficult to read. The handwriting which was practised in the early part and middle of the last century was far better than that now in common use. And Lord Palmerston would suggest that it would be very desirable that the attention of schoolmasters should be directed to this subject, and that their pupils should be taught rather to imitate broad printing than fine copper-plate engraving.

I am, &c.

(Signed) H. WADDINGTON.

The Secretary of the Committee of Council on Education.

Its nature will be perceived from the following rules, and from the remarks explanatory of the principles upon which they are founded :—

**Rule 1. Paper to be used instead of slates.** Opinions are variously divided as to whether children in their earlier efforts at writing should use slates or paper, but I am inclined to think that the balance is in favour of the latter, though the practice would lead us to believe that it was not so.

As paper is the medium of communication in use at the present day, excellence in writing upon it, and not upon slates, is the end to be attained. The question, therefore, is, Will those who begin by writing on slates make as much progress in the desired direction as if they began upon the material itself which they will afterwards be called upon to use?

This is similar to the question, Whether is it better to teach a girl in the beginning to sew on paper or on cloth; and neither would, in my opinion, have arisen, were it not that the cost of material becomes in large schools a matter of considerable importance, and very often determines the practice to be pursued. In fact, these are questions of economy, and not of merit. But as the long-continued use of slates may have led many to think that they were primarily adopted for different and more favourable reasons, it is probably correct to state here briefly why I recommend paper to be used in their place.

**Arguments for use of paper.** The difficulties which a child encounters in his first attempts to write on paper consist, so far as I can estimate them, (1) in the resistance of the paper to the free motion of the pen; (2) in the management of the pen itself, owing to its peculiar make and flexibility; and (3) in regulating the flow of the ink; and these cannot be overcome by any practice upon slates, no matter how extensive.

It is said that pupils acquire a freedom of hand, and learn the forms of the letters by the use of slates. This may be true; but, as the freedom thus acquired cannot be transferred to paper, upon which alone it is of any practical value, and as the shapes of the letters can be as easily and correctly learned upon one material as on the other, it is but fair to conclude that the use of paper from the first efforts is the wisest course to pursue. The expense will be a little more, but there will be a profitable and judicious economy in the end.

**Opinions in favour of paper.** Mr. Sheridan says,<sup>1</sup> that 'under any circumstances, indeed, I attach but little importance to writing upon slates, as a means of teaching writing. When a child is old enough to be capable of holding a pencil properly (and

<sup>1</sup> Reports of the Commissioners of National Education, Ireland.

he should not be required to use one until he is), he is also quite capable of holding a pen properly; and it is that which should be put into his hand.' Mr. Keenan condemns slates altogether. He says,<sup>1</sup> 'It is possible that writing upon a slate may spoil the hand for the finer lines to be drawn upon paper. Indeed, so generally does this notion prevail in Holland, that the use of slates is, in many cases, quite forbidden; and when a Dutch schoolmaster is asked if the total superseding of the slate is not too costly a plan, he usually replies that it is not.' He adds that, 'the use of paper leads to a salutary practice of economy, to habits of carefulness and deliberativeness, and to the important idea of rendering the results of all human labour—great or little—fit for the test and worthy of the quality of durability.' Mr. Fussell says,<sup>2</sup> 'The practice of writing upon paper is gradually, though slowly, extending itself, and, if sufficient care be taken in superintending this exercise, its substitution for slate-writing will, I have no doubt, be a point gained. I believe it is adopted in the elementary schools of France much more extensively than with us, and, from all the information that I have received on the subject, the plan is successful.'

**Practice in the schools inspected by myself.** In the schools under my own inspection, paper has been almost exclusively used for the last few years, and with very favourable results, amongst which, and by no means the least important, is the means thus afforded of bringing the very earliest attempts of the young children under the immediate notice of their parents, and, as a consequence, interesting them in their success. When slates were used, the parents could neither tell how much attention was paid to these children, nor could they judge of the extent to which they had profited by the instructions they received. Paper supplied the exact test for both which they required.

**Certain classes may use slates.** The use of slates has not been wholly dispensed with, though, as a means of learning to write, it may be said that it has: I recommend that the alphabet and next session of the lowest class should use slates. It is not of great importance, indeed, to teach these to write at all, but, as they must be kept occupied at some desk occupation, and as a suitable change from their reading-books, writing seems to afford the best means of employing them; and as they are generally very young, it is safer to give pencils into their hands than pens. The highest draft of this class should, however, like all the classes in advance of it, use paper instead of slates.

**Rule 2. Use steel pens, and supply the children from a stock in school.** Steel pens are the cheapest; they waste no time

<sup>1</sup> Reports of the Commissioners of National Education, Ireland.

<sup>2</sup> Min. of Council, 1860-1, p. 19.

in mending, and, from the perfection to which they have recently been brought, they are quite equal to quills in the only points of excellence the latter were supposed to possess—freedom and softness—while they are much superior to them in durability and fineness of stroke. They are, therefore, best adapted to the wants of a public school.

There are many kinds of steel pens, however; some of them, indeed, so bad that it is quite impossible to produce with them any but small, irregular, scratchy, and cramped writing. The master should make trial of several sorts, and having selected the best, he should use only these.<sup>1</sup> The holders should be pretty long and properly balanced, as the use of short or clumsy holders is a fertile source of bad writing.

**Pupils to be provided from a stock in school.** Both pens and holders should be provided in the school; for when the pupils provide themselves, which is the general custom, they may forget to bring them, or they may lose them by the way; their pockets may injure them; they may bring bad pens; they may not be able to provide themselves for some days, if living far from any shops; and with all these defects, which in many cases render the writing impossible, and in the majority of cases make it a source of difficulty and irregularity, the plan is the most expensive to the children. A good supply of suitable pens should be kept on hand (a neat box specially provided for them would render them more easily available, and prevent loss), and it is from this stock that the children ought to be supplied. Each child should receive a pen when about to write, which he must return again, to the proper monitor, at the close of the exercise.

**Pens not to be used too long.** The pens should be kept in good working order. Some teachers, through a mistaken economy, retain in stock many that are injured by rust and wear, forgetting that whatever attempts they themselves might make at successful writing with such articles, children, who have neither acquired confidence nor skill, must fail if forced to use them. I am aware that, from the difficulty of making the children individually responsible, the pens are sometimes treated less carefully than they ought, but the waste is after all very inconsiderable, and can always in a good school be altered by the personal influence of the master.

**Expense not great; how to meet it.** The expense of keeping the school supplied will be very trifling.<sup>2</sup> One penny from each child will be sufficient to supply him with pens and ink

<sup>1</sup> I find Mitchell's 0262 steel pen a very useful one for general purposes.

<sup>2</sup> National Schools are supplied

from the central establishment, Dublin, with steel pens at prices ranging from 2½d. to 3s. per gross.

for the ordinary school year. This the children will, I am certain, give very readily, as six times the sum would not supply them so well were they to purchase for themselves. In some schools, expenses of this kind are borne by the local manager.

**Rule 3. Teach the children to hold the pen properly.** Children must be shown how to hold the pen. Give pens to a class of fifty boys for the first time, and it will be found that scarcely any two of them will hold it in the same way, and yet it may be said that there is but one way in which it ought to be held to secure the greatest freedom of motion. Those who have been properly taught know what this way is. It is, therefore, unnecessary to describe it in a work addressed to teachers; nor, indeed, could it be described so as to give as correct a notion of it as would be obtained from a single glance at the hand of any good-writer. It is exceedingly difficult to make children hold the pen properly, but no pains should be spared in getting them to do so, for every stroke tends to create a habit, and it rests with the teachers whether that habit be good or bad. It is not right, however, to insist upon perfection at first, for no one will reach it, and continual fault-finding will only discourage them. Show the children what they are to do, assist them to do it, and, by gradual corrections and encouragements, they will in the end attain to the desired excellence.

**Rule 4. Keep good ink, and have it always ready for immediate use.** Any one who has much to write knows how greatly the appearance of the writing and the pleasure in its execution are affected by the quality of the ink. It is therefore indispensable that the ink used in schools should be good, and it is equally indispensable that it should be always at hand and in sufficient quantity; but these desiderata the master cannot secure if the children are allowed, as they are in most country schools, to bring their own bottles with them backwards and forwards daily.

**Ink-bottles should be inserted in desks.** Ink-bottles of a proper kind, and sufficient in number for all likely to write at one time, should be inserted firmly in the desks. There are many kinds specially designed for this purpose, but all that are wide at the top and shallow are unsuitable, if not provided with good covers. Such, for instance, are the little lead bottles provided by the Commissioners of National Education in this country, and many of the ordinary ink wells in use in England. These waste the ink too much, and from their being so open at the top, they collect dust freely, which, by thickening it, renders the ink worthless. They are quite unsuited for female schools, in which the desks must necessarily be employed for needlework as well as for writing.



**Ordinary penny jars a good substitute for the best kinds.**

When the best kind cannot be got readily, I find that an excellent substitute for them is to be had in the little jars, such as are sold full for one penny by Messrs. Arnold. They hold a good deal, are not easily upset, and, when properly inserted, they look very well. To insert them, cut a hole large enough for the body of the bottle to fit tightly into—not too tight to prevent its being taken out again for cleaning, but tight enough to prevent its falling through—and push the bottle down until nothing but the neck remains above the desk. Provide each with a small cork (of wood, if possible), to prevent evaporation and the admission of dust, and attach this to the desk with fine wire, so that it may not be easily lost.

**Supply of ink.** The teacher will supply these with ink from a stock made by himself from the ordinary powders, or, if he prefer it, from ink purchased in the shops. The expense is very trifling, and should be met as already explained, but the advantages are very numerous. Every child is certain to have good ink, and is, therefore, sure of writing daily; while all confusion arising from borrowing each other's bottles, or looking for them, and all waste of time, are prevented.

A small tin vessel with a fine spout, something in the form of a can for oiling the wheels of a carriage, is very useful for pouring the ink into the small bottles. Without such a contrivance much of it is spilled, and the desks are soiled. When the ink is kept in a large jar, a quill may be inserted into the cork, which answers the purpose well, if a second hole be made to admit the air.

**Rule 5. The copybooks should be suitable, and carefully kept.** They should be uniform, so that all the children in the writing class may be finished about the same time; and they should not contain more than from eight to ten lines in each page, so that the model for imitation may not even at the close of the exercise be too far removed from the pupil's eye. (The books may be somewhat wider to compensate for this.) They should be neatly covered, and, of course, the paper itself should be of good quality.

**Books in Ireland good.** The Commissioners of National Education in Ireland furnish their schools with very admirable little copybooks for writing purposes, and with larger ones for book-keeping. In their schools none others should be used, as none others are equally good, or equally cheap. It often happens, however, that the copybooks met with in them are untidy and filthy, and of all shapes, sizes, and quality, and this notwithstanding that sixty copybooks can be had for five shillings, and that a parcel for this, or even a smaller sum, will be sent from

Dublin carriage free. I always regard a bad supply of papers and its attendant evils as wholly inexcusable.

**More difficult in England to get a good supply.** In England it is somewhat more difficult and more expensive to keep the schools well supplied; but it is a most important duty, and the manner in which it is done will determine to a great extent the success of the writing exercise. No good teacher will neglect it, no matter how great the inconvenience may be.

I have already shown the evils which arise when the pupils supply themselves with pens and ink, and recommended the discontinuance of such a practice; those which arise when the pupils supply themselves with paper are quite as bad, and are quite as much to be opposed. This is a subject well deserving of the attention of both teachers and managers. Mr. Kennedy recommends that the managers in England should find their own copybooks, and supply them gratuitously to the children; but, whether they do so or not, they should take some steps to secure for their schools a regular supply of copybooks possessing the following desiderata: *uniformity of size, shortness of leaf, good quality, and neatness of appearance.*

**Books should be kept clean.** Whatever may be the character of the book, it should be kept scrupulously clean. The writing exercise may be so conducted as to lay the foundation of habits of attention and neatness, or, with even more certainty, of slovenliness and carelessness. It is the master's duty, therefore, to insist upon great neatness in the copybooks, upon thoughtfulness in the performance of the exercise, and upon perfect cleanliness and taste. In a carefully-conducted school the copybooks will be untorn and uncrushed; they will be almost as free from filth, from dust, from blots, from scribbling, and from every other mark of neglect when finished, as they were on the first day. This they can be, by some care and watchfulness; and no point short of this standard should satisfy any teacher.

**How to secure cleanliness.** In order to secure this degree of neatness, &c. (1), prevent the children from doubling the books on the desks—turning the cover in, and so leaving the white leaf to collect the dust. (2) Examine them carefully, and check with great strictness any perceptible faults. (3) Adopt the plan recommended for keeping the dictation copybooks, that is, between two boards, those of each class forming a separate bundle; and (4) do not allow the children to take the copybooks home until they are finished. In carrying them backwards and forwards they are always soiled and bruised, and when at home they are scribbled upon by the children themselves, or by some of the family, and very often half filled with objectionable ballads.

By such means, good habits will be formed in all, for no child is incapable of learning to be tidy and careful; and none will find it even difficult to be so if the observance of the proper rules is insisted upon from the outset, and continued as a daily practice.

**Rule 6. Attend carefully to the position of the child.** He must sit firmly but easily, with his feet resting steadily upon the floor; his body, with the exception of a very gentle inclination of the shoulders forward, must be upright; his left hand resting on the nearest corner of the paper, while, at the same time, the left elbow is kept off the desk and brought closely, but not stiffly, to the side. The weight of the body should be thrown slightly upon this arm, so as to leave to the other a greater freedom of motion. The elbow of the right arm should approach the side, and the hand, with the pen properly held in it, should move easily over the paper, the pressure of the fingers being just sufficient to give the pen steadiness. A constrained position not only prevents good writing, but injures the health.

**Should sit in straight lines.** The pupils should sit in straight lines—one behind the other—for this not only looks well and promotes order, but it enables the master to detect readily any violation of the details just sketched. To prevent trouble in arranging them in this way, mark upon the desks either numbers or lines, opposite which the children must sit, allowing a space of eighteen inches between every two. The desk of nine feet, which is the usual size, can accommodate six children properly when writing, but no more. In some schools, I find that each desk is divided for three children, for four, for five, and for six—the figures 3, 4, 5, and 6 being painted at the proper distances. When the master finds that the attendance admits of it, he directs three to sit in each desk, or four, or five, as the case may be, and by the help of the painted figures the children are at once able to do this without confusion. When three are to go into one desk, they sit opposite the figure 3, when four are to go into it, they sit opposite the 4's, &c. This arrangement is very serviceable in the dictation exercise; more so, indeed, in it than in the writing, as it assists materially in the prevention of copying, prompting, &c. I think it should be adopted in every school.

**Place of the copybook in writing.** The copybooks should be opened out to their full length, and lie evenly on the desks. Their tops should be parallel to, or should touch the horizontal ledge, so that they will appear to form one straight line when viewed from either end of the desks. This should be carefully insisted on, as the pupils have a great tendency to pull their books crooked, and, as a consequence, to sit incorrectly themselves.

**Rule 7. Above all things, endeavour to cultivate, in**

**the children the habit of imitation.** Writing is almost entirely a matter of imitation, and progress in it will depend upon the success of the master in inducing the children to follow what is set before them. It is a manual art, and one of the easiest and simplest when rightly practised. To acquire this habit is, therefore, of the utmost importance to the child. In fact, without it failure is certain. And it is in the means recommended by me for securing this that the system of teaching writing which I am about to describe chiefly differs from those at present in force. I believe this system to be founded on correct principles, and, from the long experience I have had of its actual working, I can vouch for the certainty with which success will follow when it is carefully carried out.

**Errors to be marked, and same copy given next day.** First, then, *Mark all errors of imitation, give the same line again, and continue it day by day until the defects are removed.* The model set before the child must be imitated in all the points in which it is a model of writing, that is, *in the breadth of the strokes, in the size of the letters, in their slope, their regularity, their distance, in the manner in which they are joined to each other, and, of course, in their shape.* The errors of imitation which must be marked will therefore arise from neglect of some of these points, and it is to these alone that the master's corrections and instructions should have special reference.

**How to note the errors.** Thus, if, in the child's writing, the 'hair' strokes are heavy, and the down strokes light; if the letters, *when compared with the head-line, are too small, or too large; if they are too upright or too slanted; if they are not uniform; if they are too close or too far asunder; if they are, as often happens, not joined together, or if they are joined improperly; if they are not of the shape intended;* then the master should record at the top of each page the nature of the defect; as, 'too small,' 'too close,' 'not sloped,' 'not level,' &c., and in setting him the same head-line next day, he should draw the child's attention to these observations, and insist upon the removal of the faults.

When the letters are not *sloped* properly, the true slope should be marked over the wrong one, in any letter selected in the copy; and when letters are not *level*, it is sometimes sufficient merely to draw a line over the top of any word (not of all words), to show that they do not all touch it. When single letters only are wrong, one of them may be selected, and the true form written beside it. By such means the markings at the head of the books will, in many cases, be rendered unnecessary.

**When several errors occur, most prominent to be taken first.** When several errors of different kinds occur in the same

copy, the most prominent should be corrected first; for, if required to attend to the removal of all at the same time, the child may be so confused that he will attend to none. The chief faults consist in the breadth of the stroke, in the slope and irregularity of the letters, and in the distance between them, and when these are removed, it will be easy to make the children write the letters of the proper length, &c. It is astonishing how great an improvement is effected sometimes in the appearance of a copy, by simply requiring the child to make the *up* and *down* strokes of the proper relative thickness, or by causing him to write level, and keep the endings of the words in straight lines below each other. The old teachers paid great attention to the latter point, which, in their phraseology, was called *the terminations*. The Rev. J. Blandford says,<sup>1</sup> 'They impressed upon the minds of their pupils (not unfrequently through the medium of the cane), this rule, that each letter and word formed in every line of a page in a copybook must occupy the same space in it that it does in the copy itself. Now, when this is done, the result is regularity in the ending or *termination* of the same words in each successive line of the page, so that a straight line drawn through any letter in the top line of the book would pass through the corresponding letters below.' He adds, 'It is no easy matter to write a copy with this regularity; the process requires an observing eye, a light and flexible hand, and, above all, *slow* writing; but these three points, especially the last, are precisely those that are involved in the rules for teaching good writing, and it is to the neglect of them that the degeneracy of the writing of the present day is in no slight degree to be attributed.'

**This error may be marked by a line.** Attention to this rule is the easiest way by which the teacher can test whether the children adhered to the three points mentioned or not, for a mere glance at the copy will detect the faults. When the letters, &c., are not straight under each other, a line drawn vertically through any of them, from top to bottom of the page, is a sufficient indication of the nature of the error, and a sufficient guide for the child next day.

**Basis of this system of imitation.—Its superiority.** This system is based upon the fact, that writing, like all other imitative arts, is learned better by imitating one model for some time than by imperfectly imitating several of different kinds. But the great advantage of it as an agent in teaching is, that it gives to the master an opportunity of seeing how his instructions were understood, and to what extent they influenced the practice of the child. Other systems rest satisfied with pointing out errors (in many of them there is

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1856-7, p. 372.

liberty to neglect even this), but they fail to test how much of the explanation has been of value and will be actually applied.

I have frequently seen cases in which the model was of the right height, but where the pupils, who were supposed to be copying it, wrote so small as scarcely to ascend above the ruling! This was chiefly in girls' schools, where small writing is affected for its supposed neatness. Again: I have often seen the letters of the model uniform in slope, &c., but where the attempted imitation presented almost every irregularity; the *n* higher than the *m*, the *o* and the *e* being scarcely distinguishable from each other; the *t* having one slope, the *l* another; while the down letters, as the *y* and *g*, exhibited directions different from both; the distance between the letters being at the same time so different, that where a word of the model occupied, say, two inches, the same word written by the children either occupied half an inch, or, in the opposite extreme, three or four; the strokes being either of the same thickness, or heavy where they ought to have been light, and unconnected with each other! And when I say that I have often met with instances of these faults, I mean that I have met with them leaf after leaf throughout the entire copybook, without any appearance of correction. In such cases, the children, instead of learning to write, were merely confirming, at the sacrifice of much time and trouble, bad habits.

**Verbal corrections will not do.** Some teachers, instead of recording the errors at the top of the page, merely point them out verbally to the child; but this is not a good plan. In such cases, the *child* may forget the instructions, especially if he happen to be absent on the next day; and the *master* is almost certain to do so. There is, therefore, no guide to assist the one in avoiding the faults previously committed, or to assist the other in seeing that he has done so. In fact, in such cases a new revision and new instructions would be called for. The only plan is to *write* the errors, and then no mistake can possibly follow.

**Mr. Moseley's plan.** Mr. Moseley sketches out an interesting plan of teaching writing, by which that which I have just described might be judiciously varied. He recommends that each succeeding line, instead of being the same, should be a variation of the first, and an extension of it. Thus, 'God is good;' then, 'God is good to all;' then, 'God is good to all men,' &c. The result, he says, is 'remarkable.' He found infants writing this exercise well who had not been learning to write *more than a fortnight*; and he gives, in his report, the following remarks upon its superiority, from the pen of the Rev. G. Lucas, Incumbent of Stone. This gentleman says: 'I took eight children from the infant school, on the 29th of November last, of the ages of from four and a half to five

*years.* They only just knew the alphabet. All can now (February 18) write, and two of them can write *very well.*'

**Pupils should know why they got any line again.** But, in order to secure the due co-operation of the children, care should be taken to see that they fully understand the nature of the errors, and the exact reason they got the same line again. To assist them in this, the master should not only draw their attention personally to the faults of imitation, exemplified by comparing their own lines with the model, but he should also supply them with certain general rules, by which they may be guided as to the slope, height, distance, &c., of letters. In good writing, the heights of the letters, the distance of their parts from each other, and the extent of separation of each pair of letters, will all be found to bear certain proportions to each other. Mr. Vere Foster's Charts, now sold by the Commissioners at reduced rates, will be found of great service both to the teacher and pupils on this point. A true proportion existing between the letters not only makes the writing look well, but makes it legible.

In examining the children on the forms of the letters, two specimens—the one of good writing, and the other of bad—may be written on the *black board*, and compared with each other. The pupils should be made to point out the faults, and account for them. It is also a very good plan to make the child his own critic, by calling upon him occasionally to point out for himself the faults of imitation he may have committed in any copy; or you may select for him any line, and ask him to say in what way it deviates from the model. This induces him to scrutinise every word and every letter, and must, in the end, produce such habits as will be certain to secure success.

He must also be brought to regard a frequent repetition of the same line as a species of disgrace, for, unless he do, he may get the same line over and over again without attending to it, and of course without advantage.

**Supervision required for all these, but not of the kind usually recommended.** All this requires active supervision, and it is important to inquire *how* this supervision is to be secured, and *at what time* it is to be performed. On these points I hold opinions somewhat different from most writers on education. It is generally held that writing should take place only under the constant and immediate supervision of the teacher, but my impression is that this is unnecessary to the extent insisted on.

Supervision appears necessary, to test (1) whether the children hold the pens correctly, (2) whether they sit properly and have the paper in its proper place on the desk, and (3) whether they pay due attention to the imitation of the model.

**Going through desks does not secure the first two.** It is evident that the practice of going through the desks during the writing exercise, which is the course commonly advocated, is not only not the most correct way to secure the first two objects, but, in reality, it is about the very worst, for, when a master is passing through one desk, his back is to the others, and therefore he renders himself unable to superintend a large number of his class. It is the *eye* that detects such irregularities, and going through the desks necessarily limits its range and influence materially. This fault is exactly like that which is committed, and which all admit to be a fault, when a master, in teaching a class on the floor, moves about from boy to boy, instead of standing in the centre, so as to command a view of all.

**Defects of present system of supervision in securing good imitation of the model.** Those who require, therefore, constant and immediate supervision must think it necessary chiefly to secure the imitation of the model; and this, I believe, is generally what they say. They consider that children will pay more attention to this essential element of success, when writing under the eye and with the assistance of the teacher, than when left to themselves; but they forget that such supervision secures the attention of but one child at a time. The boy with whom the master is engaged will be attentive, but all the others may or may not, just as they please. To carry out such a system effectually would in strictness require a teacher or a monitor for every boy.

**Other defects of it.** It also renders an economical arrangement of the school-time impossible, by withdrawing the teacher from those lessons which the children cannot possibly practise by themselves, and forcing him to attend to what, if left to itself, would go on quietly, industriously, and successfully. And when the few hours which make up the school-day have to be divided among the numerous subjects which form the ordinary course of instruction in a primary school, it is always of paramount importance to make as many lessons self-teaching as possible, and to reject whatever may prevent this.

But even supposing that this system could be fully carried out, and that it did not waste the master's time, I still question whether it would be judicious to adopt it, as it does not afford to the teacher a fair enough test of what each child can really do. What is done under constant supervision is no test of what can be done if unaided. It may, indeed, be done well; but no one ought to accept the result as a sample of ordinary proficiency.

Besides, the tendency of such supervision is to secure imitation at the expense of the other points of a good exercise.



**One alleged advantage.** It may be said, indeed, that by this system many faults are immediately removed, which would otherwise be continued throughout the copy; but I question whether or not it is of advantage to remove them until the end, and whether the time withdrawn from other subjects for this purpose would be at all so well spent as if not so withdrawn. A child so superintended has not a fair opportunity of exhibiting the faults he is most likely to commit, and, therefore, a teacher may be consuming time in the removal of errors which might have been only accidental, and therefore unimportant. But when the child is allowed to finish the copy before examination, the true source of each error will be discovered, and, even if some are found to continue from the beginning of the page to its close, the very frequency of this occurrence will afford to the teacher the best means for pointing out its nature, and to the scholar the strongest inducement to avoid it for the future.

**Constant supervision is, in fact, a necessity in the present wrong systems.** The fact is, that constant supervision arises from neglect of the true method of securing imitation, and is part and parcel of all systems which do not give *the same line day by day until all faults are removed*. When different head-lines follow each other, it becomes a serious matter to allow an error to run through a whole leaf, for there are no means by which the evil effects of this recurrence can be remedied, if once created. Those who adopt such a course are, therefore, forced to check errors as they appear. But in the system now advocated, prompt checking is not only not necessary, but may even be a disadvantage; a considerable saving of time is, therefore, effected, and if it did nothing but this it would be worthy of adoption.

**The amount of supervision really required; and how to secure it.** Acting upon these views, I have always directed the teacher (1) to form a class on the floor near the desks in which the writing exercise is going on; and, *in the case of the senior classes*, to limit his interference to the detection of any who sit badly, hold the pen improperly, write quickly, disarrange the copybooks, &c. For all this he can do by a mere glance of the eye, and an occasional correction of the worst boys, without neglecting the immediate business of the draft before him. *In the case of the junior classes*, he should, at the commencement of the exercise, not only tell the children what to do, but he should actually help them to do it. Their youth and inexperience require such a course. A quarter of an hour may thus be spent, but after that they should, like the others, be left to themselves, to show what skill they have acquired, and what kind of defect each will commit. A monitor may judiciously be called upon to assist the teacher in showing the children

what to do, and he may be afterwards left with the class to help the most inexperienced.

(2) At some convenient time *after the copies have been finished*, the teacher is to examine each, pointing out not only the errors of imitation, on the system already explained, but all defects of spelling, of neatness, &c. He should do this fully and carefully. Up till now he was as much a disciplinarian as a teacher, but at this point he assumes his own peculiar province—of improving—and upon the way in which he discharges this duty his future success will depend. If he is careful and attentive, his pupils will become careful and attentive too.

(3) He will explain all notings fully to the children when necessary, chiefly to the youngest, either just previous to next day's exercise, or when most suitable. In some cases I have recommended the teacher to call the children up for this purpose individually when engaged at 'arithmetic from books' in the desks. They can leave the *sum*, and return to it in a few minutes again without much loss or inconvenience. By some such means a whole class is not kept waiting, while the errors peculiar to one boy are explained to him. These details can, however, be easily arranged by each master for himself.

These are all that are necessary in the way of supervision. *They are all that are actually practised in the schools under my inspection*, and the writing in many of the schools is very good. I therefore recommend nothing *which I have not already known to succeed*.

**Rule 8. The model should be written at the top of the page by the master himself.** This rule opens up the question as to the propriety of using engraved lines for the purpose of teaching writing. Many eminent educationists are in favour of them, while quite as many are against them, and both appeal to results to establish the truth of their statements. It is strange that those who take such widely opposite views can equally appeal to results; but this is especially the case in controversies about the teaching of writing, and seems to me to proceed from the fact—which cannot be too strongly impressed upon the teachers—that almost any system will produce good penmanship if carried out zealously and efficiently, while on the other hand even the best systems will be practically worthless if joined with unfaithfulness and negligence. The master is superior to the system, and will have good writing, even in spite of methods, *if only he be determined to have it.*<sup>1</sup> This is no reason, however, why the system

<sup>1</sup> 'There will be good writing whenever the master determines to have it, even when he writes a bad hand himself.'—Mr. FLETCHER's *Report. Min. of Council, 1846-7*, vol. ii. p. 92.

should not be correct in principle ; for the same zeal and energy, when devoted to a good system, will be infinitely more successful than when devoted to a bad one.

**Arguments for and against engraved models.** To enable the teacher to form an opinion on the question of engraved lines, I shall state briefly their merits and defects. There are two kinds of them—the *copyslip*, which is movable, and the *engraved line at the top of each page*. The best argument brought forward in favour of the first kind is, that the child can move the copyslip towards him as he writes, and thus avoid the danger of taking as models the lines he himself has made. It must be admitted that every line a child writes makes the imitation of a fixed model more difficult, not only from removing it farther away, but from the insertion of other lines, which are, in turn, very likely to be referred to as models also. Making the model movable, however, is not the proper course to cure this. It is not a case which a mechanical expedient will reach. The fault is simply one of neglect and inattention, and the true remedy is to be had in stricter supervision, and more careful and earnest enforcement of the rules for imitation already laid down. When the habit of imitation has once been formed, it is quite immaterial whether the model is six inches away or only one ; and where it is not formed, the model will be utterly worthless, no matter where placed.

Those who advocate the use of these slips seem to forget that the very ease with which they can be moved down, line after line, suggests their entire removal from the book, and that, in practice, for one who moves them as they are expected to be moved, hundreds move them off altogether after the first line, and never consult them more. The truth of this may be easily established from an inspection of a writing class at actual work, or even, from looking over the slips themselves ; for these will be found, in general, so disfigured with ink and dust, so torn and scribbled, that it is a matter of great difficulty to make out what is on them, and of sheer impossibility to use them as models.

‘Good writing is acquired even in spite of the methods used.’—Mr. KENNEDY’s *Report*. Min. of Council, 1849–50, p. 180.

Mr. Currie, in his valuable work on ‘Common School Education,’ says, ‘Almost every method for any subject which has ever been propounded makes this claim, doubtless with sincerity, and with a certain amount of truth. To admit this is only to admit, in other words, that the teacher is of more importance

than his method. A cheerful, earnest, and judicious management of his pupils will secure success for him, whether his method be true or false ; since it is moral considerations which determine their progress, rather than the intellectual propriety of the course they are following. The teachers who have brought writing methods into notice have believed in them, and have laboured with devotion in the use of them.’

To remedy the defects of the movable slips, copybooks have been provided which have engraved lines at the top of each page. The only advantages, however, which these possess over the others are, that the child is unable to throw the models aside, and that he is not likely to disfigure or injure them. The last is of course an improvement; but, as I said above, the mere position of the model is of questionable importance.

These lines are liable to the objection of offering no check to the tendency (already alluded to) to copy their own writing, instead of what is supplied for their imitation.

The arguments in favour of both kinds, as opposed to written lines, are: (1) that the model is always certain to be good; (2) that there is no consumption of teacher's time and energies in setting copies. But with regard to the first, I think that a teacher who is unable to set a good line for the children, is, like a bad reader, or a bad arithmetician, unfitted for his office. It has too long been the fashion to overlook proficiency in writing when testing the merits of a teacher, but it would be absurd to regard as valid an argument in favour of the present system drawn from this neglect. And, with regard to the second, it is the very facility with which teachers can devote their time and energies to other subjects, to the neglect of the writing, which has chiefly caused the bad results which admittedly prevail. Had the teachers been *forced* to inspect the copies, to set the lines, and adapt them to the peculiarities of each child, there would have been to-day more good writers than there are.

Without time and trouble no good results can ever be expected; but in this case the consumption of time and the amount of trouble are not quite so formidable as they appear. It takes exactly thirty seconds to write a head-line carefully and neatly; sixty of them can therefore be written in half-an-hour, a number higher than in the writing classes of the majority of schools; and surely this time is not too long to devote to so important a subject as writing, if it be proved that success depends on such a course.

The greatest objection that can be brought against an engraved line, whether movable or immovable, is, that it does not allow of the proper steps being taken for securing the habit of imitation, the chief of these consisting in a repetition of the same line until detected errors are removed. I am aware that with movable slips this repetition might be effected, but only with an amount of attention which it is quite hopeless to expect, and a consumption of time which could be ill spared from the other pressing engagements of the day. In actual practice no attempt is made to secure a gradual increase of difficulty, or a regular repetition, as the case may require. A boy receives on one day a difficult piece, and on

the next an easy one, the rule being to write from what is first given out. Of course, when the lines are permanently engraved in the copybooks, a repetition of the same line, no matter how urgently such may be desired, is quite impossible; yet such a repetition is so essentially an element of success, that the impossibility of attaining it is the strongest possible condemnation of any system that can be advanced.

Another important element of success is the adaptation of the head-line to the peculiarities of each child. If, for instance, I find that a child writes too large, true teaching requires of me to make the next head-line a little smaller than is customary, so that, in keeping the relative proportion, he may hit the exact size; if, on the other hand, he write too small, the line ought to be made a little larger than is usual; if he write too close, the letters of the head-line ought to be separated in excess of what is correct, and so on with other defects. In fact, not only should the same head-line be continued next day, but it should be precisely suited to the wants of each, and calculated to remove them.

**Superiority of written lines.** Written lines can be varied in any way the master pleases, and are therefore infinitely superior to engraved lines, which admit of no variation.

Written lines are also better, because the engraved ones, by presenting too high a standard, dishearten young children, and make them despair of attaining a proficiency which is apparently so far beyond their reach; and also because the teachers are led, from the fact of writing the lines, not only to take a greater interest in what is thus brought so frequently under their notice, but, from noting each child's progress, they are necessarily driven to adopt proper remedies for the removal of errors.

They are also superior to the others, because they permit the master to give more time to the more intellectual portions of the school course without any sacrifice of efficiency in the writing exercise, by not requiring from him, as has been already shown, a constant and direct supervision of each paper during the period the child is engaged at it.

Girls' writing is generally much better than boys', and this I account for chiefly from no engraved lines being used in our female schools. The mistress must write the lines, and the children must imitate them, and this they have done to a wonderful extent.

Where engraved lines are used, it will be found that the boys write different hands, showing clearly that they have learnt to write by *practice* merely, and not by *imitation*; but where written lines are used, one style—that of the master—runs through the entire school.

**System of written lines found to be practical and suc-**

**cessful.** No engraved lines have been used for several years in the schools inspected by me. I have, therefore, had a larger experience of the system of written head-lines than most others. The results have clearly proved to me that this system of teaching writing is practicable, that it does not interfere with other subjects, and that it is the most successful.

**Opinions in support of written lines.** Dr. Patten's<sup>1</sup> experience leads him to the same conclusion. He says: 'I am inclined to think that the pupils will make greater progress in imitating a copy set by the teacher, than in writing from any of the engraved specimens commonly met with: *in all schools I have recently visited, I have found this to be the case with scarcely an exception.*' Mr. Fletcher<sup>2</sup> says: 'One essential condition of obtaining good writing is to have the copies carefully set by the hand of the master. This makes a boy feel at once that what one hand has done, another may do.' Mr. Fraser<sup>3</sup> says of the teacher already alluded to (whose school was so popular owing to the writing), that 'he set the copies himself over-night.' And this is true not only of him, but of all the successful 'venture' or 'hedge' teachers of the present day, and of the entire race of those old men who were formerly so celebrated for their skill in securing good penmanship.

**That large schools cannot adopt this system, is no argument against it.** It is no argument against written lines to say that many schools are too large to adopt this system; for it is equally impossible in them to examine the copybooks carefully and strictly, and no person will say that such is not indispensable. All monster schools are, in fact, exceptional imperfections. They are forced to adopt what is *practicable*, in preference frequently to what is *best*; and this not in writing only, but in most other subjects.

**But one teacher will set the lines.** But one teacher should set the head-lines. When two or more write them, the pupils are called upon to imitate one style on one day, and a different one on the next; or one style in one class, and another when they leave it. The principal teacher should take this duty on himself, as he is likely to remain longest in the school. There can be no objection to the assistant's marking and examining the copybooks when qualified to do so; or, as a proper division of labour, he may take charge of the dictation exercise while the master takes charge of the writing.

**To be set before or after school.** The lines should always

<sup>1</sup> Late Head Inspector of Irish in England.  
National Schools.

<sup>2</sup> One of Her Majesty's Inspectors <sup>3</sup> Assistant Commissioner of Education.

be set before or after school hours. No teacher ought to complain of this extra work as being too fatiguing after the labours of the day, because the constant occupation of five hours, during which the children attend, cannot possibly exhaust the energies of any healthy and earnest man. There is scarcely any office in which the working hours are not more numerous. Besides, the amount of time required for this duty is not very great. In Ireland, the Commissioners oblige each teacher to be in attendance half-an-hour at least before the children assemble. This affords a good opportunity for setting the lines. Any other time will, however, answer quite as well; the great thing to be aimed at being the completion of the task before the business of the school-day begins.

**Two or more lines may be written on one leaf to check tendency of boys to copy their own.** It was said that one of the evils of a *top line* is the tendency to copy the lines which follow it instead of itself. The true remedy is, of course, in greater attention to the rules of imitation; but the temptation may be considerably lessened by having the copybooks narrow, and by setting two or three model lines at intervals down the leaf. One, for instance, might be on the fourth line, and another on the seventh. This will only be necessary, however, in extreme cases, or with the junior classes.

**Minimum proficiency for each class.** The head-lines should increase in difficulty with the class in which the children are. In writing, as in other subjects, there should be a gradual progress from the lowest to the highest proficiency. The following is the standard which I think should guide the teacher, and which should be considered as the *minimum* for each class:—

The best draft of first class should write the elements of letters (the other drafts practising on slates—see Rule 1).

The lowest draft of second class—letters and easy words.

The highest draft of second class—easy sentences fairly.

The next class (third book)—ditto *well*; while the next should write—a good hand with ease and freedom.<sup>1</sup>

The elements of letters are strokes, loops, and curves. The single letters should be given in groups, arranged in the order of their difficulty; as, for instance, *n* and *m* in one group; *i*, *w*, *u*, *v*, *r*, in the next; *a*, *c*, *e*, *o*, *s*, *x*, in the next; and in the last the long letters might be included, such as *b*, *d*, *g*, *y*, *q*, *j*, *z*, *h*, *l*, *t*, *f*, *k*. It is by no means right, however, to make the children perfect in the formation of all the letters before allowing them

<sup>1</sup> Of course this is but a *general* guide, and many exceptional cases will necessarily occur, with which

each master may deal as he thinks most correct.

to attempt words. It is better to make them combine the letters of one group during the time that they are learning to form those of the next. Thus, so soon as a child can form *n* and *m* pretty fairly, he should be required to form the compound *nm*. When he has acquired skill enough to form the letters of group 2, they can be joined with each other and with those of the first, into words like *man*, *win*, *run*, &c., and so on with the others.

**Examples of bad head-lines.** In all cases such absurd words as the following ought to be avoided; they are taken from Mr. Brodie's Report, Min. of Council, 1860-1, p. 188: *sumiologist*, *xenodochium*, *opinionist*, *ichneumon*, *temperament*, &c. The copylines should generally consist of small words, and they should always be within the comprehension of the child. Moral truisms and pedantic truths might also be avoided with advantage.

**Rule 9. Begin early, and pay great attention to the junior classes.** At present, the general custom is to teach nothing during the earlier portions of the child's school-life but reading. The young beginner is confined for many months exclusively to the alphabet and easy monosyllables, though by judicious management he might acquire in the same time, concurrently with the reading, and with no additional trouble, but even with pleasure, the ability to write pretty fairly, and, as will be shown in the next chapter, to count intelligently and correctly. So much of his time is, therefore, sadly wasted.

**Young children learn to write with ease and pleasure.** Very young children are not only capable of learning to write, but they learn with great ease and pleasure. They look upon it as a pastime, and as an agreeable change from learning the letters, rather than as a task. And this because of its adaptation to the faculty of imitation, which is at that age in a state of great activity. The children upon whom the Rev. G. Lucas tried the system sketched out by Mr. Moseley (see page 93), were only *four and a half to five years old*, and yet all could write in less than three months, and two of them could write very well. There is no reason why other children should not do so likewise, if the same advantages were extended to them.

**In some countries writing precedes reading; and with good results.** In fact, in Switzerland and in some parts of Germany, children are taught to write before they learn to read. This course is adopted from the importance which the educators in these countries attach to the strength of the faculty of imitation in very young children, and to the great assistance which may be derived from this faculty in the earliest stages of instruction. The results obtained in these schools justify them in this. The children are, by the writing lessons, led to distinguish the peculiar



forms of the written and of the printed characters with much greater ease and success, and they are able to apply the important agency of writing in all the subsequent processes of instruction.

Writing can be made thoroughly good only after a long and progressive series of carefully-conducted exercises, and boldness and ease will be impossible unless children begin to write at a very early age.

**Writing and reading should go together.** When a child begins to learn the letters, let him begin to form them. Let him be taught to read by writing, and, conversely, to write by reading, so that every advance he may make in one subject will contribute to his advance in the other.<sup>1</sup>

**Great care required for junior classes.** Great care is necessary, however, in the superintendence of these early efforts. Too much care, in fact, cannot be given to the class of beginners. When pupils are allowed to pick up and practise defects, they acquire habits which can scarcely ever be removed afterwards; and even if removed, the time and labour which their removal requires are far greater than would have been sufficient at first to prevent their formation. Yet these classes are very much neglected, for, as Mr. Sheridan says,<sup>2</sup> the usual practice is 'to write a word or two on a black board, or on the top of the slates, and then send the children to the desks to copy what is thus placed before them as best they may, while the teachers themselves are employed in attending to other duties. Thus,' he adds, 'their rude efforts being seldom guided by the teachers, the exercise, so far from being beneficial, is positively injurious.' Mr. Blandford<sup>3</sup> agrees with this statement, and adds, that 'proper attention is not paid to the way the pencil is held when the children are in the lower classes.' Mr. Fussell remarks,<sup>4</sup> that 'much, if not most of the fault which is justly to be found with the penmanship of the children in our schools, is chargeable to the very slight attention which the writing receives while they are young. They are employed with bad slates, and the shortest morsels of pencil, to keep them quiet, and out of mischief, rather than from any other motive, and their work is scanned with more regard to its quantity than its quality.'

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Gill, in his work on 'School Management,' p. 131, says, 'When to begin teaching to write, has been a much controverted question; but most teachers seem now to acquiesce in an early commencement. In the Minutes of 1840, it is recommended to begin early, because the faculty of imitation is strong in young children, and in this way may be turned to

account. Another reason for commencing early may be had in the fact, that then the muscles are more pliable, and the power of managing them more easily acquired.'

<sup>2</sup> Report of the Commissioners of National Education, Ireland.

<sup>3</sup> Min. of Council, 1856-7, p. 372.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. 1860-1, p. 19.

**Junior classes to use pencilled copybooks.** In addition to what I have already suggested in the way of supervision and imitation of head-line, I may remark, that it is sometimes a good plan to pencil the copybooks for the worst, so that they may be required merely to trace the lines. They have then to attend chiefly to the way in which the pen ought to be held, while, at the same time, they will be acquiring the ability to slope and form the letters properly. By attention to one thing at a time, the difficulties will be more easily overcome. These pencil marks should be gradually dropped. After some time, for instance, a leaf may be written in pencil on all the lines except the last; the next leaf may have two blank lines, the next three, and so on, until no line is pencilled. There is certainly a good deal of trouble in this, but it may be shared by the master with the most advanced boys, and with monitors; or copybooks may be used which, like those published by Mr. Foster, London, have the letters and guiding lines printed in lead-coloured ink. The expense is not much, while the saving of time is great.

**Locke advocates this plan.** Locke, the eminent philosopher, advocates this system for teaching writing. His words are: 'The way to teach a boy to write without much trouble, is to get a plate graved with the characters of such a hand as you like best. But you must remember to have them a pretty deal bigger than he should ordinarily write; for every one naturally comes by degrees to write a less hand than he at first was taught, but never a bigger. Such a plate being graved, let several sheets be printed off with red ink, which he has nothing to do but go over with a good pen filled with black ink, which will quickly bring his hand to the formation of those characters, *being at first shown where to begin, and how to form every letter.*'

**To be used only with beginners and a few others.** This is only to be adopted with beginners, and with the most hopeless of the others. My impression is, that the first copybooks should contain *horizontal parallel lines*, of the exact height of the letters (between which the pupils must write, and both of which the letters must touch), and *slanting lines* to guide him in the slope. The next copies should not contain the *slanting lines*; the next should lose the upper one of the *horizontal parallels*, and the final ones should be perfectly plain, like a sheet of note-paper. But few children can write a letter straight, owing to the sole use of ruled paper in schools.

**Rule 10. Do not begin with 'large hand.'** Large hand, so far as the ordinary purposes of writing are concerned, is worthless. Those who teach it, do so from thinking that its early and extensive practice secures a freedom and boldness of hand not

otherwise attainable. Or else they practise it—and this is the true reason that influences most of them—because it is the custom to do so. In my experience, however, I have found the best writing—the boldest and freest—in schools where this kind of hand was not practised at all. The late Mr. McCreedy's experience was the same. He says of one school in particular, where 'large hand' is the last instead of the first exercise in penmanship, that the writing, which is the result of this system, 'is extremely beautiful in style, and characterised by much ease and freedom.'

**Not practised in the schools under my inspection.** In the schools under my inspection no large hand is practised, and the result is that the writing has not only improved, but that classes now can write small hand, and practically apply it to the acquisition of general knowledge, that were merely struggling with the difficulties of the large text before.

Those who write 'large hand' only, can employ penmanship for no good purpose whatever. It is, therefore, no small argument in favour of a system to prove, by an appeal to actual results, that it is capable of making the progress in writing practically valuable at a very early period.

**Mr. Moseley.** Mr. Moseley, in his Report for 1845, also notices this matter. He says, 'In the hope of making children fine writers, for the accomplishment of which a practice of large hand is *assumed* to be necessary, they are deprived for a considerable time of the practice of the art of writing under that form in which alone it will ever be of any use to them.'

**Mr. McCreedy.** The late Mr. McCreedy says that, 'in not a few of the best works on education, especially among the French, the practice of commencing with "large hand," or of teaching it at all, is disapproved of for *consuming the time of the pupils to little purpose.*' An argument which gains considerable force when we consider how very short a time even the most favourably circumstanced of our children are able to remain in school.

**Large hand unfitted to the fingers of little children.** Large hand appears, when viewed by common sense principles, to be ill-adapted to the small fingers of young children, and to require more firmness of stroke than can be naturally expected from them.

**Pupils should imitate from the first what they intend to practise.** My impression is, that children should, *as a general rule*, begin to imitate letters of the size, slope, &c., that they intend afterwards to make use of; and that by constantly following such a course they will attain the highest degree of excellence in the shortest time; the true principle of success consisting, as I take it, in the excellence of the model and the faithfulness with

which it is copied. But, however, as the tendency is, especially in young children, to write smaller than what they ought, and also a little closer, the models may judiciously be varied to meet these cases. That is, for the junior classes the head-lines may approach what is called 'half text,' and the letters may be written rather loose than close.

**Character of the style to be aimed at.** In the middle division of the school, the small hand should also be bold and free, and rather above the ordinary size, but in the next classes it should approach in character to a good commercial hand—not too round nor too angular, but a mean between both, something like the old Italian hand. Sharp angular writing is bad, except when specially adopted, as already suggested, to cure faults, or correct the natural tendency of young children to stiffness of execution, and should be dispensed with even in girls' schools, in which it is now so common.

**Round hand generally recommended.** What is called 'round hand' is most generally recommended,<sup>1</sup> though I find that a perfectly round hand is very difficult of acquisition by mere learners. They acquire such a hand as I have described with much more ease.

**Three essential elements of all good writing.** Whatever style of hand is approved of, the writing should be free from flourishes, yet not disfigured by stiffness: it should be plain and regular, but not precise; and, above all other qualities, it should possess the three great desiderata of being *legible, easy of acquisition, and capable of being rapidly used.*

**Rapidity essential.** The power to write readily or rapidly is a most important element in teaching this branch successfully, but there appear to be no special means adopted in ordinary schools to secure it. It is by all means essentially necessary to acquire what is called a *good schoolboy's hand*, as this is the sole foundation of a *good current practical hand*, but it is wrong to stop, as most do, when that point has been reached. Quickness of penmanship is required in nearly all kinds of business, and unless this quickness is attained in school, the education there can scarcely be said to be complete.

**How to secure it.—1. Writing words together.** For this

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Wilkinson says (Min. of Council, 1854-5, p. 728): 'I still adhere to the opinion, that a fair, round, symmetrical hand is the best adapted for the schools of the poor; and pains in teaching that well would be better bestowed than in forming the fashionable angular

writing now taught to girls at some of the schools.'

Mr. Currie, in his work on 'Common School Education' strongly advocates 'round hand,' as being the most legible, the most easily acquired, and the most readily practised.—See p. 375, &c.

purpose the pupils may be practised in writing words, and even sentences, together, without lifting the pen, the speed being determined by the proficiency of each child. The writing may be pretty slow at first (quicker, however, than in the ordinary imitation of a model), and may then be made gradually more rapid up to whatever point is considered requisite.

**2. Extract from books.** They should also make copious extracts from books. I have, in the preceding pages, recommended this exercise for teaching spelling. It will serve, however, the double purpose of teaching spelling and giving freedom of writing; but it should be carried out differently according to whichever of the objects is the chief one aimed at. If it is correctness of spelling, the copying should be done slowly and deliberately, and may be done by all classes able to write; but if it is quickness that is aimed at, it should be done within a certain limited time—longer or shorter, according to the ability of those who do it; and it should be attempted only by those whose style of writing is to some extent already formed. For if a pupil be allowed to remain at the exercise as long as he wishes, no quickness will result, and if he be made to write quickly before he has acquired a certain amount of skill, he will decidedly become a scribbler.

**Should be gradually adopted.** The best writers should commence by copying from a book on *one* day only of the week (writing from a model on the others). As they progress they may do so on *two* days, then on *three* days, then on *four* days, and so on, until they cease altogether to write from a model.

**Gradually drop the writing altogether.** When they have practised for some weeks to write slowly from print, they should gradually cease the ordinary writing exercise altogether; for I think, when they have arrived at this point of excellence, their time will be much more profitably spent in acquiring a knowledge of something else. This can be done with most advantage in those schools in which *composition*, *dictation*, &c., are carefully and correctly taught, and where reading and writing, as they ought, are made to mutually assist each other.

**Ornamental penmanship and large hand.** When the pupils have learned small hand well, they should be introduced to *ornamental penmanship*, if they have time, and if the teacher is capable of giving lessons upon it; and, in connection with this, they should learn 'large hand.' I thus recommend that 'large hand' should close, instead of begin, the lessons on penmanship, and I am convinced that it is in that position only that learning it will prove of real benefit to the child.

**Rule 11. Do not let the children write much at one time.** If they are allowed to do so, they may undo by carelessness at

the end what pains and neatness secured for them at the commencement. One leaf of a small copybook is sufficient, and the writing of this will occupy, as said before, about twenty minutes. In many schools children are allowed to write for hours. This is a remnant of the old 'hedge' or 'venture' schools, in which the pupils either wrote or counted all day. Some parents, who imagine that writing much produces good writing (instead of weariness and scribbling), require this, and many teachers, even though convinced of the contrary, admit the practice in order to please them. But I look upon this conduct as an undue concession to prejudice. Every reasonable request of a parent should be willingly and obligingly granted, but when he oversteps his own special province, and dictates to masters, managers, and inspectors the way in which certain duties ought to be done, he should be firmly but mildly repulsed. Such interference, if tolerated, would be prejudicial to all, and to his own children more than any.

**Rule 12. Write by divisions.** It is found to be very disadvantageous to permit all to write at the same time. One portion of the school should always be on the floor, and the other in the desks, so that the teaching power may be sufficiently economised. Suppose there are five classes in a school; the two highest may write together, and the two lowest, leaving the middle division to write by itself. Or the very lowest class, the mere beginners, may write alone, as requiring more assistance and many special attentions, while the other four classes are divided into two. Each teacher, however, must group his classes as seems best for himself, being guided in this matter by the circumstances peculiar to his own school.

#### APPLICATION OF WRITING.

It but now remains for me to add a few words in conclusion upon the practical uses of writing in the school course, and chiefly with regard to writing from memory, as the other applications of it, dictation and composition, are treated of in different places.

**Objects of writing from memory.** When writing from memory is practised, the purpose is to fix the words more permanently in the mind, and to show in what way the task has been got off. If we commit a piece of prose or verse to memory, we shall be less likely to forget it if we also write it down; and if we commit it from the oral repetition of another, we will be much more likely to be correct if we write it and submit it to him for perusal.

Children are very prone to repeat mere sounds, and to pass them off for words, and this they can do with such skill, that nothing but a written test is sufficient to detect the counterfeit.

**Mr. Middleton's examples of its value.** Mr. Middleton says on this point:<sup>1</sup> 'In many of the numerous schools where I have tried it for the first time I have got an infinity of errors. The following will serve as examples: "Thy will be done on earth as *teus* in heaven;" "Lead us not in *tutim tation*"=into temptation; "*and past* your gun"=in pastures green; "Nor sitteth in *his corner chair*"=the scorner's chair; "but placeth his *daylight*"=delight; "Nor let my *hoop* be lost"=hope; "for *though* art with me *on the road*, and *staft my comfort still*"=thou, and, thy, rod, staff, me; "God is a spirit *finit, internal*"=infinite, eternal, &c.'

This betrays not only bad spelling, but great ignorance, and nothing but such an exercise can thoroughly test the extent of the errors. It is one, therefore, that all teachers should employ whenever occasion permits.

**Mr. Kennedy.** Mr. Kennedy says,<sup>2</sup> 'I recommend that the exercise called dictation should more commonly be written from *memory* than be taken down from the master's reading. It would be a good thing for children to learn at night some passage to be used thus in the next day's dictation exercise.'

In fact, when the object of the exercise is known, every intelligent teacher will be able to suggest means to vary it for himself.

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1861-2, p. 222.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 1849-50, p. 179.

## CHAPTER V.

## ARITHMETIC.

**Two kinds of counting.** Counting is the first step in arithmetic. It may be divided into two kinds, *correct* and *intelligent*. To count correctly is to say *one, two, three, four, &c.*, and requires simply an acquaintance with the names of the figures and with the order in which they should be repeated; to count intelligently requires in addition a true appreciation of the numerical difference of each group.

**'Correct' counting is not an arithmetical operation.** It is a mere verbal exercise; nothing of number enters into it but the names. A child may repeat the names of the figures from one to a thousand, and yet perceive as little reference to different groups of objects as he perceives, and as actually exists, when he repeats the letters of the alphabet. Correct counting is, however, an introduction to intelligent counting, and is, so far, indispensable; but it should not be forgotten that in itself it is of very little arithmetical value—that, in fact, it is but a means to secure a desired end. I am particular in mentioning this, as it is the only proficiency in *counting* required by the majority of teachers from the children of their junior classes.

**Intelligent counting.** A child should be taught not only to count 'correctly,' but to know that each name which he repeats represents a number of *ones*, or *units*, and that each group differs from the next to it by *one*, and *only one*—that *nine*, for instance, is *one* more than *eight*, and *one* less than *ten*, and *only one*. This is taught by means of the *ball-frame*. One ball is brought over on the first line, two on the next, three on the next, &c., and as they are brought over the master and children repeat together the number of balls. This frame should form a portion of the apparatus in every school. When it has not been procured, books, marbles, pens, or any similar objects easily grouped will answer the purpose; even the pupils themselves, in default of all else, may be arranged into the groups represented by the different names, and be thus used in place of a ball-frame.

Instead of saying *one, two, three, &c.*, they might judiciously be



made at first to say one *ball*, two *balls*, three *balls*, &c. They will thus soon come to see that the names are the names of groups which differ from each other by a certain quantity.

**Tests of proficiency in counting intelligently.** When pupils can repeat the names of the figures, and, in addition, answer such questions as the following, they may be said to count intelligently:—

If I have 6 marbles, and get 1, how many shall I have?  
 „ „ 5 „ lose 1, „ „ „ ?  
 „ „ 7 „ get 1, „ „ „ ? &c.

Each consisting of the addition or subtraction of *unity*. Those involving the addition or subtraction of two or more units are not proper questions, as the object in view is to determine whether the pupils know the precise difference between the groups which are in *immediate* connection with one another.

**Intelligent counting embraces two arithmetical laws.** Intelligent counting may be said also to embrace a knowledge of the two arithmetical laws deducible from the mere names of the figures. The first law is exemplified in the *teens*, or *tens*, in *thirteen*, *fourteen*, *fifteen*, &c.; and the second in the figures that end in *ty*, as *twenty*, *thirty*, *forty*, &c. The first names are corruptions of the compounds *three-ten*, *four-ten*, *five-ten*, &c., and these again are contractions of the expressions 'three *and* ten, four *and* ten, five *and* ten.' The second are corruptions of *two-tens*, *three-tens*, *four-tens*, &c., and these are contractions of the expressions 'two tens *added together*,' 'three tens *added together*,' 'four tens *added together*,' &c.; and both are instances of that peculiar species of addition in which one word registers the answer, and indicates the addends employed. When a child says *eighteen*, or *twenty*, for instance, he ought to learn from the mere word (1) that the group it represents is formed by the union of two others, and (2) that these others are indicated by the names eight and ten, or, in the case of the word *twenty*, by ten and ten (two tens).

**Test questions on these laws.** When properly taught these laws, the pupils should be able to answer questions like the following:—

Of what is seventeen formed?

„ „ sixteen    16  
 „ „ thirteen    13

How many are two tens?

„ „ two tens and three ?  
 „ „ four tens and nine ?  
 „ „ nine tens and six ? &c.

The laws admit of easy application in this way, and the skill and intelligence required are quite within the powers of young children. It is very easy to employ them in forming a system of mental addition, and, by a reference to the fact which they so frequently bring before the children—that *ten* enters into the composition of all numbers beyond itself—it is easy to explain to all children the *ten-group* or *decimal* character of our system.

#### NOTATION AND NUMERATION.

**Most important rules.** Pupils should now be enabled to *read* and *represent numerically by the recognised symbols* the numbers whose names they have learned to repeat. In other words, they should begin the study of *numeration* and *notation*. These are two of the most important rules in arithmetic. Unless they are fully understood, it is quite impossible that there can be any true or rational knowledge of the powers of the numbers made use of in any calculation; and it is found to be the case that intelligent and successful answering upon arithmetic is in exact accordance with an intelligent and a successful comprehension of these elementary rules. And yet I regret exceedingly to say that there are few schools in which they are taught carefully or skilfully. This statement is borne out by the combined testimony of all the inspectors in Great Britain and Ireland. If there is any point upon which there is a perfect agreement among these gentlemen, it is this.<sup>1</sup>

**That they are not known arises from the system of uniting.** The system generally practised for teaching these rules is the cause of the great ignorance which the pupils exhibit. It may be called the system of *uniting*, by which each figure gets a name, independent of, and longer than its predecessor. By it such a number as *fifty millions, sixty thousand, and five*, instead of being grouped in the child's mind as 50, 060, and 005, must be decomposed into the following:—

5 units  
0 tens  
0 hundreds  
0 units of thousands  
6 tens of thousands  
0 hundreds of thousands  
0 units of millions.  
5 tens of millions.

<sup>1</sup> See all the Reports of the Commissioners of National Education, Ireland, and the following in England: Min. of Council, 1845-6, vol. ii. p. 188; 1846-7, vol. i. p. 184, vol. ii. p. 98; 1847-8, vol. ii. p. 190;

1856-7, pp. 467 and 681; 1857-8, p. 585; 1859-60, pp. 80 and 193; 1860-1, pp. 170 and 188; 1861-2, pp. 114 and 180; and also Education Commissioners, 1861, vol. i. p. 259, vol. ii. p. 558.

How few children can see that all this is equivalent to the simple expression above! It cannot, therefore, be a matter of surprise that the junior classes are unable to make use of notation at all, and that the senior classes practise it with extreme slowness and difficulty.

**It is impracticable in a large school.** Teaching notation on this system is quite impracticable in a large school. Suppose, for instance, that thirty children are assembled for a half-hour's lesson, and that they are told to put down *four hundred billions, fifty millions, sixty thousand, and five*. Now, leaving out of the question the blunders they make and rectify before they are correct, let us suppose that the slates are ready for inspection. Before the master can decide upon the accuracy or inaccuracy in any one case, he must repeat the whole of the following :—

5 units  
 0 tens  
 0 hundreds  
 0 units of thousands  
 6 tens of thousands  
 0 hundreds of thousands  
 0 units of millions  
 5 tens of millions  
 0 hundreds of millions  
 0 units of billions  
 0 tens of billions  
 4 hundreds of billions.

And, to test the accuracy of the whole class, he must go over all this no less than thirty times. When, therefore, we consider the errors which, as a matter of course, he will meet with, and the instructions he will, as a consequence, be called upon to give, we can have no hesitation in saying that he will be unable to go over all within the half-hour. Notation and numeration are, therefore, omitted from the school teaching, for this omission is imperative by the system of instruction adopted.

**Unit-ing, though a bad system of numeration, is not at all a system of notation.** It must, however, be acknowledged that it is a system of *numeration*, though so bad as to be worthless, but it is not at all a system of *notation* in the true sense of the word; for, if a child taught thus is required to put down *fifty-six thousand, three hundred, and eight*, for instance, he is obliged, from having no primary guide, to make the best guess he can at it; and this may probably be :—

56,800,8.

He then begins to 'unit' or 'numerate' it, and says:—

8 units  
0 tens  
0 hundreds  
3 units of thousands.

Finding thus that the 3 is in the wrong place, he blots out a cipher, and begins again:—

8 units  
0 tens  
3 hundreds, &c., &c.

And so he continues blotting out the figures, and repeating the above rhyme, until the whole is right.

**Many at Practice fail in notation.** Is there any wonder, then, that there should be ignorant pupils and despairing teachers? I have met with frequent cases in which pupils who were able to do Practice were quite unable to subtract two numbers of seven or eight figures when dictated to them, and with other cases where, though right, they exhibited more doubtfulness and slowness than they would evince in the solution of a difficult question in the higher commercial rules.

**Teachers say that the failure is caused by nervousness, but this is not so.** Teachers cannot conceive the cause of these failures, and are too prone to attribute them to that nervousness and diffidence which most children feel when under examination, forgetting altogether that the same nervousness, were it really in existence, would produce bad answering with more certainty on the higher and more difficult rules.

**Real cause.** The real cause is to be found in the teachers' own neglect, consequent upon the laborious and impracticable systems adopted. Most of them would rather teach any rules than these, and some of them pretend to look upon them as entirely beneath their notice. The children, also, taking their cue from the masters, refuse very frequently even to learn what is thus so much despised. It is scarcely necessary to say, that if they were thoroughly known, they would indeed be beneath the notice of the teachers and advanced classes; but when not known, the more rudimentary they are the greater must be the shame attached to those who are ignorant of them. It will always be found, however, that those who despise these rules on account of their simplicity are merely seeking a cloak for inefficiency.

**The true system is simple.** The true system of teaching numeration and notation is very simple.

All numbers may be supposed to be divided for the purpose of these rules into the following heads:—

- (1) Those expressed by *one* digit.
- (2) " " " *two* digits
- (3) " " " *three* "
- (4) " " " *six* "
- (5) " " " *nine* " &c.

A new division being formed of every *three* succeeding digits, as twelve, fifteen, &c.

**Each should form but one lesson.** And each of these groups should form but one lesson. Thus, the first lesson will be up to *nine* inclusive; the second to *ninety-nine*; not to twenty, thirty, forty, &c., as most teachers limit it, but up to the termination of the two-digit group of figures. I do not mean by *one lesson*, one period of half-an-hour or an hour, &c., but simply that all in the two-digit group should be indiscriminately treated of, that is, that the child may be shown how to put down 36, and then he may be called upon to put down 94, or any other number of the same formation. The third lesson will embrace all figures from 99 to 1,000 exclusive, and so on with the others. Or, in other words, the first *period* of figures should be taught by *places*, whereas each of the others should be taught as a whole.

**Not necessary to describe the first three in this book, as they are now fairly taught.** It is not necessary to describe minutely in this work the steps by which numbers expressed by three figures—the numbers which constitute the first three lessons—should be taught, as in the majority of schools the pupils write such numbers down very fairly. It is in the numbers beyond these that they fail, and it is, therefore, to these that I shall now chiefly refer.

**The following hints may be required.** I beg to suggest, however, that the following exercises be added, in teaching the first three places, to those commonly met with.

(1) The pupils should know what a *place* is, and what a *period*; and they should be able to complete a period, or change the value of any number by using either ciphers or significant figures. For instance, if the figure 4 is given to them, they should make out of it the complete period 004, or out of 61 the period 061. Or if a figure, as 3, be given to them, they may be called upon to state how they would make it stand for *thirty*, or *three hundred*; or, if 400 be put down, how they would make it stand for forty, or for four. Again, they may be called on to affix ciphers to any figure without altering its value, or to remove any figure from the first to the second or third place, by ciphers or such significant

figures as they may select themselves, stating in each case what the total result is. (2) They should also be required to state *orally* what figures are used to represent any number. If, for instance, *three hundred and twenty-one* be selected, they should say at once 3, 2, and 1; if *four hundred and five*, they should say 4, 0, and 5, &c. And they should be able to reduce numbers to their component parts, as 526 to 500, 20, and 6, and re-form them by the processes of simple addition.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The following excellent remarks made by Mr. Currie, in his work on 'Common School Education,' will be of service to the teachers in helping them to explain this part of arithmetic. I take the liberty of extracting them:—

'*Numeration and Notation.*—When a class begins the study of formal arithmetic, its first effort is to learn numeration and notation, i.e. the system of reckoning which we employ in our calculations, and the manner in which we express numbers according to that system. These two topics cannot be confounded in the mind of the teacher without making his whole teaching of this subject both confused in its aim and its method. At the same time, they are closely connected with each other; so that they must be taught in mutual dependence.

'Numeration falls to be first explained: and it is with the number 10 that the necessity for explanation first occurs. Regarding the first nine numbers it need only be observed, that they should not be designated in the loose way in which they commonly are, as one, two, three, and so on, but systematically as one-unit, two-units, three-units, and so on. For the names one, two, three, &c., apply to the *various groups* of numbers that are afterwards to be formed, as tens, hundreds, &c. And the apparent exclusive appropriation of these names to the units, which is implied in the elliptical way of designating them, is a great hindrance to the pupil's perception of the principle both of numeration and notation. When the class come to the number 10, the teacher calls their attention to the fact, that it is considered as thrown into a parcel or group: the advantage of grouping can easily be illustrated from their own experience. The number is in fact not

ten, but a ten or one-ten; and it would be advisable to call it so. In proceeding beyond this number, the reckoning begins with the units again in their order, receiving them as added to the one-ten already grouped: so that the numbers in succession are one-ten and one, which the class is taught to call, for convenience' sake, *eleven*, one-ten and two, *one-ten and three*, &c., called respectively *twelve*, *thirteen*, &c.; until the reckoning comes in due course to the *two-tens* called *twenty*; after which the same process of gradual addition by units is resumed. Each step in the reckoning should be exhibited to the eye on the black board. The grouping of ten-tens (when that is reached) into a new group called one hundred, upon the same principle as that embodied in the grouping of ten units into one-ten, may form a limit to numeration for a time. So far, the teaching is entirely oral. If it be asked whether at this period the teacher should seek to make the pupils comprehend why the grouping proceeds by tens, the answer is that this is a matter which cannot be made intelligible to them: he may satisfy any desire they are likely themselves to form on the subject by connecting the *ten* with the ten fingers; but any investigation of different scales must stand over till a later period.

'*Notation.—Order of Steps.*—The notation of the numbers must next be explained: and here again it is with the number ten that the need of explanation is felt to arise. When the teacher comes to the number *one-ten*, he directs the attention of his class to the fact that it is *one* in some sort equally with the *one unit* already learnt; though a different kind of *one*, still of its kind it is *one*. Its notation must therefore be something which shall convey both its agree-

When they have thus thoroughly mastered the difficulties of expressing numbers of three places, and accurately and practically

ment with the one unit and its difference. The teacher may suppose different kinds of notation for it, all necessarily modifications of the symbol 1, as e.g. 1', or a larger 1, thus leading them to feel that the form of symbol which is adopted is not a matter of absolute necessity, but of convenience. So he tells them what that symbol is, viz. 10; leading them to observe that though the cipher is a new figure, it has no value in itself, and is therefore never used by itself, but that it is of great value as that by which we distinguish between the 1 that denotes a unit and the one that denotes a ten. When they are thus prepared, he enunciates the principle of the notation to them, that is, by the *relative position* of the figure that its difference of value is denoted. In going on to confirm that principle by other examples, he had better take the tens, or some of them, here: two-tens denoted by 20, three-tens by 30, and so on. These cases are purely analogous to that already taught; so much so, that, under judicious leading, the pupils could infer what the notation for them will be. Then the teacher comes back to the combination of tens and units. If it has been impressed that one-ten is denoted by the symbol 1 in the second place from the right, and the one unit by the symbol 1 with nothing else to its right, the pupil will have little difficulty in apprehending how *one-ten* and *one-unit* together, or eleven, should be denoted by two symbols standing to each other in the relation indicated by the symbol 11: similarly one-ten and two-units, or twelve, should be handled, and other numbers in succession. The especial point for careful illustration at this point is to show that a simple juxtaposition of the symbol for ten with the symbol for one, viz. 101, would not denote eleven. For it is just at this point that the popular misconceptions of notation amongst children come in; and if they come in here, they are carried through the whole sequence of notation, and embarrass his entire future progress. The

teacher cannot be too careful, therefore, to show them the cipher is only used to keep the figures in their proper relative position, and that, if the figures are in their proper position without its use, as in 11, 12, &c., there is neither need nor room for its introduction. If the symbols up to 20 are illustrated with sufficient clearness, the subsequent ones will cause no trouble.—That the pupil may have familiarity in using the symbols of the different numbers, he must not only have them explained to him, but be in the habit of observing and of making them. Exercises may be formed for this purpose, more or less varied, according to the teacher's ingenuity. Thus the class may write the symbols both successively and miscellaneously to dictation; or they may name the numbers of which the teacher points to the symbols on the board. They may be exercised upon finding particular pages in a book; which is the first application they have to make of their knowledge of notation apart from numerical operation. They may be asked to write down the symbols of numbers which the teacher exhibits on the ball-frame without naming; or to name these numbers orally; or to lay off on the frame the numbers of which the teacher gives either the name or the symbol: for they must learn to associate, not merely the name of the number with its symbol, but both with its value. And practice in reading the notation should be conjoined, at the teacher's discretion, with operations under the elementary rules; e.g. if the subject of a lesson is the numbers from 80 to 40, each of these numbers may be reached by a series of combined operations with smaller numbers, then written on the board with its name and symbol distinctly enunciated, and the whole column revised when completed.

The number 100 is the next critical point in the pupil's progress; and it should be treated with the same amplitude of illustration as the 10. First let the teacher impress the fact

learned the value of what is called a *place* in arithmetic, and the use of the *cipher*, they will have scarcely any further trouble.

that it is a new group, one-hundred, made up of ten of the lower groups; then that its notation agrees with that of the two kinds of *one* already got in involving the same symbol 1, but that it differs from these in the *position* assigned to that symbol by the employment of two ciphers. Then let him compare the symbol for the one-hundred with the symbol for the number which comprises one of each of the three groups learnt, one-hundred, one ten, one unit, 111, or any two of them, one-hundred and one-ten, 110, or one-hundred and one-unit, 101, till the pupil can thoroughly distinguish them. And then let him proceed carefully upward, making those comparisons, and applying those tests, which cannot but suggest themselves to one who reflects on what he is teaching. The numbers are larger and their symbols more complicated; but the pupil has the advantage of the previous training upon the tens to help him. At the same time, he need not now be occupied with this exclusively; but may go on with addition and subtraction whilst his knowledge of the notation is being extended. It is futile to attempt to exhaust this or any other rule at the time the pupil is first introduced to it. For the mere magnitude of the larger numbers, such as those involving tens and hundreds of thousands, is an obstacle to him, even when he perceives the principle of notation; his mind must be allowed time to grow into some familiarity with these numbers before he is expected to manipulate freely with them; and this growth cannot be forced.

'In the explanation of notation, it is very important that the *terms* should be used with precision and consistency; the pupil cannot form clear ideas, if he hears "digit," "figure," "number," "place," &c., employed arbitrarily and interchangeably.

'The following considerations sufficiently show the importance of dwelling with much patience and carefulness on this part of arithmetic. —(1) "When a principle of nume-

ration, or of considering a number as divided into the successive powers of the number adopted as the scale of notation, is once established, every operation becomes a precedent for another; the mode of operation on tens and units is a proof of that for operating on hundreds and tens, for the quantities involved are similarly related: they are, therefore, only instances, in fact, of the same operation, the addition of 220 and 180 or of 22 tens and 18 tens being obviously exactly the same thing as that of 22 apples and 18 apples, the tens in the one case, and the apples in the other, being merely the subjects on which the operation is performed. There may be different ways of expressing this; and, of course, it would require much both of simplification and expansion before it was introduced to children; but, directly or indirectly, something of the kind is absolutely necessary, or else all the processes of arithmetic are reduced to mere *counting*, and the learner is not able to form any conclusion respecting numbers exceeding those which he has actually reckoned up to." (2) In operating on large numbers, whether by addition, multiplication, or the like, we can attain results only by operating on, or by, their parts consecutively. It is in virtue of the principle of numeration that we arrange the several partial results; and that we thus obtain the total result by carrying over units to tens, tens to hundreds, or *vice versa*.—From both of these considerations it is manifest that all numerical operations whatsoever have their basis in the system of numeration which is assumed, and cannot be understood, even in the slightest degree, without a clear perception of the principle of that system. Wherever, therefore, arithmetic is taught with any pretensions to be a means of education, it must lay the foundation for these operations broad and deep in a full intelligence of that principle. And we have dwelt upon it thus emphatically with the view of removing the erroneous impression



**Why the fourth division should consist of six instead of four.** The next step, as I have already said, should be to teach them to express numbers represented by *six* figures. The first step being *one* figure, the second being *two*, the third being *three*, it would be natural to expect that the fourth step should be *four*, and, in practice, by the system already spoken of, it actually is the case; but at the end of the three figures a new *period* begins, whose subdivisions—units, tens, hundreds—are exactly the same as those already learned, and therefore it would be absurd to treat them separately. They should be treated of as a whole.

**True method of teaching notation.** I propose to show the true method of enabling those children who have already learned to hundreds properly to express *any* number, no matter how high.

**Four steps.** There are but four different steps to be attended to, none of which possesses any great difficulty.

Write on the *black board* any series of figures in proper order. When this is done—

(1) Show the children the method of dividing these into *periods*, or groups of *three*, counting always from the *right* hand. In this there will be no difficulty. The separation of each group may be effected by a comma, a hyphen, a tick, or, with very young children, the three figures in each may be united by a line above them, as  $\overline{406}$ , or they may be completely surrounded by a circle, as

406

The great object being to accustom the pupils to regard each group as independently of the others as possible.

(2) They should next learn to read these periods; that is, to read the numbers in each exactly as if written by themselves. Thus, suppose the number divided into periods on the black board stood thus—

640,307,081 ;

they must say, pointing to the first, *eighty-one*; to the second, *three hundred and seven*; and to the third, *six hundred and forty*; the name of each period being omitted.

This is exceedingly easy, but it is exactly in this that defects are most frequently met with. They should, therefore, be exercised on it frequently, until they can do it correctly and without the smallest hesitation.

(3) Then, but not till then, they should be taught the names by which the periods are distinguished from each other; and they that the discipline of arithmetic does of all the subsequent teaching will not really commence till the pupil depend upon the manner in which he reaches the more advanced rules, is led to take his first steps in the and of showing that the character subject.'

should make use of these names when repeating the numbers in each. Thus, to the above numbers they should add *millions* after the six hundred and forty, *thousands* after the three hundred and seven, and *units* after the eighty-one; so that the whole will read six hundred and forty millions, three hundred and seven thousand, and eighty-one units. They can next be taught to drop the word units—it being generally left out—but in each case when not expressed, they ought to know that it is understood.

**Test questions.** A child so taught will be able to read any number, no matter by how many or how few figures it may be expressed. He will also be able to explain why there are but *three* places, while the *periods* are unlimited, and to answer with ease and intelligence questions like the following:—

What does 6 represent in the *third* place of the *first* period?

What does 4 represent in the *first* place of the *second* period?

What does 5 represent in the *second* place of the *third* period?

Why does 6 in the *first* place of the *second* period represent *units* of thousands?

What figures represent fifty thousand and forty; one million and ten, &c.

**Numeration and notation should be taught together.** What I have already said is made to refer chiefly to numeration, but it equally refers to notation also. The two rules must go hand in hand together, for they require the same explanations, they are founded on the same principles, and they mutually assist one another.

When able to read the figures up to *ten* inclusive, the child should also be able to represent them. When able to read to *one hundred*, he should be able also to express by their proper figures all the numbers he repeats; and, generally, whatever combinations of figures he can accurately express, he should also as accurately reproduce.

**Notation should follow a lesson on numeration.** Notation should always follow a lesson upon numeration, as it is but putting into practice the principles explained. If the one is thus brought as a sequence of the other, it will test the child's comprehension of the master's explanations; it will give an opportunity for removing errors, and it will deepen all impressions of what is correct.

**Three hints on putting down numbers.** In putting down numbers there are *three* things to be attended to; (1) the periods should not be too much separated, as 645, 307, 800; there should be the same distance exactly between them—between the 5 and the 3, the 7 and the 8—as between the other figures; (2) the commas, or other separating marks, should be made neatly; and (3) each period should be completed and marked off before the next is put down,

Thus, if it were required to put down *fifty-four thousand six hundred*, the children should first put down merely the 54, and make a mark after it to indicate that that period is completed; and they should then attach to it the 600.

**Children should fix the number in their mind by periods.** It is of great advantage to fix the number in the child's mind in periods. It is something equivalent to the advantages arising from spelling large words by syllables. The difficulties, by being divided and separately dealt with, are lessened.

**Termination of period to be indicated by a pause.** In dictating numbers the master should indicate the termination of each period by a slight pause. Thus, instead of saying uninterruptedly, put down twenty thousand and fifty, he should say, put down twenty thousand (pause) and fifty. The pause defines the period, and should be represented by the comma. In this way the child soon comes to perceive the actual figures to be put down in each period, and learns that in putting down millions, billions, &c., he never has to put down at one time any number higher than *hundreds*, but merely to attend to the *place* in which he puts them.

**Mechanical way of learning notation.** If these steps are faithfully carried out, the pupils will not find it difficult to learn notation and numeration fully; but there is a mechanical arrangement which may also be tried, as it possesses some advantages peculiar to itself, and which I have induced many teachers to adopt, and always with complete success.

**Described.** (1) Direct the children to draw on their slates two parallel, horizontal lines, and to divide the space between them into neat compartments, capable of holding, at the least, three figures.

Direct them also to write above each compartment in proper order the words, units, thousands, millions, &c., so that the whole will stand thus :—

millions	thousands	units

The separating lines being dotted for the purposes of reference afterwards. Then tell them to place in each compartment the exact number, as given out, belonging to itself.

Thus, suppose they were called upon to put down *forty millions, three thousand four hundred*, this number should first be expressed on the black board as follows :—

40 *millions*  
 3 *thousand*  
 400 (*units*)

and then they should be required to put the 400 in the compartment already made for the units, the 3 and only the 3 in the compartment for the thousands, and the 40 in the remaining one; placing the numbers for the sake of convenience close to the dotted lines, thus:—

millions	thousands	units
40	3	400

They may then rub out these figures and try others, until they are quite perfect.

(2) When they are, they must learn 'to fill up' each compartment. This consists in *putting as many ciphers to the left hand of what are already entered as will make the total number of figures in each exactly three.*<sup>1</sup>

In the above example no figure ought to be entered in the first compartment, but *two* must be entered in the second, and *one* in the third. The whole will then appear as follows, and the figures, if taken out and written in that order on the slate, will accurately represent the given number:

millions	thousands	units
040	003	400

(3) When quite perfect in these two steps, they should proceed to the next, which consists in the removal of the horizontal lines, leaving the perpendiculars, &c., to form divisions which are to be filled up in the same way, thus:—

millions	thousands	units
	⋮	⋮
	⋮	⋮
	⋮	⋮

(4) The next step is the removal of even these lines, putting in their place commas, thus:—

millions	thousands	units
,	,	,

<sup>1</sup> Of course it is not in reality necessary to complete the left-hand compartment, but it is better to state the rule in general terms, as

above, than to be confusing the children in their earlier efforts by pointing out to them what is exceptional.

(5) And the last is to remove all guides, causing the children to supply the commas when each period is completed.

The periods are to be written, as before recommended, at proper distances from each other, and the ciphers to the left-hand of the last period are to be dispensed with.

**Pleases the children.** This mechanical method of teaching notation has the great advantage of interesting young children. They regard it as an amusing puzzle, and take pleasure in it accordingly.

**Notation and numeration something more than mere putting down and reading numbers.** Teachers should not imagine, however, that when pupils are able to put down and read any number freely and accurately, that they, therefore, know numeration and notation properly. This is but a mechanical knowledge, and may, as has just been shown, be mechanically acquired. To know notation well, they ought not only to be able to put down readily and correctly any number given out, but they should also know the exact *value* of each figure, and the *principles* upon which our system of numeration rests. In fact, we may divide the knowledge which children may possess about these rules, just as we have already divided their knowledge of *counting*, into *correct* and *intelligent*. They may know them 'correctly,' and they may know them 'intelligently,' the latter including the former, and adding to it a thorough acquaintance with the laws of number. Correct notation and numeration must be acquired first, the higher kind subsequently, but always.

**Proficiency for each class defined.** Arithmetic should begin with the alphabet class, and should be taught regularly till the close of the course, each class having a certain defined proficiency different from the others. Suppose that the children of a school are divided into six classes—the first (or lowest), the second, third, fourth, fifth, and sixth; and that the junior classes are divided, the lowest into three drafts, the second into two, as ought to be the case; and the others not divided—we would then have the following classes and drafts:—

First	{ Alphabet draft Spelling draft Advanced draft }	which we may designate as	{ 1 <sup>1</sup> 1 <sup>2</sup> 1 <sup>3</sup>
Second	{ Junior draft Senior draft }		
Third	{ undivided }	. . .	{ 2 <sup>1</sup> 2 <sup>2</sup> 3
Fourth			
Fifth			

And, in my opinion, the following is the proficiency which should be required from each, and which is easily attainable.

1<sup>st</sup> should be required to *count correctly*, that is, as has been already explained, to repeat the figures in their order. They should be proficient in this about the same time that they are proficient in the alphabet, the learning of one presenting about the same difficulty as the learning of the other, and both depending almost entirely upon memory, which in young children is peculiarly quick and vivid.

They should also know so much of *intelligent counting* as will enable them to connect the names with objects, and distinguish the groups in immediate connection with each other.

The most grown of them ought to learn to form the nine digits from a model set before them.

1<sup>st</sup> should be required to know all contained under the head of intelligent counting. They should be able to write down any number up to 10 when dictated to them, and to read it off.

1<sup>st</sup> should, in addition, be able to write down and read any number up to 100.

2<sup>nd</sup> should be able to write down six places of figures, and to answer all the queries about *places*, and perform all the exercises already mentioned about completing periods, &c.

2<sup>nd</sup> should be able to put down any number required with average correctness, and with a fair amount of intelligence, arranging them under each other readily for the purposes of addition, subtraction, &c.

3 should do all this with greater neatness and despatch, and with more intelligence.

4 should be acquainted with the different systems, as the English, French, Roman, &c., and be able to answer intelligent questions upon the laws of increase in places and periods in each system. To what extent they agree, and when they begin to differ, &c.

5, or highest class, should know all this and be able to reduce a number from any one system into another—as from the *decimal* into the *quinary*, *binary*, &c., and to perform in any system the processes of addition, subtraction, &c.

**Notation should be known practically.** In all classes notation should not only be well known up to the limit defined, but it should be practically known. That is, the pupils should be able not only put down the figures correctly, but they should be able to arrange them properly—*quickly, correctly, and neatly*—under each other, as required in simple addition, subtraction, &c.

**Should be always used.** It should also be continually used. Many masters at present spend considerable time and trouble in

making their pupils proficient in it, and then, as if its value began and ended in itself, they cease to apply it. Instead, for instance, of giving out a number to the class, they dictate singly the figures which compose it. Thus, if the question were to subtract nine hundred and eight from three thousand four hundred and sixty, they would say, 'put down 3, 4, 6, 0, and under the 4 put down 9, next to it put 0, and then 8, and subtract.' Such a course is very wrong, for by it the time spent in acquiring notation, &c., is to a great extent wasted, and it creates in the minds of the children a tendency to omit all consideration of the value which the *situation* of the figures gives to them,—to look upon the 3, for instance (in the above question), simply as a 3, the 4 as a 4, &c., and to shut out the important fact that, in taking the 9 from the 14, they, in reality, are taking 900 from 1400.

**Why so much space is given to these rules.** I have devoted considerable space to notation and numeration from being convinced, like the gentlemen already quoted, that to ignorance of them may be traced most of the failures in working arithmetical questions which are now generally met with, and that, therefore, any suggestions by which the study of them may be facilitated will not only give a better knowledge of the rules themselves, but will enable the pupils to work the higher branches of arithmetic more accurately and intelligently.

**Neatness and quickness considered.** In addition to what I have just stated, I wish to press upon teachers the necessity which exists for seeing that the figures are neatly and correctly made, though at the same time they are made quickly. Some teachers allow their children to make very clumsy and ill-shaped figures simply from carelessness and indifference, but others do so from the notion that to make figures neatly consumes time unnecessarily. This, however, is a great mistake. The making of figures, like the making of letters, is a matter of habit and system. *If properly taught, neatness, accuracy, and quickness will always go together.*

**Want of neatness, &c. a cause of error.** But even supposing that neatness of execution and arrangement did require some extra time, teachers should not forget that many a wrong answer is the result of hurry, untidiness, and of ill-formed figures, and that, therefore, the time which avoided those was well spent. When the *one* is like the *seven*, the *seven* like the *nine*, the *cipher* like the *six*, or when the *units* are under the *tens*, the *tens* under the *hundreds*, &c., how is it possible to doubt the certainty of error?

**Making of figures on paper.** Mr. Fleming, Head Inspector

of Irish National Schools, thinks this matter of sufficient importance to deserve a prominent part in his first general Report. He suggests, and in its advantage I quite concur, that boys 'from Sequel upwards should transcribe, under the vigilant and direct superintendence of their teachers, and as a daily exercise, one or two sums into a book prepared for that purpose, and that the junior classes should write copies of figures from well-set models.' Mr. Cook says<sup>1</sup> that 'the use of paper conduces much to neatness and accuracy of the work;' and Mr. Fletcher,<sup>2</sup> while stating that the main advantage of using paper, that of neatness, may be obtained by means more universally applicable with less waste of time, yet admits that these means are not so universally in use as entirely to supply its place. It is too much the fashion to overlook, in the present system of conducting schools, the advantages arising from the use of paper in arithmetical operations, and it seems to be done from an over-anxiety to differ as much as possible from the plans adopted by the 'venture' teachers whom we are now superseding; but though these men made the use of paper an evil from carrying it too far, the extreme into which we have fallen—of excluding it altogether—appears to be nearly as injurious. There can be no doubt but that, when kept within due bounds, its introduction again will be of advantage, especially to those intended for mercantile pursuits.

**Papers should be used at home.** It may be used as recommended by Mr. Fleming, and it may be made judiciously one of the *home exercises*. The children should be required to work a few questions occasionally at home, and to bring them, neatly written out on paper, next day, for the master's revision and inspection. The master can make these questions tests of the rules already learned, or questions bearing upon the staple trades, &c., of the neighbourhood or of the parents of the children; or he can so word them as to test the intelligence by which rules will be selected, when the language itself gives no clue to show under which rule a question comes.

#### TABLES.

**Adding single digits.—Two systems followed at present.** The next rule to notation and numeration is simple addition, but before entering upon it formally and by the use of slates the child should be able to make out mentally, and should remember, the sums of each pair of single digits *at the least*. How is this to be done? At present in many cases the pupils' knowledge of mental

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1852-3, p. 322.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid, 1846-7, vol. ii. p. 98.



addition has been acquired by the laborious process of being continually told the results, and corrected when wrong; but in the majority of schools the pupils count their fingers, make strokes on the slates, or adopt some similar mechanical aids. The first is scarcely a system of teaching at all. It wastes a great deal of time, and fosters that sort of haphazard answering which leads to the acquisition, on the part of the children, of desultory habits of thought, strongly calculated to retard their progress afterwards.

Those who make use of the second course do not add at all in the best sense of that term; they merely *count*. If, before a child can tell what the sum of any two digits is—as, for instance, three and four—he is obliged to repeat 4 (5, 6, 7), reckoning at the same time his fingers or the strokes on his slate, he has gone so little beyond what is generally understood by counting, as distinguished from adding, that he may be said merely to count still. There is no mental culture whatever; the operation is so mechanical, that the mind at last goes through it almost unconsciously; neither is there any arithmetical progress, but there is a great waste of time, for as the result is not registered for future use, the same steps must be taken over and over again whenever the same addends occur. In fact, the child in such a case knows only *how to obtain the result*, but he does not know, without calculation, *what that result is*.

Apply this system to the multiplication-table and the rule of multiplication, and the absurdity appears at once.

**Mechanical aids very injurious.** I scarcely know anything so difficult to be got rid of as the use of mechanical aids in adding, if once they have been practised for any length of time. In fact, so permanent are their effects, that it is by no means unusual to meet with children, especially girls, able to work Practice, who are forced to adopt some such aids in totting up a few figures.

**The only true plan to teach mental addition.** The only true plan to teach *mental addition* is to be had in the judicious use of the *addition-table*. This table, however, is so little known in schools at the present time, that it will be necessary to extract from it to show what it is, and to make myself fully understood. The following are the two first columns:—

2	and	1	are	3
2	"	2	"	4
2	"	3	"	5
2	"	4	"	6
2	"	5	"	7

3	and	1	are	4
3	"	2	"	5
3	"	3	"	6
3	"	4	"	7
3	"	5	"	8

2 and 6 are 8	3 and 6 are 9
2 " 7 " 9	3 " 7 " 10
2 " 8 " 10	3 " 8 " 11
2 " 9 " 11	3 " 9 " 12
2 " 10 " 12	3 " 10 " 13
2 " 11 " 13	3 " 11 " 14
2 " 12 " 14	3 " 12 " 15

Each succeeding column is formed similarly by the addition of a higher digit to the numbers arranged in order from 1 to 12. I am aware that, in strictness, this table, like the table of multiplication, need not extend to twelve, but the frequent repetition of the numbers and results, especially as they occur in an inverted form, is practically a decided advantage.

The addition of unity to the twelve numbers is left out, for that is in reality *counting*, and is embraced under the head of intelligent counting, already treated of.

**This table should be taught in steps.** There are many methods of teaching this table; but I find, by a large experience of its working, that the following is the most expeditious and the best:—

**1st step.** (1) *Explain the composition of the table*, that is, explain the principle upon which the table is formed, or, in other words, *verify the results by an actual reference to objects*. The earliest ideas of number which children possess are all *applicate*. It is only at a later period they acquire the power of abstracting number from the objects to which it belongs and considering it separately. All operations should, therefore, at the first be performed tangibly, should appeal to sensible objects, and be actually verified for the children. It is not sufficient to tell them that four and three are seven; they should be shown that four *books* and three *books* make seven *books*, or that four *balls* and three *balls* make seven *balls*.

**How a class may serve the purposes of a ball-frame.** I have already recommended such an appeal to familiar things in the case of counting, and suggested the use of the *ball-frame*, or of books, slates, &c. Dr. Cumming gives the following to show in what way the mere arrangement and subdivision of the class can be made to instruct children upon the elementary operations. He says, 'The class consisted of twelve, and when they were arranged in full view of each other five were detached from the body, and the question put: Take 5 from 12, and how many remain? The detaching of the other four led to questions about the sum of 5 and 4, and the remainder when 9 was taken from 12. Again, the class was divided into three equal sections, and the questions put, How many are one-third of 12? How many are two-thirds, &c.?'

And thus an idea of the simple rules and even of fractions was imparted to a very young class of scholars.<sup>1</sup>

**Pupils should make out the table for themselves.** When the pupils understand what is meant by saying that 2 and 1 are 3, 4 and 5 are 9, &c., it is a very excellent plan to give them the ball-frame, and let them make out the results for themselves.<sup>2</sup>

**Should compare figure, articles, &c., together.** It is also a good plan to bring the name of the figure, the figure itself, and the articles it represents in close connection, and always to appeal from one to the other until the children fully understand what is meant by each. The pupils should be kept at this step until they fully comprehend what is expected from them, for it is only what is understood that ought to be committed to memory.

**2nd step.** *Get the child to repeat each column in a rhyme from beginning to end without stopping.*

Thus, I ask the child to repeat, for instance, the first column of the addition table. I do not ask questions on it, I do not say to him how much are two and one, two and two, &c., but I say to him, *repeat the line*; this he does by beginning at 'two and one are three,' and ending at 'two and twelve are fourteen.'

**The object of this step.** The first step was to explain the results, this is merely to record them in the memory. The repetition should be not only correct, but as rapid as is consistent with distinctness. This is mere rote work, for a child may repeat the columns fluently and correctly, and yet fail to tell the sum of any two numbers selected; but this repetition has its use, and is adapted to the low class which only is required to practise it.

**3rd step.** *The child should begin the column at any number selected.* Thus, instead of a child's beginning at 3 and 1 are 4, and repeating to the end, he may be called upon to begin at 3 and 6, or 3 and 5, or 3 and 9, &c., repeating on of course as if he had commenced at 3 and 1.

**Its object.** The great value of this is in the quickness with which he answers the sum of the first two numbers, and therefore if he answer it correctly and quickly, the repetition afterwards need not be very complete. Thus, if I ask the sum of 5 and 8, and the child replies at once 13, and then goes on 5 and 9 are 14, 5 and 10 are 15, it will be unnecessary to cause him to repeat more than two or three numbers, for the repetition is chiefly to show the child that it is to the table he must look for answers to

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1851-2, p. 1083.

See also Min. of Council, 1845-6, vol. ii. p. 222; 1846-7, vol. ii. pp. 96 and 389; 1861-2, p. 176; Dunn's Principles of Teaching, pp. 90, 91; and Currie's Common School Educa-

tion, p. 410.

<sup>2</sup> Cubes that can be handled by the children and arranged on the floor, are, perhaps, to be preferred to the ball-frame. See M'Leod's 'Standard I. of Arithmetic.'

such questions, and also to keep the columns fresh in his memory. In fact, it may be laid down as a general rule that, in every case where the child shows that he could repeat the column to the end if permitted, three numbers will be sufficient. When he has repeated as much of the column as the teacher thinks correct, another question should be given to another boy, but in carrying out this it is a waste of time to say to the first boy 'that will do,' and then to propose another question. The true plan is to propose the question, and the boy who is repeating will stop of himself.

**Last step.** *The last step* is that to which all the others are preparatory. *It consists in asking the sum of any two numbers throughout the whole table.* This is the end aimed at, and the object in making so many distinct steps prior to it was to adapt each to the varying abilities of the children, so that even the youngest might find something within his power to do.

When pupils fail in giving the sum required, they should be called upon to repeat the column from the beginning until they arrive at it.

**Quickness essential.** As this table is almost wholly a matter of memory, it is clear that the answers will be given quickly when the proper steps have been taken to make the children perfect, but many teachers consider that it is very unfair to expect promptness and readiness from young children; they are continually saying, 'give them time and they will tell,' 'do not hurry them,' 'they had not time,' &c., forgetting that children do not want time to tell the result if they actually know it. It is only when they are obliged to make up the result—that is, when they *count* instead of answering from the table—that time is necessary.

These men are, however, not only wrong, but they are very inconsistent, for they themselves require their children to answer rapidly upon the table of multiplication, which is addition repeated several times, and therefore much more likely to be slow than the addition table itself.

**How to extend this table.** When the table is fully known, it should be extended in order to make it available in the addition of large numbers. This is done by the following means. Take any two numbers, such as 9 and 6. When the child knows that their sum ends in 5, he should know from that that the sum of 19 and 6, 29 and 6, 39 and 6, 49 and 6, &c., end in 5. He will, therefore, be prepared to add these numbers readily. He will learn the method very quickly if a few examples are done on a black-board before him, and by a little practice he will soon be able to add any numbers selected, no matter how large.

**The tables of subtraction, multiplication, and division are to be taught in the same way exactly.** It is in the same

way exactly as that which I have explained that the tables of multiplication, subtraction, and division should be taught; first the *explanation*, then the *repetition*, then the *skipping* through the columns, and finally the *test questions* and the *extension* to higher numbers.

**Subtraction and division tables are necessary.** Some may fancy that those who learn the tables of addition and multiplication will, as a matter of course, be able also to subtract and divide, but my experience of schools has convinced me that this by no means follows. It is essentially necessary to commit the whole four tables to memory, that the desired results may be secured in the shortest time.

**Multiplication table should be verified by actual addition.** With regard to the multiplication table great care should be taken to explain fully its composition. It is a matter of considerable importance that the child should perceive at an early stage of his progress that this table is but a concise form, in which the results of certain questions in addition are recorded. He should be able to verify these results by applying the principles of that rule. Thus, if I tell a child that nine times eight are seventy-two, he should be able to prove this statement; and if I say to him that eight times six are fifty, he should be able to show the error; or again, if I ask him to make out how much are twelve times nine, he should be able to do so, merely from knowing the principles upon which the table has been formed. Care should be taken, however, to see that the table is fully committed to memory, for, no matter how well a child may be able to verify its results, if he is not able to tell these results at once his progress can never be satisfactory.

**Factoring to be taught.** As a deduction from this table, the child should be made familiar with what is called *factoring*, as it is of very frequent application in many of the arithmetical rules. He should be required to state orally the parts he would take for 36, for instance, or for 50, 24, 18, &c., and also how he would make use of these parts in multiplying or dividing. He should also be required to state orally how he would multiply by such numbers as 98, 99, 46, &c., which have no exact factors contained within the limits of the table.

**Extended multiplication table.** This table is frequently extended so as to include multiplicands up to 20. This extension produces great quickness in working both multiplication and division, and enables a child often to solve mentally many questions which would otherwise require a slate. I think, therefore, that all advanced pupils should be induced to learn it. Mr. Fletcher says, in reference to it, that 'the children of the British

schools while proceeding with the higher rules are learning the extended multiplication table to 20 times 20.' He adds that they learn this 'with constant reference to money; and also an extended money table up to 5,000 pence, and tables of squares and cubes of numbers up to 100.' He remarks that 'the capacity of rapid and, indeed, instantaneous calculation acquired by the quicker boys within the scope of these tables and rules was far beyond my ability to follow.'<sup>1</sup>

**Advantage of, more than the trouble.** There may be some little trouble in committing each table to memory, just as there is trouble in committing to memory any tables whatever, but the quickness and accuracy which will arise will more than compensate for the additional labour.

**Order of learning the tables important.** The order in which the arithmetical tables should be learned is almost of as much importance as the proper system of teaching them. The multiplication table has hitherto been taught first; this, however, could not well have been otherwise, as it was the only one connected with the four primary rules which was taught—the other three, addition, subtraction, and division, though equally necessary, being wholly omitted—and it has been taught as the first lesson in arithmetic. Such a course is very wrong; for when a child is obliged to learn the multiplication table before or during the time he is struggling with the rule of addition, he is learning not only what is unnecessary at the time, and what he may forget before called upon to make use of, but he is omitting the very table which is calculated to smooth his way. He might just as rationally be obliged to learn the pence table, the table of time, or even the table of aliquot parts, all of which are useful in their proper place, but all unsuited, like the table of multiplication, to form an introduction to the first rule of arithmetic.

**True order explained.** The sole use of the tables of addition, subtraction, multiplication and division, is to facilitate the working of the four elementary rules, and therefore each should be learned immediately before the rule to which it is to be applied.

The following appears to me to be the true plan:—

1. Teach the table of addition (in connection with counting, and the notation and numeration of small numbers).
2. Subtraction table and slate addition.
3. Multiplication table and slate subtraction.
4. Division table and slate multiplication.
5. Pence table and slate division.

The table of money, showing the relative values of farthings,

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1846-7, vol. ii. p. 97.

pence, shillings, &c., should also be taught in connection with division, as a knowledge of it will be required when learning the next rule. The tables of time, weight, measure, &c., should be learned, for the same reason, immediately afterwards. The general principle may be thus stated:—

*While learning one rule commit the table of the next, taking care, however, to begin the study of each table in sufficient time to allow of its being perfectly mastered before it is necessary to use it.*

The tables will thus be learned in their natural order, and, what is a matter of very great importance in rendering the results permanent, and enlisting the intelligence of the children in their committal to memory, they will be studied just before their practical application.

**Rule may be introduced practically from tables.** I would not have it inferred from this that I am opposed to the introduction of a rule until the table belonging to it has been fully mastered. I wish merely to be understood as not recommending a regular, formal, and complete introduction until then, and as sketching out the natural connection existing between the tables and the rules, so that we may avoid the errors of mistiming them. So far, indeed, am I from opposing the introduction of a rule until the table belonging to it has been fully committed to memory, that I strongly recommend the practice of giving easy questions illustrative of the columns of each table already passed over. Thus, to a child who has learned the table of addition to the fourth column inclusive, such a question as the following may be given with very great advantage.

Find the sum of 134565672 and  
                   235434215

for such a question not only tests the child's knowledge of the table so far, but renders him much less likely to forget what he has learned, while at the same time, by showing him the practical use of the tables, it affords him a proper motive for study, and, as a consequence, he will study with greater willingness, and of course with greater success.

Questions of this kind can be set on the *black board*, and the children can be sent to make out the answers. This will form a valuable silent occupation for the desks.

**Modification of the general rule just given.** The general rule sketched out above will in some instances require a modification suggested by the nature of the tables themselves, and by the character of the attendance of the children. The tables are divisible into two kinds: (1) those useful merely as aids, and

(2) those containing information valuable in itself. Now, as many children remain but a short time at school, it will be necessary to deal exceptionally with them. They should be taught the tables required in ordinary marketing transactions—the number of stones, for instance, in a hundredweight, the number of pounds in a stone, quarts in a gallon, &c. &c., even although in acquiring this knowledge a deviation must be made from the system of teaching which I have just sketched out, and which, from its being founded on the present accepted arrangement of the Elementary Rules of Arithmetic, appears to be the most natural and orderly. I may remark, however, that such exceptional cases will be very rare indeed, as nearly all grown boys learn beyond the Compound Rules, and it is at this point they should, according to the system I recommend, know all the Table Book.

**Apply the pence table practically.** In teaching the pence table it is an excellent plan to teach it practically, that is, to apply it occasionally to ordinary transactions. Thus, instead of asking them to say 6 times 8 are 48, 48 pence are 4 shillings, I might say, 'What is the price of 6 yards at 8*d.* per yard?' or, 'of 6 oz. of tea at 8*d.* per oz.?' or 'of 6 lbs. of sugar at 8*d.* per lb.?' or 'of 6 doz. apples at 8*d.* per dozen,' &c.

**Advanced classes to know the notes to the tables.** The most advanced classes should be taught not only all the rules—paying, however, most attention to those suited to the trades, &c. of the neighbourhood—but they should be taught the interesting matter contained in the notes. They should be told, for instance, the use and the several peculiarities of each table. In the table of money, for example, they should know why £ stands for pounds sterling, why *s.* stands for shillings, and *d.* for pence, and for what the character / stands in such forms as  $3/4$ ,  $2/6$ , &c.,<sup>1</sup> why the guinea, the pound, &c., were so called, &c. In the tables of weight they should know the unit of measure in each, what use each is applied to, what are the points of agreement and disagreement between the weights called Troy and Apothecaries'. But for the other classes, and for the exceptional cases already alluded to, a good knowledge of what is practically useful will be found sufficient.

**Tables to be written down before and after committal.** It is a good exercise to get the pupils to write down the tables, both before committing them and afterwards, as the memory is materially assisted by it.

**Rules and weights should be in school, and pupils should construct tables from them.** If the actual weights, measures, &c., were in the several schools, as I think they decidedly ought to

<sup>1</sup> It is used to represent the long *s.*



be, the pupil should be required to make out the tables for himself, and then to compare his results with the table-book. A foot rule, for instance, would of itself show him that there are 12 lines in an inch, and 12 inches in the foot. This applied to a yard stick, or to a measured yard on the wall of the school, or on one of the desks, would show him that there are three feet in a yard. This again applied to a perch, marked also in some convenient way, would show him that there are  $5\frac{1}{2}$  yards in a perch, &c. This would be to most children but an agreeable amusement, and a table so learned would not only be better understood but it would scarcely ever be forgotten?<sup>1</sup>

**Dean Dawes.** I refer the teachers to Dean Dawes' 'Suggestive Hints' for some valuable suggestions which will assist them in giving to their children true notions of *time, weight, length, capacity, &c.*

**Proficiency for each class.** The tables, like notation and numeration, should be begun with the alphabet and continued regularly in each class in accordance with a graduated scale of proficiency, something like the following. The classes and drafts are the same as those already given.

- 1<sup>1</sup>. Will verify the table of addition by *ball-frame*.
- 1<sup>2</sup>. Will repeat the columns in order.
- 1<sup>3</sup>. Will know them well, and verify the subtraction table.
- 2<sup>1</sup>. Will apply the addition table to high numbers and know subtraction table well.
- 2<sup>2</sup>. Will know the multiplication, pence, and money tables.
3.        ,,       the most important tables.
4.        ,,       all the tables well.
5.        ,,       all the tables, with notes, &c.

**Higher than usual, but practicable.** This proficiency is rather higher than what is generally sought for, especially from the junior classes, but it is quite attainable, as has been proved by the actual working of the schools under my inspection; and it is attainable without much extra labour: the great thing to insure success is to begin with the lowest class and to carry the teaching

<sup>1</sup> See Com. School Educ. p. 402.

Mr. Jones, in his report for 1861-2, p. 124, Minutes of Council, says: 'Whereas the adapting of arithmetical knowledge to the common practice of life is of essential importance in all schools, it would be a desirable thing, and one easy to effect, for every school to be furnished, as a *sine quâ non*, with a set of common weights and measures, a pair of large scales, a wooden bushel, quart, and

pint, a two-foot rule for boys, a draper's yard measure for girls, a long stick measured off as the "rod, pole, or perch," a common rope with knots in it at six feet distance, to show that a sailor can stretch his arms out thus far, and so measure a fathom; these might certainly be bought for 20s., and would, in the hands of a judicious master, teach more practical arithmetic than "Walkingham" and all the "Tutors."

on systematically and by graduated stages. Whatever extra labour there may be, need not necessarily fall upon the teacher, for, with regard to *tables, counting*, and, to some extent, notation and numeration, monitors, paid or unpaid, can be very judiciously employed, if the teacher will but only exercise over them an active supervision, and now and then examine minutely the progress of their classes. About five minutes after each reading lesson, or before each arithmetical lesson, will be quite sufficient to devote to these exercises.

**Junior classes supposed incapable of learning these.** Many teachers, I know, will look upon the proficiency for the junior classes as much too high, for many are under the impression that young children can learn, and ought to be taught, nothing but their letters and perhaps a few easy sounds. This, however, is a serious error, and one which, as it has led to the comparative neglect of these classes, calls for immediate removal. A single visit to any well-conducted infant school will show that it is so. One never enters such an institution without being struck with the quickness and capacity for learning exhibited by even the youngest. My impression is, that if teachers would aim at accomplishing more, if they would act zealously, continuously, and skilfully, they would find greater cause for admiration and hopefulness than for apprehension and despondency.

## SIMPLE RULES.

**Addition.** We come now to treat of the real work of arithmetic—of those elementary operations which are comprised under the four Simple Rules—addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. Of these, the most fundamental is addition; and the true time to begin it—I mean to begin it formally and regularly, for a beginning should be made even earlier, in connection with the tables, as has been already explained—is when the addition table has been fully acquired, and when the pupils are able to apply it to the addition of higher numbers. Between this and slate addition there is but a single step—the process of ‘carrying’—and it will be found exceedingly easy of comprehension by the majority of the children.

**Carrying explained.** ‘Carrying’ is nothing more than decomposing a number into its elementary parts, and putting each into a group of the same name as itself—units into the units’ group, the tens into the tens’ group, &c. Thus, in adding

$$\begin{array}{r} 50 \\ 99 \\ 2 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

we say, '9 and 2 are 11,' and this number consists of 1 unit and 1 ten; the unit is put with its fellow-units, and the ten is carried to the tens, making with 9 tens and 5 tens the total of 15 tens, which is another compound number, consisting of 5 tens and 1 hundred. These 5 tens are put with their fellow-tens, just as the 1 unit was put with its fellow-units, and the 1 of the new class, having none others to be joined with, is placed by itself. This depends upon the fact that numbers of different names cannot be added together; we cannot add three *cows* to six *horses*—a mere statement of such a question is sufficient to satisfy a child of the impossibility—neither can we add *tens* to *units*, nor *hundreds* to *tens*.

It is in this place that one of the advantages of decomposing numbers, as required in learning notation, will be seen.

**Technical terms to be little used.** The children, at first, may be told to *put down the figure to the right hand and carry all the others*—the technical terms *units*, *tens*, &c. being omitted, to prevent the possibility of a mistake in calculating. In fact, in all their early explanations the teachers should make as little use of technical terms as possible, and when treating of technical terms themselves they should be very particular in seeing that the children fully understand them; for it is astonishing with what accuracy young children will pick up such words, and how freely and correctly they will apply them, without in reality knowing anything of their true force.

**Tests of proficiency in addition.** A child who knows the tables of addition and their extension, as already explained, and who at the same time has acquired facility in 'carrying,' should be able to find the sum of any number of addends; but something more is necessary before he can be pronounced a proficient in the rule. He should not only add correctly, but he should avoid *improper methods, mechanical aids, and waste of time*.

**1. Improper methods.** Under the head of improper methods, I allude chiefly to the impropriety of repeating the sum of each pair of addends twice before adding it to the next figure. Thus, in adding 1, 2, 9, and 4, it is not so good to say, 'one and two are three,' 'three and nine are twelve,' 'twelve and four are sixteen,' &c., as 'one and two are three, and nine are twelve, and four are sixteen;' or, which is the most expeditious, and the plan least liable to error, omitting all mention of the addends, to say, 'three, twelve, sixteen.' Beginners may add the first way, those not very expert may add the second way, but all advanced children should add no way but the last; and if unable to do so, they should be regarded as possessing a defective knowledge of the rule. If made to add aloud frequently in the master's hearing, they would easily

acquire this method, and practice in it would soon give them the requisite degree of quickness.

**Ciphers not to be repeated.** Ciphers should not be repeated in adding. It sounds very harshly to say, for instance, that 'six and nought are six,' or that 'nought is a nought; put down nought;' and yet these expressions are very frequently met with.

**Figures to be carried are not to be written on the slate.** Again, the figures to be carried ought not to be put down on the slate. The practice is unseemly, and, on paper, it is inadmissible; besides, by not requiring the mind to remember such figures, one means is thus lost of judiciously strengthening its powers.

**Rows should be straight.** Finally, the children should be accustomed to make their figures so that the rows will be straight, both across and downwards. They have a tendency to write slantingly, and to blend the horizontal lines with one another; and it is almost impossible for a child to add correctly a question so written. These defects can be remedied by strict supervision and constant correction, and by beginning the culture of true habits from the first.

**2. Mechanical aids.** The mechanical aids referred to are not those of counting the figures, making strokes, &c., which I have already condemned under the head of 'Tables,' but are rather such aids to addition as are given by marking off the tens as they proceed up the column, instead of bearing them in mind until the end. Take, for instance, the following example:—

$$\begin{array}{r}
 3\ 0\ 4 \\
 5\ 6\ 9- \\
 -7\ 8-2 \\
 3\ 4\ 1 \\
 \hline
 19\ 9\ 6
 \end{array}$$

The child says, 'one and two are three, and nine are twelve,' and then, instead of saying, 'and four are sixteen,' he puts a mark at the nine, to represent the one ten contained in twelve, and carries the remaining two to the four, making six, which he puts down. He then adds to the *four* of the next column the number of marks thus made (representing tens), and in the addition of the second line he marks off as before. A child so taught never really adds beyond *eighteen* (nine and nine), and therefore the power that arithmetical calculation gives, and which is one of its great educational advantages, of sustaining a long train of thought, is thus entirely lost. The result may be correct, but the mind is not

improved by the exercise. Besides, as already objected to in the previous case, the practice is unseemly, and, in many cases, inadmissible.

**3. Slowness.** With regard to *quickness*, the other essential of true proficiency, many teachers do not regard it as of much importance. They imagine that *accuracy* will justify any amount of slowness, even that which approaches in character to dulness. There are others, however, who think that correctness of results is not very material, except in a merchant's office or other place of business, provided only that the process is correct, and the execution rapid. Both these are in the extreme, the truth lying between. There must not be such an amount of haste as will necessarily produce error, nor yet so much slowness as will appear to border upon inexpertness. The teacher's duty is to secure, by every means he can, quickness, expertness, promptness of thought and action, but in doing this he should never sacrifice correctness.<sup>1</sup>

**True mean by desk and draft teaching.—Both necessary, and why.** The true mean is secured by the judicious mixture of *desk* and *draft teaching*. Desk teaching is necessary to give habits of self-reliance, and to test how far the master's instructions have been practically valuable in each boy's case; but class teaching on the floor is necessary to secure quickness and vivacity. Pupils who work arithmetic solely from text-books in the desks, and are allowed to linger as they like over each step, become dull, listless, incoherent in thought, and unready in action. They require the healthy stimulus of the drafts, where the boys generously rival each other in quickness and correctness.

A few hints are necessary as to the proper methods for carrying each out.

**1. Desk teaching.** As desk work is to secure self-reliance and that accuracy which is the result of a thoughtful study of each step, the child should be left as much as possible to his own unaided efforts. To encourage him, as many teachers do, to run

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Wood says ('Sessional School,' p. 258), 'It is sometimes observed, that accuracy in calculation is infinitely more important than rapidity. This is a proposition which no one will call in question; and, therefore, if the two things were necessarily or naturally opposed to each other, there can be no doubt which should be preferred. But if, on the other hand, the two are, under proper discipline, found to go hand in hand—if he who performs a calcula-

tion with ease and rapidity, performs it with no less accuracy than he who does so with difficulty and sluggishness—then surely it were well it were done quickly. All must undoubtedly admit that correctness is best to be attained by practice; and who is it that in his early years enjoys most the benefits of such practice? He who performs one calculation in an hour, or he who, perhaps, performs sixty of a similar kind in the same time?'

up for assistance as each difficulty presents itself, not only produces disorder and noise, but defeats the object sought for.

**An eye supervision to be maintained.** It will not do, however, to abandon the pupils in the desks entirely to themselves. The same sort of eye supervision recommended in the writing exercises, is necessary here also. They should feel that they cannot idle without being seen. The questions should also be retained on the slate for the master's or monitor's examination, and for a check as to number, &c. If this is not done, the children will become lazy and inattentive.<sup>1</sup>

**Paper to be used in place of slates occasionally.** I strongly recommend, in connection with this, the occasional use of paper instead of slates. I do not mean that the question should be worked on slates, and then transferred to paper, but that paper alone should be used. This will induce habits of thoughtfulness, and produce accuracy as a consequence. It will show whatever errors the children may happen to make in their first efforts; it will also afford the best check as to the quantity and quality of the work done, and, like all other written exercises, it may be made the means for cultivating habits of taste and neatness. It may be used at three or four lessons in the week, or more frequently if the teacher thinks proper. Copying on to paper questions previously worked on slates forms a good introduction to this exercise, and should always be practised for some time before dispensing with the slates.

**2. Floor teaching.** In floor teaching, the *primary* object in view requires that every legitimate means should be taken to rouse the boys to excel each other in quickness—to create among them a healthy rivalry in getting first place.

**Methods to create quickness.** This is done in various ways. One way is to get the boys to put down their slates, in the order in which they are done, on a chair or form in the centre of the class, putting them on top of each other, and with the unfigured side uppermost. The master, when all are down, turns the slates and examines each; and he puts those boys who are right at the top of the class, in order, and those who are wrong at the foot. Quickness and accuracy are thus both rewarded, and therefore the

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Wood, the gentleman from whom I have just quoted, says (p. 255), 'There is no department, indeed, in which either activity or indolence may be more strictly exemplified than in this. "The whining schoolboy, creeping like a snail unwillingly to school," is but a very

faint picture of sloth, when compared with the appearance which the same boy sometimes exhibits when nominally engaged at the desk with figures. His lounging attitude, his vacant and listless look, will too surely attest the utter inertness of his mind.'

plan is so far good ; but the noise and confusion attendant on it render it quite impracticable in a large school.

There is a *second* plan. Direct the children to put their slates by their sides as soon as done, and at the same time to go above all whose slates are not down ; and then desire all to show slates. You can now examine each, putting all to the foot who are wrong, and causing the others to take their places. This also rewards both quickness and accuracy combined, and as there is less noise attached to it, it is better than the other ; but there is always more or less of confusion attending it, for occasionally it will happen that two or three are done together, and make a rush to take the best place. On this account it also will be inadmissible, unless the teacher is a very good disciplinarian.

An excellent plan to secure quickness may be thus described : Each boy makes a margin at the left-hand side of his slate, in which to enter the value the teacher assigns to his answers. Say there are twenty in the class : the first done makes the number 20 on the *back* of his slate, which he then places down before him, holding a corner with either hand. He also calls out, for the information of the other boys, the number thus written. The second boy done writes 19, and calls it ; the next 18, and so on. When sufficient time has been allowed for working the question, the teacher examines the slates, and marks, in the margin set apart for that purpose, the value of each answer. All boys wrong get cipher, and those who are right get *the number entered on the back of their respective slates*. These values are all added at the end of the lesson, and the children take their places in accordance with the result, the highest number going first. By this means rapidity and accuracy are both tested. This plan need not be used in the case of very short calculations.

**Method recommended.** The plan which I adopt myself in my examination of a school consists in merely desiring the pupils to put their slates down rapidly the moment they arrive at any answer, whether correct or not. I do not allow them to look over the work a second time to test its accuracy. At the order to 'show slates,' an order given when I think there has been time enough spent, those who have done turn the slates out, *and those who have not put their slates by their sides*. All who are wrong go to the foot, and all who did not finish go after them in order.

**Advantages of it.** This plan avoids all noise and confusion, while it rewards quickness and accuracy. The fear that they will not be done when the order to 'show slates' is given induces the children to work rapidly. It even produces greater quickness than the other plans, for the examiner can limit the time for each question to whatever period he considers correct.

**Additional suggestions on floor teaching.**—1. See that each order is fully obeyed before another is given. Many teachers give, for instance, the order to 'show slates,' and without waiting to see whether it is fully and properly obeyed, proceed to examine them. The result is, that only some show slates, while the others either work on, or else copy what they see.

2. Copying must be prevented. Where it exists, it does more, probably, to destroy the good effects of draft teaching than anything else, as it screens the indolent, and prevents progress in the majority of the class. It should be put down, not by any mechanical means—such as putting the children back to back in pairs, or giving different questions to each alternate boy—but by constant watchfulness, and by training the children to look upon copying in its true light, as not only a breach of discipline, but as a deception, of which no high-minded person would be guilty. This fault, like most others, begins in the junior classes, and it is there especially that the master should repress with a firm hand every symptom of it. It is a fault exceedingly common, and strongly condemned by inspectors;<sup>1</sup> and one that is in itself almost a sufficient evidence of bad answering, for children never copy when they can work readily the question proposed.

3. Great attention should be given to class teaching in the junior division of the schools. As Mr. Sheridan says,<sup>2</sup> 'I wish most earnestly I could impress upon teachers' minds the truth, that the seeds of expertness in calculation must be sown in the junior classes, and that, if proper culture be there neglected, no matter how plentifully the seeds may be scattered afterwards, the crop will be poor. It is in these, or not at all, that children acquire expertness, and a want of expertness is the most striking defect observable.'

4. Begin with easy questions, and repeat them frequently. Unless the questions are easy, they will require too much thought, and will thus defeat the end in view; and when once questions are

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Blandford (Min. of Council, 1847-8, vol. ii. p. 190) says, 'In examining upon arithmetic, it is painful to witness the deceit and falsehood practised by the children in their attempts to copy from each other. It is greatly to be regretted that teachers do not take more pains to impress upon the minds of those committed to their care the necessity of truthfulness in small matters. It is most desirable for teachers in National Schools to endeavour, as far as they can, to induce habits of truth and honesty, that whilst they incul-

cate sound doctrine, they should take every opportunity of enforcing right practice, and of infusing a sound, healthy, moral tone throughout the school; and I know of no surer or more common-sense test of the existence of such a tone prevailing amongst the children, than when they abstain from copying the answers of the sums from one another.' See also Min. of Council, 1857, p. 471; 1860-1, p. 188; and 1861-2, p. 130.

<sup>2</sup> Report for 1858, Commissioners of National Education, Ireland.



solved, a repetition will produce an increase of rapidity, which will in the end become a habit.

**5. See that the pupils fully understand the questions, and take down the right figures.** Confusion of figures and inattention to questions are prevalent causes of error, and, as a consequence, of slowness. To guard against them, give out the questions clearly, not too rapidly, and only upon points that they ought already to know well.

**Example of rapidity from Mr. Wood.** When these things are carefully carried out, it is scarcely credible to what a pitch of rapid calculation boys will arrive. Mr. Wood says of those attending the Edinburgh Sessional School, that some 'will multiply such a line of figures as

7685928165487938764

by 7, 8, or any other figure, in less than the *sixth part of a minute*. From such a line they will subtract another of the same length, in the ordinary way, in about *seven seconds*. In addition, they will sum up seven lines of eight figures each, in the ordinary way, in less than *one-third of a minute*, and, if allowed to perform the operation while the question is dictating, in about *three seconds*.'

This quickness is not the sole advantage, for they acquire with it an energy and promptness of action, and a quickness of mind, practically valuable at all times.

**Peculiar arrangement of addends to save teacher's time.** To save time, the master should work the question on a slate himself along with the class. This is better than waiting until the children have done, and then taking up a boy's slate and going over it.

In long questions in simple addition, some trouble is spared to the teacher, and greater accuracy is secured, by a peculiar arrangement of the addends, as shown in the following example:—

7854321	(1)
2145679	(2)
8568437	(3)
1431563	(4)
9245834	(5)
754166	(6)
8432936	(7)
1567064	(8)
3785649	(9)

The sums of lines (1) and (2), (3) and (4), (5) and (6), (7) and (8), are each a multiple of ten; the sum of the eight lines will therefore be expressed by seven ciphers having the figure 4

prefixed, the four representing half the number of rows added. If, therefore, we put any other addend (9), the sum of the whole will be expressed by the 4, as already found, followed by the figures of the new addend instead of the ciphers. Thus the sum in the example above is 43785649.

There is very little difficulty in making out the addends quickly: the teacher dictates to his class any number whatever, while at the same time he writes this number on the slate which he holds in his own hand. Row (2) is formed from it by subtracting the units figure from 10, and all the others from 9. This the teacher does on his own slate, and then dictates to the class. Row (3) is also any number whatever, and row (4) is formed from it in the same way that row (2) is formed from row (1). The other rows are formed in a similar way.

There are several ways of preventing the children from noticing the peculiar arrangement of the addends.

The first three or four rows may be any number selected; the subsequent rows being calculated from them by subtraction as above, while the row that is to constitute the answer may be placed anywhere among the addends. Or the answer may be still further disguised by making the general result depend on the sum of two or three independent addends. If, for instance, I added to the previous example the following additional rows:—

4501672 (10)

9876142 (11)

I should be obliged to add these to row (9) in order to find the general total. This, however, presents no difficulty. Other expedients will occur to most teachers so soon as they become acquainted with the principle involved. Some teachers have twenty addends calculated in this way written out on neat slips of cardboard, which they keep in a small box provided for the purpose. The sum of these being a multiple of ten, they can be given out in any order whatever, provided that the entire twenty are given out: additional addends must be given to prevent the sum from consisting of a series of ciphers; these can be of any number at the option of the teacher.

This is sometimes used to prevent pupils copying from each other, which they are very much inclined to do, in order to avoid the mental strain from the long totting. When this is the teacher's object, he may get each child to put down any number for the first line that the child likes. The teacher then dictates the remaining addends as before. The answer in each case will differ, and will be readily found by adding the top line to the

independent addend (9), put in by the teacher himself. This can be done with great ease and quickness.

This is easily applied to addition of money, thus:—

£583024 6s. 8½d. (1)

£416975 13s. 3¾d. (2)

Line (1) is any amount, as before; line (2) is formed from it by subtracting the farthing from a penny, the 8 from 11, the 6 from 19, and the others as in simple addition, except that the units figure is taken from 9 instead of from 10 as there required.

**Simple subtraction.** We have now treated of simple addition.

The next rule is *Simple Subtraction*. In this rule, as in the other, when the pupil knows the proper table, and its mental application, he has but to become master of two additional principles in order to be able to work any question correctly. He must first learn to arrange the numbers properly, and he must know when to 'borrow,' when to 'carry,' and when to do neither.

In addition, it was immaterial what arrangement of the addends was followed, provided always that units were placed under units, tens under tens, &c.; but in this rule the pupils will find it easier to place the numbers to be operated upon in a certain relative position. They should place the small number below the other. This the children will have no difficulty in understanding.

**Borrowing explained.** The principle of *borrowing* may be thus explained, but the explanation should be given of course only at proper times, and when the pupils are fully prepared to understand what is advanced. As a preparatory exercise, pupils should be accustomed to analyse numbers in the following way: 36, for instance, may be written 2(16), the 2 being in the *tens'* place, and the 16 in the *units'*. 349 may be written 2(14)9, the 14 occupying the second place, and representing 14 tens. The pupils should prove that these forms represent the same value exactly as the others. When they can do this correctly and intelligently, they should then be called upon to perform subtraction without 'borrowing,' by simply changing the upper line, in accordance with the models just shown. For instance, to take 198 from 349, they should represent the latter by its equivalent 2(14)9, and when arranged the figures will stand thus:—<sup>1</sup>

$$\begin{array}{r} 2 \text{ (14) } 9 \\ 1 \quad 9 \quad 8 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

and the subtraction will be '8 from 9 and 1,' '9 from 14 and 5,' '1 from 2 and 1,' giving 151 as the true difference.

<sup>1</sup> Some may prefer to decompose the number according to the fol-

lowing form:  $349 = 2 \frac{10}{4} 9$

It must now be explained that the only effect of the change—the reduction of the 3 to 2—was to lessen by *one* the figure of the answer placed below it, and this would equally have taken place had they increased the figure of the subtrahend by one, instead of diminishing to the same amount the figure of the minuend, for 2 from 3 will be exactly the same as 1 from 2.

A child will thus see that there are two methods of arriving at the answer. He should be accustomed to work the questions by both, until he can do so perfectly. He will then be in a position to understand that we reject one plan as being clumsy and awkward, and adopt the other as being free from these defects; that in both we decompose the numbers, but in the usual method of subtraction the change is imagined only, and not really performed.

**Test questions to be more searching.** The test questions on this rule ought to be more searching than they are. The following may be said to be the chief difficulties in simple subtraction: (1) Knowing when to carry; (2) when not to carry; (3) how to deal with ciphers in the minuend or subtrahend, or both; and (4) how to manage in the case of those figures to the left hand of the minuend which may have no corresponding figures in the subtrahend. When children begin to carry, they frequently continue carrying to the end; and when they meet with ciphers they generally *add* what is over instead of *subtracting* it; or else, which they do also in the case of the ending figures having none below them, they bring them down unchanged. Test questions should therefore contain these difficulties, and questions involving them should be given very frequently during the learning of this rule. Example:—

$$\begin{array}{r} 1004307016 \\ 10913408 \\ \hline \end{array}$$

Do not let the carrying and not carrying take place at regular intervals, for the children would soon see the regularity, and work in accordance with it.

**Defects in the working of this rule.** In the actual working of this rule the children should avoid expressions like this: '8 from 6 I cannot, but 8 from 16.' They should be required from the very first, to say '8 from 16' merely, omitting the rest.

**Multiplication.—It is of two kinds.** The next rule is Simple Multiplication. It may be divided into two kinds: (1) containing all questions where the multiplier is any number from 1 to 12 inclusive (the multiplication table in ordinary use not extending farther); and (2) all other questions.

**1st kind should scarcely require any special explanation.**

Any child who knows the tables well, and has acquired facility in 'carrying,' should find no difficulty whatever in solving all questions contained in class 1.

**How to teach the second class.** Class 2 should be commenced by solving questions whose multiplier consists of one significant figure with ciphers attached—as by 20, or 200, or 400, &c.—and this they should do by multiplying by the significant part only, and then affixing to the product the proper number of ciphers.

They should next learn to multiply by using the parts of the number which are formed by analysis—not the factors. Thus, to multiply by 496, they should multiply by 400, by 20, and by 6, and add the results together. They will then be in a position to understand the ordinary mode of multiplying; but instead of skipping a figure for each place in the multiplier, they should insert the ciphers.

Thus, to multiply 3246 by 422, the work should be as follows:—

$$\begin{array}{r}
 3246 \\
 422 \\
 \hline
 6492 \quad (1) \\
 64920 \quad (2) \\
 1298400 \quad (3) \\
 \hline
 1369812
 \end{array}$$

Line (1) being the product by 2; line (2) being the product by 20; and line (3) being the product by 400.

They will soon see that if the figures are put in their proper places, ciphers are useless, as they do not change the result in adding. And they will thus learn why the ciphers are omitted, and why one place or two places are skipped.

**Rule about 'skipping.'** With regard to 'skipping,' the best guide to the child is to tell him to place the first figure of the product immediately under the figure by which he multiplies. In the above example, the 2 in line (1) goes under the first 2 of the multiplier, the 2 in line (2) under the second 2 of the multiplier, while the 4 in line (3) goes under the 4 of the multiplier.

This rule is peculiarly good in dealing with ciphers. To lessen the chances of error in using it, the figures must be arranged units under units, tens under tens, &c. They ought not to be placed thus, as they too often are:—

$$\begin{array}{r}
 201 \\
 406 \\
 \hline
 \end{array}$$

**Children should know the value of the figure by which**

**they multiply.** In all cases the child should know the value of the figure by which he multiplies. He should know, for instance, that in the question above, although he simply multiplies by 4, he in reality is multiplying by 400. It is a good custom to make him, now and then, perform each multiplication separately, and then add the results for the product required. It is a good plan also to get the child to *read* the several separate products, and then to read their sum. Where this is not attended to, the child will invariably forget that the omitted ciphers should be taken into account in expressing the true value of the figures.

**Should carry what is over in the memory.** In this rule, as in addition, &c., he should bear in the mind the number to be carried. It is unseemly to be putting it down and rubbing it out every moment.

**May repeat what is carried.** In multiplying, he may be allowed to repeat the number to be carried, as it assists the memory. Thus, '9 times 8 are 72—carry 7' (putting down the 2), '9 times 3 are 27, and 7 are 34—carry 3,' &c.

**Division.—Factoring.** The last of the four simple rules is *Division*. With regard to it, teachers often err in allowing their pupils to employ Long Division, when, by the use of factors, they might judiciously shorten the work. Others, again, commit an equally grave error in insisting upon 'factoring' in the case of all composite numbers. The true plan is to divide by factors when *they are not numerous, and when they are easily discovered*. Thus, though 432 is made up of 6, 9, and 8, yet the time taken to discover this would be sufficient to do the question by long division; and again, though 3125 is made up of a series of fives, as the termination 25 shows, there would be so many divisions that factoring would be the most tedious course. Again, when factors are made use of, the children should be taught to express the remainders as decimals. It is very easy to show them how to do this, and the results are more correct and the work quicker.

**The connection between Long and Short Division.** The connection between Long and Short Division is scarcely ever perceived by children, or scarcely ever taught to them. On the contrary, they are practically led to look upon these two rules as entirely distinct from each other—as much so, in fact, as are the rules of Addition and Subtraction.

This error is best avoided by commencing Long Division with a small number as a divisor, such as 6, or 4, or 12; working the same question afterwards by Short Division, and then comparing the two processes.

Thus, supposing that we wished to divide thirty-four thousand

five hundred and eighty-eight by six, the work would stand thus by the process of Long Division :—

$$\begin{array}{r}
 6 \overline{)34588(5764} \\
 \underline{30} \phantom{00} \\
 45 \phantom{00} \\
 \underline{42} \phantom{00} \\
 38 \phantom{00} \\
 \underline{36} \phantom{00} \\
 28 \phantom{00} \\
 \underline{24} \phantom{00} \\
 4 \\
 \underline{6}
 \end{array}$$

while it would stand thus by the other process :—

$$\begin{array}{r}
 6 \overline{)34588} \\
 \underline{5764 \frac{4}{6}}
 \end{array}$$

**Both contain the same processes.** The latter process employs apparently, but only apparently, much fewer figures.

By Long Division we say 6 into 34 gives 5 (as in Short Division) and leaves 4. This 4 is *actually* put before the 5 in Long Division, while it is only *supposed to be* before it in Short Division; and so on with the other operations.

**Their differences.** It follows, therefore, that Short Division does not, as it seems to do, contain fewer processes than Long Division, or any different ones; the only differences between the two consisting in their appearance on the slate, and in the fact that the operations are chiefly mental in the one, while they are actually recorded in the other. The one rule is employed when the carrying and subtracting can be done mentally, the other when they cannot. And as the mind is more exercised in the one than in the other, it is a question whether it would not be found, by the child, to be easier to begin with Long Division than with short.

In this rule, as in multiplication, the children should be called upon to read each result; for instance, in the example in Long Division just given, they should know that the 30 is not in reality 30, but 30,000, &c., and that when multiplying by the 5 they were in reality multiplying by 5,000, the result being retained in its proper place without ciphers.

**Proof of rules necessary.** Children should be accustomed *occasionally* to *prove* their work, but only occasionally, and for this purpose they should be taught those methods which are neatest and best.

**Proofs of addition.** The best method of testing the accuracy

of the result in addition, is to add the numbers from top to bottom after adding them from bottom to top.

The method of cutting off the head-line is not so accurate, for there is no variation in the addends; and, therefore, if the error have been made between the bottom line and the second line from the top, it is likely to be made in the second addition also. This fault may be remedied by cutting off the low line instead of the top line, as this changes all the addends effectually; but even when thus made more reliable, it is not so neat as the first method, and if applied, it would, in many cases, disfigure the account.

The principles upon which these proofs depend can easily be made familiar to the children by employing small numbers at first, and verifying the results by actual counting.

**Proofs of subtraction.** There are two methods of proving subtraction; (1) by addition, (2) by subtraction; but inasmuch as the child is supposed to know the former rule better than the latter, the proof by it is the one generally selected as likely to lead to the truest results.

To test the result, the child may be told either (1) to add the two low lines; or (2) to subtract the bottom line from the top. If the result in each case be the same as the remaining line, the answer may be said to be correct. The terms *top line*, *low line*, &c., are preferable to the technical expressions *minuend*, *subtrahend*, *remainder*, especially with young children, as they are less likely to be misunderstood or misapplied. In proving this rule, it is not necessary for them to form a fourth line, as they frequently do; it is sufficient for them to compare each figure as they perform the process mentally.

**Principle upon which the proof rests.** The proof of this rule rests upon the fact, which they cannot fail to understand, that if what is taken away from anything (represented by the middle line) is added to what is left (represented by the low line), the whole (represented by the top line) will be again made up. In other words, if one gets back all he gave away, he will have what he had at first.

**Proofs of multiplication.** The proofs of multiplication are rather difficult, and some of them not sufficiently conclusive. The best available proof is by division, and the children should therefore postpone the testing of the results until they know that rule thoroughly.

**Division and multiplication ought to be taught together.** With regard to this, I may remark that, in my opinion, multiplication and division should be taught conjointly. Thus, after getting a child to multiply by 4, or by 2, &c., I might get him to divide by the same numbers. There are so many practical



advantages arising from the union of the two rules, both in the facility of proof, as mentioned above, and of explanation, &c., that it might be adopted very judiciously.

**Practical proof of division is by multiplication.** The practical proof of division is, of course, by multiplication; the true proof, however, is by subtraction, just as the true proof of multiplication is by addition. And, although in many cases the proof by subtraction cannot be resorted to at all, yet the children should occasionally be called upon to use it where practicable, so that they may fully understand the connection between the rules of subtraction and division.

**Rationale.—When to introduce it.** With regard to the *rationale* of arithmetic—or the full and regular explanation of each step in the several processes, some difference appears to exist both as to how far it should be carried and as to the time at which it should be commenced. Some insist upon a full explanation of every part of each rule from the beginning, and detain the pupils until this explanation is supposed to be fully mastered; while others neglect the *rationale* of each process almost entirely, paying attention chiefly to the mechanical manipulation. An examination of this question will show us that both are in error.

**Value of it.** The advantages arising from exposition of principles appear to be the following four: (1) To assist the child to some extent in the actual application of the rule: (2) To enable him to adopt concise processes, based upon these principles, whenever occasion offers; (3) To make the whole more permanent in the memory when actual practice has ceased; and (4) to strengthen and improve the mental powers generally. The last alone has a purely educational value. The others, though educational to a certain extent, are valuable chiefly in reference to the subject itself. It is with them, therefore, that we have chiefly to do when endeavouring to make our pupils proficient in *arithmetic*; and as the great tests of proficiency in it are *quickness*, *neatness*, and *correctness*, exposition of principles must be taught only in so far as they are necessary to secure these qualities or degrees of excellence. If we could secure them permanently without such exposition, there would be no *arithmetical* value whatever attached to it. But as we cannot secure these ends either so readily, so well, or so permanently by the mere adherence to stated rules and the imitation of model questions, we are forced to resort to reasons and fundamental explanations. Of course I am not now discussing the great mental advantages arising from demonstrations; I am referring solely to the arithmetical advantages which attend them.

In the case, therefore, of young children, the *rationale* of arithmetic should not be strictly enforced; (1) because their reasoning

powers are too imperfectly developed to deal clearly with a science so abstract; (2) because the objects sought for—correctness, quickness, permanency, &c.—are in their case secured by the constant daily practice in working questions which they possess, by the quickness of thought, and by the strength and vividness of memory with which nature at that period has endowed them, as if it were to counterbalance their deficiencies in judging and reasoning.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The following remarks upon the connection of theory and practice are extracted chiefly from the Minutes of Council, and will prove valuable to the teachers:—

Mr. Cook (1852-3, p. 386) says, 'There are two tendencies to be guarded against by school teachers. On the one hand, they are apt to give sums to be worked without previously taking care that the pupils understand the principles of the rule, or the mode of its application; on the other hand, they sometimes occupy all the time devoted to this subject in oral explanations and questions. The former was the more prevalent fault a few years since; it left the children apathetic and unintelligent, but not without a certain amount of mechanical dexterity in elementary rules, which is of great practical value to persons in their station of life. The latter is the more usual defect at present; if not carefully watched and checked, it is to be feared that many boys who appear to be conversant with abstruse principles will leave school without having acquired the habit of careful and independent calculation, or the ability to make out accurate accounts. A just mixture of intelligent explanation and practical application ought to be insisted upon by school managers.'

Dr. Morrell (1861-2, p. 130) says, 'The bare mechanical facility of dealing with figures is not to be despised, and is not always secured; but it would be more easily imparted and more surely retained, if it rested upon a better knowledge than it commonly does of the first elements.'

Mr. Fletcher (1846, vol. ii. p. 97) says, 'Briefness of time at school requires that the principles should be of easy application, that the pupils should have a technical use of num-

ber, as of language, *beyond* their conception of the *rationale* of the rules. *Art must lead science, but it must not leave science behind.'*

Mr. Thurtell (1847-8, vol. ii. p. 7) says, 'I am far from thinking that the reasons of the rules ought to be in all cases taught to young children with the rules themselves. The reverse order appears in general the proper one: first, to insure a familiarity with numbers, the symbols for them, and the mode of dealing with them, and to discuss the reasons for the *familiarised* operation. A teacher of knowledge and tact will, however, from the first make his instructions in a suitable measure intelligent.'

Mr. Currie, in his 'Common School Education,' states the case very clearly in the following words:—

'Arithmetic is one of the three branches which have always found a place in secular school instruction from their *instrumentary* character; i.e. from their having a distinctive value as instruments in the business of life apart from that which the acquisition of them may have as educative processes. The power of using these intelligently is of higher value than any acquaintance with them which is merely practical: yet, so far should we be from undervaluing the latter, that we must regard it as the *immediate* object of their being taught at all in school. In different ways and degrees, however, the study of these instruments may be made effective means of mental cultivation; and as this does not interfere with, but rather promotes, the attainment of practical skill, the teacher should consider at every step how this higher end may likewise be attained. The substance of what has been said, so far as regards arithmetic, is this: that the teaching of it should be carried

**Practice first, science afterwards.** In arithmetic, as in other cases, we must proceed from the known to the unknown—from the example to the rule. The true course appears to me to be this: secure quickness and correctness of manipulation at all hazards, *but while doing this impart as much explanation of principles as is fully within the comprehension of the class.* And at some future time, pointed out by their expertness in actual work, by their advance in years, and general knowledge, introduce them regularly to the study of all reasons and proofs, as they will then be in a position to understand fully and with ease what no amount of illustration could have rendered clear or practically available before.

**Use of rule must be explained before the practice.** This

on with two ends in view, a special and a general; the one to give the pupil skill in computation, the other to strengthen the powers of his mind. The two, though distinct, must be aimed at simultaneously; the one aiding, and testing the attainment of, the other. If the teacher keep in view the special end alone, he may enable the pupil to make a good appearance under a superficial examination, and fit him in a certain sense for entering on business, but he neglects the opportunity of enlarging his mind, and thereby of fitting him for a more influential position in business: if he allow the general end to engross him too much, by failing to impress facility in using definite modes of procedure amidst the profusion of his exposition, he may injure the pupil's prospects, whilst he will certainly discredit his own method.

'In every numerical process there are two things to be apprehended: the rule which directs it, and the theory of which that rule is the expression. Both are necessary, and each should be taught with reference to the other; the theory with a view to the rule, the rule as founded on the theory. And it is as much an exercise of intelligence to carry out the theory to the rule, as it is to trace the rule back to the theory. In expounding any process, the teacher should first of all lay before his pupils some familiar examples, from which they may be led to see the object of the process, and by analysis of which they may infer the elementary numerical operations which must be

combined to attain that object. When they can account for all the steps of the combination, they know the theory of the process. The principle of teaching here assumed is identical with that already insisted on in the case of the other two instrumentary branches of reading and writing (§ 843). It enters into the very idea of teaching arithmetic intelligently that the pupils study the theory of the processes; but here, as elsewhere, the theory must be derived from the practice, the general from the particular, the unknown from the known. And this is what is done when the teacher first submits examples to his pupils within their experience, and, leading them to see what operations are required in these special cases, carries them along with him in evolving therefrom the procedure in the general case. When the theory has been reached and impressed by a sufficiently wide induction of examples, it remains for him to show them how its conclusions may be embodied in a short handy formula for practical working, i.e. to extract a convenient rule from it. In passing on to which he must be careful to compare the full form of working necessary to reach the theory of the process with the shortened form of working directed by the rule: that they may see that the latter is not anything new or arbitrary, but either only a different setting down of the process for convenience' sake, or a shortened form in which certain ellipses of operation must be carried along in the mind of the operator.'

does not, however, refer to any explanations necessary to make the pupils understand the *use* of each rule. For in every case the children should know what it is they are actually seeking, before they begin to seek for it—what it is they hope to arrive at by the processes they perform—and therefore the *use* of each rule must be explained before the actual work, or at least conjointly with it, from the beginning. This is done not by the explanation of definitions or of technical terms, but by getting the children to apply the rule to such easy numbers as will allow of a verification of results by a reference to sensible objects. In *addition*, for instance, the addends should be at first small. Thus, 3 and 2 and 7 make, when *added* together, 12. And of the truth of this the child can satisfy himself by a reference to books, slates, children, marbles, &c. When the addends are gradually extended, until at last the results cannot be conveniently tested, the child will still feel, that if he could test them, they would prove correct, and will see that by this rule he is enabled to tell *without actual counting* how many any number of objects would amount to if the separate groups were thrown into one. When asked, ‘What is the *sum* of so and so?’ he will soon be able to perceive that he is merely asked, ‘How many objects (units) would there be were they all counted together?’ He thus learns what the *use* of the rule really is; and is made familiar with the leading fact in addition, that the result is a number equal in value to all the numbers added, that is, that it contains as many units as all the others, and that it contains no more. The terms ‘added together’ and ‘sum’ do not appear technical, owing to their very frequent use in common conversation, but they are in reality technical, and very few children really understand them unless they are explained as above.

The *use* of the other rules can be explained in the same way. Nor will this present any difficulty to children, especially to those taught the composition of the tables upon the principle already explained by me. Teachers should not confound explanations of terms with explanations of *processes*, *principles*, and *uses* of the rules. They are essentially distinct.

**Style of explanation.** They should also take care to convey their explanations in all cases briefly, and in correct and precise words, remembering that lecturing fatigues and produces inattention, and that a command of an easy, familiar, and exact language, with a power of illustration suited to young children, is essentially necessary to success. In dealing with explanations of processes, remember that many children work by model examples, even after explanations have been given by the teacher and correctly understood. They have a tendency to forget the theory, and to recur to the way in which the rules were first

learned. This can only be checked by a constant reference to it; and as time will not sometimes allow of this in the ordinary way, it will sometimes be found advisable to take up each rule, and without actually working the questions, make the pupils explain how they ought to be worked, and account for each step fully. This can be done as often as seems necessary.

**Teachers should test their own work.** Before concluding my remarks upon the Simple Rules, I may suggest, for the guidance of the teacher not only here but upon other matters, that he should occasionally drop his own peculiar functions and take up those of an examiner or inspector. He should try his children by proper test questions, to see how much they really know of what he has taught them, and how far they are able to make use of their knowledge.

**Test questions should not give a clue to the rules.** In arithmetic, these test questions, in addition to those usually given, should be so framed as to afford no hint from their phraseology either as to what rule they come under, or as to how the application of the rule ought to be effected. There should always be a margin to exercise the child's ingenuity, for by this means alone is the test sufficiently searching. Besides, by such questions the mind of the child is improved, while the pleasure he experiences at success encourages him to proceed.

**Examples.** The following are examples of such questions upon the Simple Rules:—

1. I had 500 apples, and I got 50; how many had I then?
2. A man puts into a bank £600, £780, and £950; how much money did the banker receive in all from him?
3. One boy had 10 marbles, another 12, another 14; how many had they among them?
4. Four cows gave the following quantities of milk: the 1st, 10 quarts daily; the 2nd, 12 quarts; the 3rd, as much as both the others; the 4th, 10 in the morning and 8 in the evening. How many quarts did all give?
5. A man made his will as follows: to his wife he left £3,026; to each of his three younger children, £509; the rest of his property in three equal shares between his two daughters and eldest son; the eldest son's share was £620 more than the wife's share; how much money did the man die worth?

Such questions may be varied in many ways.

6. By how much is 30401 greater than 4006?
7. I had 4,600 pears, and gave away 209; how many had I remaining?
8. 1,000 persons travelled in a train; 50 in 1st class, 21 in 2nd; how many travelled in 3rd?

9. In a school there are 84 children, of whom 52 are boys; how many girls are there?

10. A boy got 30 pennies; he gave 12 pennies for books, 8 pennies for paper, and lost 6 pennies; how many had he at last?

11. A horse and car together are worth £100; the horse is worth £75; how much is he worth more than the car?

The words *add* and *subtract* being omitted because they suggest the rule. The same principle applies to the rules of multiplication and division. Thus:—

12. Pat gave James 8 cows worth £12 each for 5 horses worth £18 each; how many pounds did he lose?

13. One boy buys 9 and another buys 11 apples for one penny; how many can the latter buy more than the former for 6 pence?

14. A man buys in separate lots 12, 4, and 7 acres of land at £30 each acre, and sells the first two lots at £40 the acre, and the last at £15 per acre; how much does he gain or lose?

15. How much is 12 dozen and 8 more than 8 dozen and 12?

16. Two men start for the same place at the same time, and travel in the same direction, one at the rate of 4 miles an hour, the other at the rate of 3 miles; how far will they be apart at the end of a week, walking eight hours a day, except Sunday?

17. If at the end of the fourth day the second man turns back, and travels at the same rate, how far will they be apart at the end of the week?

18. A boy spent 30 pence in oranges, buying them at the rate of 6 for 3 pence; how many did he buy?

19. If 5 men can do a piece of work in 12 days, how long will it take 6 men?

20. A woman bought 12 hens at 14 pence each, and sold them so as to gain 100 pence; what did she sell each for?

21. A school of 132 children contains 4 more boys than girls; find how many girls.

22. How many knives worth 10 pence each ought to be exchanged for 4 gross of holders at 5 pence per dozen?

**Examples of questions on one rule in terms of another.** It is a good plan to ask questions in one rule in terms of another. Thus:—

What number should be *added* to 420 to make it equal to 781?

If 980 be put down twelve times and *added*, what will be the result?

How often can 82 be *subtracted* from 9060?

What number besides 11 can be *subtracted* from 3344 continually, without leaving a remainder?

What number multiplied by 79 will give the same result as 257 multiplied by 553?

What number should be added to 440 to make it exactly divisible by 12 ?

What number subtracted 28 times from 479632 will leave 20 as remainder ?

Of course, the same kind of questions here given can be applied to the Compound as well as to the Simple Rules, by using quantities of different denominations.

**Master should make questions for them when on the floor.** When pupils are in desks, they can depend upon the questions contained in their text-books, but when on the floor they should solve questions chiefly of the master's own framing—questions designed not only to *teach* arithmetic, but to *test* the teaching. The master should therefore acquire the habit of framing the questions quickly, and of joining them skilfully with the everyday life of his pupils, so that he may endow arithmetic from the commencement with a life and purpose intelligible to the children, and thus obtain for it a ready acceptance. To see a master continually appealing to his arithmetic, when he is teaching a class on the floor, creates a bad impression. At that time the use of books should be discontinued.

Dean Dawes, in his 'Hints,' advocates the use of questions of this kind: to that work I refer teachers for some valuable suggestions, and for some neat examples of the questions themselves.

#### COMPOUND RULES AND REDUCTION.

**Exact agreement with Simple Rules to be pointed out, and also the new element in each.** The remaining parts of arithmetic are but different applications of the principles and rules treated of in the preceding pages. Hence we learn two things, (1) the importance of making pupils thoroughly familiar with those at the outset, and (2) that of showing the peculiar connection existing between them and each new rule.

Each of the advanced rules resembles some one of the Simple Rules, but each has an element peculiar to itself. Good teaching requires, therefore, that with every new rule the child should clearly see (1) its exact agreement with the Simple Rules, and (2) when the difference begins and in what it consists.

**Connection between Simple and Compound Rules explained.** So far as the Compound Rules are concerned, this is easy. Let us find, for example, the sum of £66 14s. 8d., £15 13s. 9d., and £10 2s. 6d., employing, however, the rule of Simple Addition only. The work will stand thus:—

£	s.	d.
66	14	8
15	13	9
10	2	6
91	29	23

The result being £91 29s. and 23d.

Twenty-three pence consists of one shilling and eleven pence; and, therefore, £91 29s. and 23d. can be expressed £91 30s. and 11d.; and, again, as thirty shillings is equivalent to £1 and 10s., the same amount may be expressed £92 10s. 11d.

**The reduction is the new element in Compound Rules.**

We thus see that until we commence the reduction of the pence to shillings, and of the shillings to pounds, we employ the Simple Rules only. This reduction is, therefore, the new element, and it is to it, of course, that the child's attention should be chiefly directed. He should know how to perform it expeditiously and correctly, and also why he performs it.

The 'why' is clearly to comply with the usual and convenient method of speech employed when speaking of money; and to secure correctness the child may at first be allowed to express the equivalents on the slate according to the following method:—

£	s.	d.
66	14	8
15	13	9
10	2	6
91	29	23
	1	11
1	9	0
£92	10	11

The 23 is scored out, and 1s. 11d. put for it; the 29 is then scored out, and its equivalent substituted; and the whole is added together to produce £92 10s. 11d. But the sooner the child begins to perform the operation mentally, the sooner will he acquire the necessary quickness.

**Why called Compound Rules.** Compound Rules thus consist of two or more questions in Simple Rules, and it is from this fact that they are so called. Decimal coinage, and decimal weights, &c., would get rid altogether of Compound Rules, as in decimals the reduction is already made.

**Instructions applying specially to Compound Rules.—**

**1. How to divide by 20.** All my remarks upon quickness, neatness, mechanical aids, proofs, &c., apply to the Compound Rules equally as to the Simple Rules. It is only necessary to



add, (1) that in totting the shillings' column it is better to add the units by themselves, placing the units of the sum down as in simple addition, and then to add up the tens, dividing the result by *two*, putting down what is over, if anything, than to add all into one sum and find how many pounds are in it.

**2. Do not repeat the farthings.** (2) In adding farthings, it is incorrect to repeat the word *farthings* often, as is the usual custom; thus, instead of saying, for instance, 'three farthings and one farthing are four farthings, and two farthings are six farthings,' we should say simply, 'three and one are four, and two are six farthings.'

**3. Avoid long division in dividing by small numbers.** (3) In dividing by small numbers, such as 9 or 12, Long Division is not to be employed. This appears an unnecessary caution, but the fact is that Long Division is almost universally employed in such cases instead of Short Division.

Suppose, for instance, it was required to divide £119 19s. 11d. by 12. The way usually met with is as follows: The child says '12 into 119 gives 9, and 11 over.' The 9 he puts down under the pounds, and the 11 he places in some other part of the slate, multiplying it by 20, adding 19 to the product, and dividing the result by 12. By these operations he gets 19, and 11 over. The 19 he puts under the shillings, and the 11 he writes in some part of the slate to be multiplied and divided as before. He rubs out the portions not required, and retains the results merely. But this is not Short Division, for, as has been already explained, the operations of Short Division are mental. It is in reality Long Division, as is easily seen by comparing the parts rubbed out with the several portions of the work when actually performed by that rule; but it is the worst form of Long Division, for it is devoid of regular arrangement.

**Cause of this error.** Children are induced to perform the questions thus from the difficulty they experience in multiplying by 20, and in dividing the products so obtained, when large. The best way to remedy this is to teach them to divide somewhat as follows:—

**How to avoid it.** (1) 12 into 119, 9 times and 11 over; put down the 9 only.

(2) 11 times 20 are 220 (11 times 2 being 22), and 19 are 239. Thus far they will readily go.

(3) Instead of saying '12 into 239,' teach them to say '12 into 23,' putting down the 1 in its proper place, and then '12 into 119,' placing the 9 of the quotient beside the 1, giving as a result 19 shillings, with 11 over, &c.

Practice will make them perfect at this; but in order that they

may be induced to practise it, the master should at first cause them to hold their slates in such a position that he can see what they write upon them.

**Reduction.** The rule of *Reduction* can present but little difficulty if the pupils know the tables thoroughly. I would merely suggest that in the earlier exercises, they should reduce each part separately, and then add them, to form the true answer. Thus, suppose it were required to bring £30 15s. 6d. to pence, it would be better to bring the £30 to pence first, then the 15s., and to add the results to the 6d.

In Reduction there are two things which the children have to consider: (1) whether they ought to multiply or divide; and (2) by what? The first will be decided by the nature of the question—whether it be required to change the name to a higher name, or to a lower—and the second by the *tables*. If I want to bring 3 cwt. to qrs. I must *multiply*, because the name is lower; and I must multiply by 4, in preference to 6, 7, or any other number, because there being 4 qrs. in 1 cwt., there will be four times as many *qrs.* as there are *cwts.*

All changes in *Reduction* are in form and not in value, and therefore the terms *multiply* and *divide* are used peculiarly in this rule. This peculiarity will require the master's explanation.

**Proficiency required in Compound Rules.** To entitle a child to pass as knowing the Compound Rules and Reduction, he should be able to explain the terms employed, and to answer test questions similar to those given under the head of Simple Rules; as, for instance—how often can I take 4s. 8d. from £12 6s. 7d.?

If 12 cows cost £400 16s. 8d., how much did one cost?

Three men lodge £500 6s. 8d. in a bank; one man gets one share of it, another two shares, and the other three; how much did each get?

The following coins were obtained at a collection: 3 sovereigns, 5 half-sovereigns, 44 crowns, 7 half-crowns, 19 florins, 16 shillings, 88 sixpences, 72 fourpenny-pieces, 15 pence, and 101 halfpence; how many pounds, shillings, and pence in all?

A shopkeeper buys tea at £4 10s. 6d., sugar at £5 19s. 8½d., coffee at £3 12s. 9¾d.; what must he charge so as to gain on the whole £25 15s. 11¾d.?

In making out a bill, he copied 5s. 3d. for £5 3s., and 12s. 6d. for £12 6s.; by how much was the bill in error?

In another bill, he had the following items: £5 16s. 4½d., £18 19s. 3¾d., £12 14s. 2d., £7 15s. 1½d., which he represented as amounting to £61 15s. 3d.; by how much was he wrong?

John, who has 5s., gives Pat 10½d., and Fred. 1s. 6d.; but he

gets back from Pat 4s. 6d., and from Fred 3s. 6½d. less than he got from Pat; how much has he?

I sell a cow for £12 to a man who can only pay 6s. 5½d. in the pound; how much do I lose?

My house is rated at £36, and I pay in taxes £7 6s. 8d.; how much is this per pound? (This question may be reversed.)

My income is £520; how much can I spend daily so as to save £140 16s. 8d.?

The rate of income-tax was formerly 7d. per pound, it is now 4d.; what was the income of a man who saved by the change £56 5s. 9d.?

Eight persons visited the gardens; 3 of them spent £1 2s. 6d. each, and five of them spent on an average 12s. 1d.; how much did all spend, and how much did the three spend more or less than the five?

I bought a horse and cow for £42 12s. 6½d.; the price of the horse was double that of the cow; what was the price of each?

Divide £5 15s. 7d. amongst three persons, so that the first shall receive 5s. more than the second, and 6s. more than the third.

Divide £12 8s. 9d. between five men and four boys, giving to each of the men six times as much as to each of the boys.

The rent of a farm of six acres is £20 10s.; what is the rent per acre?

If 1,771 roubles are equal to 378 napoleons, and each napoleon equal to 15s. 9¼d., what is the value of a rouble?

I employ three times as many men as women; the wages of the men are 3s. 6d. each, and of the women 1s. 6d. each; the weekly wages amount to £40; how many men and how many women do I employ?

Among how many children can I distribute £20 6s. 2d., giving to each a half-crown, a florin, and a fourpenny-piece?

Among how many can I distribute to each a pie, and three buns, for £15 2s. 6d., the cost of the pie being 3d., and of the bun 1d.?

If a family consume 4lbs. of tea in fifty weeks, what is the average daily consumption?

If they consume ½ lb. in the first week, and 3 lbs. in the last, what is the average weekly consumption for the other weeks?

A hoop is 5 yards round; how many times will it turn in passing over 3 miles?

How many miles will it pass over in 5,430,260 turns?

A child cut 4 yards 7 inches off a piece of cord 6 yards long; how much did the part cut off exceed the part left?

If telegraphic posts be placed one chain apart, how many will there be from Sligo to Dublin, distance being 185 miles?

The fore wheel of a vehicle is 3 ft. 5 in. round, and the hind wheel 1 ft. 2 in. more; how many more turns will the former make than the latter in the distance of 15 miles?

Twenty-six miles 3 fur. 15 per. 7 yards of a road being kept in repair by 15 men, how much has each to keep in order, supposing all equal?

A person buys 5 pipes of wine, and mixes 2 quarts of water with every 3 gallons of wine; how many gallons will he have to sell?

A publican bought 50 gallons, at 15s. 6d. per gallon, and added  $2\frac{1}{2}$  gallons of water; what was the total gain in retailing the mixture at  $5\frac{1}{2}$ d. per gill?

A bottle of porter holds half a pint; how many dozens could be bottled out of a hogshead?

How many dozen bottles, each containing  $1\frac{1}{4}$  pint, can be filled with 3 pipes of wine?

How long will a pipe of wine last a man who drinks a pint daily?

What will a man have saved if instead of drinking a pint of beer daily for a year, he puts the money in a bank, the price of a quart being 4d.?

One farm produced 15 times more oats than another; both farms produced 51,276 bushels; how much did each produce?

A pint holds 8,000 barleycorns; how far would they reach if placed one after the other in a straight line?

A man undertakes to count, without ceasing, 300,000 shillings, promising to pay  $\frac{1}{4}$ d. for every shilling he would fail to count. At the end of 36 hours he gave up the task, having counted at the rate of 100 per minute during that time; how much had he to pay?

Two boats start together in a race; one gains 5 ft. in every 55 yards; how far were they asunder at the end of a race of half a mile?

A compositor sets up 8,500 letters per day, and gets  $5\frac{1}{2}$ d. per 1,000; what does he earn per week of 6 days?

A soldier walks three steps in every two seconds, and the length of each step is  $2\frac{1}{4}$  ft.; how far could he walk from 9.30' A.M. to 3.15' P.M.?

The indication of a gas meter was 155,300 feet on the 1st of January, and at the end of the quarter it stood at 168,400 feet; what was the amount of the gas bill at 6s. 3d. per thousand?

A party having to pay a bill of £12 7s.  $1\frac{1}{2}$ d., one pays for himself and three others £5 9s. 10d.; how many were in the company, each paying the same amount?

If my watch gains, and my friend's loses, 6 seconds each day,

and both mark the true time at 1 o'clock on a certain day, what will be the difference of time between them at 11 o'clock in four weeks, and what time will each watch mark?

A school is open 5 days in the week for 4 hours daily; how much time will a boy waste in a year who is idle for 5 minutes each hour of school business?

I get up each morning at 7.50' o'clock, and go to bed at 10.15' o'clock; how much less time do I spend in bed than one who rises at 9.20', and goes to bed at 9.40' o'clock?

From Dublin to Sligo per rail is 135 miles; the mid-day mail train leaves at 11.15 A.M., making 20 stoppages at stations on the journey with an average delay of  $4\frac{1}{2}$  minutes at each. What time will the train arrive in Dublin, the average speed when in motion being 30 miles per hour?

In such cases the child's ingenuity is taxed to find out whether he should multiply or divide, add or subtract; and it is by the decision at which he arrives that his *real* knowledge of arithmetic must be judged.

**Long sums.** In most examinations for Civil Service appointments at present, one test is the quickness with which candidates can tot up long sums in Compound Addition. The children should be frequently exercised on such questions, the proper steps to secure rapidity, as already explained, being strictly carried out.

#### PROPORTION.

**Rule of Proportion, what it is.** Proportion in arithmetic, or the Rule of Three, is the application of the previous rules to the discovery of a number, which shall have a *given relation* to another. In this rule the numerical value of the relation, or ratio, is not expressly stated; it is merely said to be the same as that which exists between two given numbers. Thus, instead of asking, 'How much is *three* times twelve?' the question is put in Proportion thus: 'Find a number which shall have the same relation to 12 that 3 has to 1, or 6 to 2, &c.?' The first is a mere question in Simple Multiplication, the second is a question in *Proportion*, but they come to the same thing exactly.

**New element in Proportion.** The new element in Proportion, therefore, is to *find the multiplier*, for when this is found the question is reduced to the Simple or Compound Rules.

*The multiplier is always the reciprocal of the value of the ratio.* To find the multiplier, we must, therefore, be able to find the value of the ratio. Nothing, however, is easier. We have merely to divide the first term of the ratio by the second. Thus the value

of the ratio of 2 to 8 is 2 divided by 8, or  $\frac{1}{4}$ , and of 8 to 2 is 8 divided by 2, or 4.

If the previous question were worded somewhat thus, what I have said might be more clearly perceived :—

‘Find a number which is as many times greater than 12, as 6 is greater than 2.’ To solve this it is clearly necessary to find how many times 6 is greater than 2; and this is clearly but a question in Simple Division; 6 divided into 2 gives 3 for the number of times. The question, therefore, stands thus: ‘Find a number which shall be 3 times greater than 12;’ which is, of course, an easy question in multiplication. The exact difference between Multiplication and Proportion is, that in the prior rule the multiplier is actually given, whereas in the latter the elements only for finding it are given.

**Why ‘statement’ is required.** As those elements are, however, sometimes so placed in the question that they are not immediately detected, it is necessary first to discover them. The rules which guide us in this matter refer to what is technically called the *statement* of the question, or *the just and orderly arrangement of the terms to be operated on.*

**Rules of ‘statement.’** They are as follows :—

(1) Put in the right-hand corner of the slate that term which is of the same name as the term required.

(2) Place the *greater* of the two remaining terms to the left of it when the required term should be *greater* than that already placed, and put the *less* term in that place when the *reverse* is the case.

(3) Put the remaining term to the left of that.

The term to the right hand is technically said to be in the *third* place (though *first* placed), that in the middle is said to be in the *second* place, and the other in the *first*. It is usual to separate the first term from the second by two dots, and the second from the third by four dots; but so far as the actual working of the rule goes, any other division would be quite as good. These marks are used in reference to the *theory* of proportion, and are convenient when treating of it. We should be guided in stating a question solely by these rules: All mechanical forms founded on forms of expression, such as ‘How much,’ ‘What will,’ &c., should be avoided.

The object of the above rules is simply to find out what term should be first, and what second, so that the true multiplier can be discovered. We proceed first by eliminating one term, which is called the third, and by this we find what terms should occupy the other two places, but we do not yet discover which of the two should go first or second. The next two steps clear up this

difficulty. The position of the third term is not material, so far as the working of a question in arithmetic goes; but to the right of the others is found to be the best place, as it is its true place among the four proportionals.

**When 'statement' is uncalled for.** Whenever the first two terms and their proper order are easily detected, it is obvious, from the above remarks, that there is scarcely any necessity for a formal statement. Questions like the following: 'If one article cost £12 6s. 8d. what will 10 cost?' 'If eleven articles cost £14 6s. 8d. what will one cost?' are mere questions in Compound Rules. To make a regular statement before solving them, is waste of time. In fact, such questions should never occur under the rule of Proportion in a proper work on arithmetic.<sup>1</sup>

In many other cases, also, statement will be found unnecessary, as the pupils will be able to change the questions by reasoning on the terms, so as to bring them into the Compound Rules.

Thus, 'If 6 yards cost 24s. how much will 11 cost?' The pupil should learn to deal with this as two questions in Compound Rules. (1) If 6 yards cost 24s., what will 1 yard cost? (2) If 1 yard cost 4s. [the answer to question (1)] what will 11 yards cost? He will do this readily and correctly after a little time.

Or, he may say, 'If 6 yards cost 24s. then 11 times 6 costs 11 times 24s. or 264s. Then, if  $11 \times 6$  costs 264s., 11 itself must cost one-sixth of this?'<sup>2</sup>

**An additional process sometimes necessary before the true multiplier is found.** In some cases, before the multiplier can be found, a process in addition to the 'statement' is necessary. When the terms found are not of the one name, we must bring them to it. This is clearly necessary; for how could I tell, for instance, how many times £1 is greater than 2d., unless I brought both to pence, &c.; and unless I could tell this, I could not find, as already explained, the true multiplier.

**Sometimes difficult to deal with the multiplier, hence other rules.** It also happens sometimes that it is difficult to deal with the multiplier thus found, and plans have been adopted to get rid of the difficulty. These, however, do not in any way change the real nature of the rule.

**1. Fractional multiplier.** The chief of these consists in employing the fractional division instead of the actual quotient; thus, 'If 5 tons cost £10 10s. 5d. what will 7 cost?' The true multiplier is clearly  $1\frac{2}{5}$ ; but as this is somewhat troublesome to deal with, we multiply by  $\frac{7}{5}$  in its place.

<sup>1</sup> See McLeod's Solutions of Questions by First Principles.

<sup>2</sup> Min. of Council, 1845-6, vol. ii.

p. 80, note \*; and 1847-8, vol. i. p. 6, note †.

**2. Finding the price of one, then of the given number.** Another method consists in finding first the price of one article, and then of the required number.

Thus, to solve the above question we find the price of one article by dividing by 5, and then of 7 by multiplying this quotient by 7. As, for instance:—

Cost of 5 tons = £10 10 5

„ 1 ton =  $\frac{£10\ 10\ 5}{5}$  = £2 2 1

„ 7 tons = cost of 1 ton multiplied by 7 = £2 2 1  $\times$  7  
= £14 14 7

This is clearly but another form of No. 1, as it is but another way of multiplying by the fraction  $\frac{1}{5}$ .

**3. Ordinary plan of multiplying by second term and dividing by the first.** The ordinary rule of multiplying the third term by the second, and dividing by the first, is also clearly nothing but an example of No. 1.

**Examples by each method.** The work by each of the ways would be as follows:—

By the *general* method.

$$\begin{array}{r} £\ s.\ d. \\ 10\ 10\ 5 \times 1\frac{2}{5} \\ \hline 1\frac{2}{5} \\ \hline 10\ 10\ 5 \text{ (product by 1).} \\ 5)21\ 0\ 10 \\ \hline 4\ 4\ 2 \text{ (product by } \frac{2}{5}). \\ \hline £14\ 14\ 7 \text{ (sum of products).} \end{array}$$

By variation 1.

$$\begin{array}{r} £\ s.\ d. \\ 10\ 10\ 5 \\ \hline 7 \\ \hline 5)73\ 12\ 11 \\ \hline 14\ 14\ 7 \end{array}$$

By variation 2.

$$\begin{array}{r} £\ s.\ d. \\ 5)10\ 10\ 5 \\ \hline 2\ 2\ 1 \\ \hline 7 \\ \hline £14\ 14\ 7 \end{array}$$

By variation 3.

Same as variation 1.

That by variation 2 is clearly the simplest. The figures are smaller, and the work will therefore be not only more quickly executed, but more correctly also. This should be made use of, therefore, wherever practicable, in preference to any of the others.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See on this subject, Mr. Moseley's Report, Min. of Council, 1846–6, vol. ii. note to p. 80; and again, 1847, vol. i. note to p. 6.



**Two processes adopted to make the multiplication more easy.** In working by the ordinary rule, there are two processes which are sometimes made use of that render the work more easy and expeditious, but they are adopted solely for this purpose, and are therefore by no means essentials of the rule itself. I mean the 'reduction of the third term,' and 'cancelling.' Take such a question as this: If 346 sheep cost £100 12s. 8d. what will 4,004 cost? To multiply £100 12s. 8d. by 4,004 would take too many factors. It is therefore much better to reduce the money to pence and multiply by simple rules; but in many other questions it is by no means required, or correct to do so. I regret to find, however, that it is almost universally gone through, and therefore, of course, it is adopted, in many cases, very absurdly and thoughtlessly. The fact is, that when the first and second terms are small—easy to use in multiplication or division—the reduction of the third term is a waste of time. Thus, to solve the question, if 5 cows cost £10 10s. 5d. how much will 11 cost? how very absurd it is to go through the following work:—

Cows. Cows.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 5 : 11 :: £10 \ 10 \ 5 \\
 \underline{20} \\
 210 \\
 \underline{12} \\
 2525 \\
 \underline{11} \\
 5)27775 \\
 \underline{12)5555} \\
 2,0(46,2 \ 11 \\
 \underline{£23 \ 2 \ 11}
 \end{array}$$

when the same result can be found by simply multiplying by 11 and dividing by 5, as thus:—

$$\begin{array}{r}
 £10 \ 10 \ 5 \\
 \underline{11} \\
 5)115 \ 14 \ 7 \\
 \underline{£23 \ 2 \ 11}
 \end{array}$$

And not only more simply and more quickly, but also more correctly, for the less the number of figures the smaller is the chance of error.

**What cancelling is.** The second process is called 'cancelling,' and consists in reducing the terms to smaller ones by dividing in

accordance with certain rules. We can cancel any multiplier with any divisor, but not two multipliers with each other. We cannot cancel the third term with the second, but we can cancel any other pair of terms. This depends upon the nature of fractions, and can be easily explained to children. The chief thing to convince them of is, that no change is made in the value of the real multiplier.

**When it should not be adopted, even if possible.** Cancelling should not always be resorted to, even when possible. The division must be *evident*, else it would be more expeditious to avoid cancelling altogether. Thus, if the numbers are 4 and 8, 3 and 9, 9 and 27, the advantage of cancelling is manifest; but if the numbers are 182 and 195, no cancelling should take place, for although both are divisible by 13, yet it would take more time to discover this than to actually multiply and divide by them. In fact, as the object of the process is to save time, it ought only to be adopted when that object can be secured—indeed, not only ought it to be adopted then, but it is wrong to neglect it; but when its adoption is likely to cause delay, it is equally wrong to put it in force.

**The result.** When the third term has been multiplied by the second, and divided by the first, we get a result which has the same name as the third term if not reduced, or has the name to which it was reduced. When we do reduce the third term during the working of the question, the answer is generally reduced again to agree with the denominations which that term originally possessed, but this is only necessary when usage requires a particular form of expression.

**Summary of rules.** The rules, as now stated, may be thus summed up:—

1. State the question.
2. Reduce the first and second terms to the same name, if they are not already so.
3. Reduce the third term if it consists of different denominations, *and if at the same time the other terms are large.*
4. Cancel.
5. Multiply the third by the second, and divide by the first.
6. Reduce the result to the terms required by common usage.

**Remarks on these.** And with regard to these, we may thus sum up what has already been advanced:

1. Statement is not always necessary, and should not be used in many questions in which it is now customary to use it.
2. The reduction of the third term, when the first and second are small, is incorrect in theory, and productive of error in results.
3. Cancelling to be advantageous must be apparent.

4. The third term may be divided often by the first before being multiplied by the second, and this method is in general easier than any other.

5. The result needs reducing only when usage requires a different form of expression.

**Proof of this rule.** The ordinary *proof* of proportion consists in multiplying the answer by the first term, and testing whether the product thus obtained is the same as that already obtained by multiplying the third by the second. This is not a good test of correctness, for if the division by the first term be correct, the product of it and the fourth will be the same as the product already found of the third and second, no matter how incorrect that product may be. The best proof is to divide the first by the second, and the third by the fourth; and if the quotients agree, the work is true.

**Theory of proportion.** Up till this time I have kept as much as possible from the theory of proportion: I have treated the subject chiefly as a mere arithmetical rule, labouring to show its connection with multiplication (of which it is a variation), and by what means the results ought to be arrived at; but to understand the rule fully, and the reasons of several of the processes, it is necessary to know the theory of proportion.

**Proportion deals with ratios.** To understand it, therefore, we must clearly understand what is meant by ratio. Ratio is the relation which exists between two numbers of *the same kind*. The parts in italics are important, though generally left out by many persons when called upon to define this term. Hence, if two terms are placed together of different names, no *ratio* can exist between them, even if the sign of the ratio be used. It is on this account that, in 'stating' the question, we place the terms in such a way that the first and second should be of one name, and the third and fourth.

**In talking of ratio, we are merely talking of a fraction.** We should never forget that in talking of *ratio* we are really talking of a *fraction*. When we say, for instance, the ratio of 3 to 4, we really are speaking of the fraction  $\frac{3}{4}$ . Again, when we say that one *ratio* is equal to another, we merely say that one *fraction* is equal to another. As, for instance, when we say that the ratio of 3 to 4 is equal to the ratio of 6 to 8, all that in reality we assert is, that the fraction  $\frac{3}{4}$  is equal to the fraction  $\frac{6}{8}$ ; a statement which can be easily verified by anyone who has already learned Fractions. When this is not clearly borne in mind, the nature of proportion is unintelligible.

**Definition of proportion.** Proportion is defined as the equality of ratios. It is better to define it as 'a statement that

one ratio is equal to another,' or, if we allude to what is called compound proportion, 'to several.' This statement is not made in words, but in signs; two dots being used for the ratios, and four dots for the equality. These four dots might therefore be expressed by the ordinary sign of equality = .

**Several ways of stating proportion.** The following expressions are all equivalent:—

- (1)  $3 : 4 :: 6 : 8$
- (2)  $3 : 4 = 6 : 8$
- (3) The ratio of 3 to 4 is equal to the ratio of 6 to 8.
- (4) The *value* of the ratio of 3 to 4 is equal to the *value* of the ratio of 6 to 8.
- (5)  $\frac{3}{4} = \frac{6}{8}$
- (6) As 3 is to 4 so is 6 to 8.

The last is the most objectionable. The fifth leads to the least misconception of what is really stated, and forms the best test of its accuracy.

**The product of the means is equal to the product of the extremes.** Those who know that the expressions

$$3 : 4 :: 6 : 8 \text{ and } \frac{3}{4} = \frac{6}{8}$$

are equivalent, and who understand some little of fractions, will have no difficulty in seeing that 'the product of the means (or middle terms) is equal to the product of the extremes,' for by the nature of fractions 3 times 8 is equal to 6 times 4, these numbers being numerator and denominator alternately of equal fractions.

This principle, so often quoted in this Rule, and upon which the proof of proportion already given rests, should be fully understood. The following may serve as good test questions upon it:—

**Test questions on this fact.** Given the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd terms, to find the 4th. By what terms would you multiply and divide?

Given the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th terms, to find the 1st. By what terms would you multiply and divide?

Given the 3rd, 4th, and 1st terms, to find the 2nd. By what terms would you multiply and divide?

Given the 1st, 2nd, and 4th terms, to find the 3rd. By what terms would you multiply and divide?

Or, given the 1st, 2nd, and 4th, how would you state the question so as to find the 3rd? &c.

Given 2, 4, 16, 8 ; arrange these as a proportion. (This may be made more difficult by introducing fractions in the higher classes.)<sup>1</sup>

**A question in proportion is equivalent to an easy question in division.** From this principle, also, it is easy to see that a question in proportion resolves itself into the following simple question :—

‘ Given the product of two terms, and one of them, to find the other.’ For the *product* of the first and fourth is given (being the same as the product of the second and third), and the first is also given. The fourth term is therefore easily found by division.

**Additional hints.** When pupils have learned the theory, they should be called upon to account for each of the processes in the actual working of the question. Several statements should be placed before them, and they should be called upon to say which is wrong, and why, and which is right, and why. They should also be required to enunciate the statement in full. Thus, if 6 cows cost £40, what will 7 cost? Instead of saying, as 6 is to 7, so is £40, they should be required to say, as 6 *cows* is to 7 *cows*, so is *the price of 6 cows (£40) to the price of 7 cows*. And when the answer is got, they should frequently form with it and the other three terms a regular proportion properly stated and arranged, in order that they may see that it was a fourth term they were looking for. Again, the pupils should be tested occasionally *in writing*. Very often they may express themselves pretty fairly *vivâ voce*, and yet fail in putting the rule clearly in writing.

Again : as the rule is called the Rule of Three, many pupils think that when three terms are given, it must be adopted. I have already shown when it ought not to be. But I have often met with even advanced boys who tried to solve such questions as these by this rule : ‘ I went to the fair to buy six cows, but finding them too dear I bought but four, giving for each £10 ; how much money did I expend ? ’ ‘ A man earns 15s. a week ; gives 2s. 6d. a week to a savings’ bank ; how much will he have saved in four weeks ? ’

#### PRACTICE.

**Use of this rule.** By this rule we solve, without a ‘ statement,’ certain questions in proportion, chiefly those where unity occurs in the first term, as where it is required to find the price of several commodities when the price of one of them is given. It is called

<sup>1</sup> The answers to these questions should be given orally ; the teacher, however, may also write any three out of four proportionals on a black board, leaving a space for the term required, and call on one of the class

to supply by actual calculation the missing number ; or he may dictate the numbers and get all the children to complete the proportion on their slates at the same time.

*Practice* because it is a collection of the methods actually *practised* by merchants in their ordinary occupations.

**Tables of aliquot parts.** This rule is rendered easier than proportion, chiefly by the use of what are called *tables of aliquot parts*. In order, therefore, to gain proper facility in working practice, it is necessary to commit these tables to memory. In answering upon them, the pupils should exhibit the same quickness and correctness as were shown to be essential in the tables of addition, subtraction, multiplication, &c. No child can be accounted proficient who fails in answering rapidly and correctly such *vivâ voce* questions as the following: What parts would you take for 15s., 10s., 9s. 8d., 6s. 4d., 3s. 2d.? 1 qr. and 4 lbs.? 2 oz. 3 dwts.? &c., the answers given being in each case the *most suitable* parts. They should also be able to use the complement instead of the number itself, as in taking parts for 13s. 4d. they should deal with 6s. 8d.—the difference between it and £1, or, as it is called, its *complement*; but, like cancelling in proportion, and ‘factoring’ in division, they should not only know how to do this, but when to avoid it.

**Connection between proportion and practice.** Each distinct rule in practice is designed to facilitate some one or more of the operations required in the rule of proportion. No child can, therefore, be said to understand this rule fully, though he may work questions in it with quickness and accuracy, who cannot show what are the exact steps in proportion which it renders unnecessary or more easy. In order to teach them this, they should be called upon frequently to solve the same question by both rules, and to compare the two processes. In a good treatise on arithmetic, the rules of practice should be classified in accordance with the connection that each has with the rule of proportion; and in teaching those rules the master should make the arrangement, when not already made for him by the author.

To explain more fully what I mean, take the following question:—

What is the price of 2 qrs. and 14 lbs. at 50s. per cwt.?

The statement of this question, if solved by proportion, would be—

cwt.	qrs.	lbs.	s.
1	:	2	14 :: 50

To solve this, it is necessary (1) to reduce the first and second terms to one name; (2) to multiply the third by the fraction formed of the first and second; (3) to reduce the answer to pounds sterling.

That is, we reduce the first term to lbs. thus:— $1 \times 4 \times 28 = 112$ ; again, we reduce the second term to the same denomination

by multiplying the 2 by 28, and adding the 14 to the result ( $2 \times 28 + 14 = 70$ ); we then multiply 50 by the fraction  $\frac{70}{112}$ , formed by putting the first number under the second, getting  $31\frac{1}{2}$  shillings; and this *we reduce* to pounds sterling, obtaining £1 11s. 3d. as the required answer. But in *practice* the use of aliquot parts enables us to dispense with the formal reduction of

the terms to one name. We deal with the fraction  $\frac{2 \text{ qrs.} + 14 \text{ lbs.}}{1 \text{ cwt.}}$ —rather than with the fraction  $\frac{70}{112}$ —by separating it into  $\frac{2 \text{ qrs.}}{1 \text{ cwt.}} + \frac{14 \text{ lbs.}}{1 \text{ cwt.}}$ ;

and by the table of aliquot parts we know that these are equal to  $\frac{1}{2}$  and  $\frac{1}{4}$  respectively; we therefore multiply the 50s. by  $\frac{1}{2}$  (getting 25s.) and by  $\frac{1}{4}$  (getting 6 $\frac{1}{4}$ s.), and add the results to obtain  $31\frac{1}{4}$ s., which is reduced to pounds sterling as before.

Take again the following question :—

112 lbs. at 4d. per lb.

The statement, when the question is solved by the rule of Proportion, is :—

1 : 112 :: 4d., and the work would be

$4 \times \frac{112}{1}$ , which would give the answer in pence;

or  $\frac{4}{12} \times \frac{112}{1}$ , which would give the answer in shillings. This is

equivalent to  $\frac{1}{3} \times \frac{112}{1}$ , and this again to

$$112 \div 3$$

We are therefore *saved* in Practice the multiplication by the fraction, and we use an easier way of reducing the third term to shillings. This question is therefore distinct from that above, and should come under a different classification.

Take again 40 lbs. at 1s. 6d. per lb.

The statement here is :—

1 : 40 :: 1s. 6d., and the work is

$$1s. 6d. \times \frac{40}{1} = \frac{40 \times 1s.}{1} + \frac{40 \times 6d.}{1} = \frac{40 \times 1s.}{1} + 40 \times \frac{1}{2}s.$$

Practice, therefore, enables us to multiply the third by the second in an easy way.

The other rules have all special peculiarities which would take too long to investigate here, nor is it necessary to investigate them,

as the above examples sufficiently make clear the principle of classification for which I contend, and the method of explaining the connection between each rule and proportion, which I say is so essential to all who aim at proper proficiency in practice. I may only observe that the questions are in many books on arithmetic very injudiciously grouped under different rules, in order, I believe, to make them more easily understood, but in my opinion this multiplication of rules is very incorrect and confusing.

**Thirteen Rules could be reduced to one.** For instance, the following rules are all separate :—

- To find the price of cwts., qrs., and lbs., @ £1 per cwt.
- To find the price of tons, cwts., qrs., @ £1 per ton.
- To find the price of acres, roods, perches, @ £1 per acre.
- To find the price of yds., qrs., nls., @ £1 per yard.
- To find the price of ozs., dwts., grs., @ £1 per oz.
- To find the price of tons, bags, cwts., @ £1 per ton.
- To find the price of tuns, hhds., gals. @ £1 per tun.
- To find the price of barrels, sts., lbs., @ £1 per barrel.
- To find the price of furlongs, pers., yds., @ £1 per furlong.
- To find the price of furlongs, chains, pers., @ £1 per furlong.
- To find the price of years, months, weeks, @ £1 per year.
- To find the price of hundreds, scores, articles, @ £1 per hundred.

To find the price of reams, quires, sheets, @ £1 per ream.

All these are clearly alike in character, and when separated we are obliged to remember the multipliers in each case. They should all be solved by the following general rule, which aims at showing the child how to find the multipliers instead of telling him what these multipliers are.

**This rule stated.** Rule: (a) Under whatever the denomination is which is said to cost £1, place the figure 1 for multiplier; (b) to find what multiplier should be placed under the next denomination, say, 'If one of the first denomination cost £1, what will one of this denomination cost?'—the answer will be the multiplier sought; (c) to find the next multiplier, act in the same way; (d) finally, when all the multipliers have been found, multiply the terms of the given quantity by their respective multipliers, 'carrying' as in Compound Multiplication.

This one rule saves the thirteen above and several others; for when the principle is once known, its extension is very easy to questions where the price is not at £1. If the price were £2 per cwt., for instance, the multipliers would be £2 2s. 4 $\frac{1}{2}$ d., or at £3 per ton, they are £3 3s. 9d., &c.

**Shop accounts.** What are called 'bills of parcels,' or 'shop accounts,' come under the head of Practice, though most of them



should be solved by the Compound Rules. No class of questions is more practical than these, and none more neglected or more loosely solved. In many cases they are so much unattended to, that it is not unusual to meet with boys working Progression, Position, &c., unable to compute the amount, or test the accuracy, of a small bill; or, if able, they do so by such long methods as cover the slate with figures.

For instance, if required to find what is  $4\frac{1}{2}$  yds. @ 1s. 6d. per yard,  $5\frac{3}{4}$  yds. @ 10d. per yard, and  $9\frac{1}{4}$  @ 2s. 6d. each, they either fail completely or else they work out each separately on the slate, putting down every figure and rubbing out when the result is obtained. Instead of this, they should adopt the following plan:—

	£	s.	d.	£	s.	d.
$4\frac{1}{2}$ yds. @ 1s. 6d. per yard =	6	0		}	0	6
		9				
$4\frac{3}{4}$ yds. @ 10d. per yard =	4	2				
		5		}	0	4
		$2\frac{1}{2}$				
$9\frac{1}{4}$ „ @ 2s. 6d. „ =	1	2	0	}	1	3
			$7\frac{1}{2}$			
					14	8
					£1 14 8	

The price of 4 yds. @ 1s. 6d. per yard is calculated mentally and put down; then the price of  $\frac{1}{2}$  yd. at 1s. 6d. per yard is also calculated mentally and put under it; the two are then added into one sum (6s. 9d.), and put opposite the price of the  $4\frac{1}{2}$  yards. In the same way the others are calculated, first by parts, and then the parts are united to form the price of the whole. Time is saved by this means, because the operations are made in the mind and not on the slate. In taking the three-fourths of ten in the second case, the one-half is first taken, and then half of the result, giving 5d. and  $2\frac{1}{2}$ d. respectively.

**To be more practical.** Throughout the entire course, arithmetic ought to be made more practical than it is. Mr. Jenkins, in his report to the Education Commissioners of 1861, says, 'One of the most marked defects in teaching this branch was the non-practical character of the arithmetical exercises. In a very large proportion of even the public schools, questions for working were given in a form which had not the slightest analogy to, and could not form the least possible preparation for, the application of arithmetic to the business of practical life; e.g. in "addition of money" I found that the finishing exercises were composed of eight, or or at most ten lines, of such amounts as £540,976, instead of

being, as they undoubtedly ought to be, long columns of twenty or thirty numbers of two or three figures each only.'<sup>1</sup>

**Nature of practical questions.** The pupils attending an ordinary primary school are destined afterwards to be clerks, artisans, farmers, labourers, &c., and therefore the arithmetic taught should deal with the addition of long columns of money, such as are met with in ordinary merchants' transactions, with shop bills, with estimates of the earnings of labouring men at so much per piece or per day, with costs of materials, values of work when perfected as compared with the expense of production, with the purchase and sale of agricultural commodities, of oats, hay, potatoes, wool, bacon, cattle, &c.; and to these may be added questions upon domestic economy, consumption of tobacco, beer, &c.; upon rates of travelling, costs of cartage, &c., and generally upon all things that they are likely, after they leave school, to require.

**Mental arithmetic.** What is called mental arithmetic is important in reference to this subject. This is, however, like the other, too much neglected, probably from its nature being so much misunderstood.

Most teachers look upon it as a mere collection of rules so framed as to facilitate the solution of certain questions without the use of slate or paper; that is, in the mind. If this were so, though it would possess some utility, it would be very far indeed from being a valuable practical exercise, because the rules would be easily forgotten and the special cases to which they are applicable might very seldom arise; but mental arithmetic, in its true acceptation, is not so much opposed to *slate arithmetic* as to *mechanical arithmetic*, though it is opposed to both. By mechanical arithmetic we solve all questions of the same class by the application of one fixed rule; mental arithmetic enables us to discover and take advantage of any peculiarity in the terms and their arrangement, or in the general condition of the question by which the work may be curtailed.

**Definition of it when opposed to slate arithmetic.** When mental arithmetic is opposed to slate arithmetic, it consists in solving questions by the ordinary rules, but without slates, the figures being entered, as it were, in the 'tablets of the brain.' Thus, to find the difference between 6*s.* and 7*s.* 1½*d.* or between 8*s.* 4*d.* and 20*s.*, or to find the price of 4 yards at 2½*d.*, or 10 miles at 2½*d.* per mile, we can proceed as easily by the ordinary rules of arithmetic as by any others. If we use slates, they are solved by slate arithmetic; if not, they are *mental arithmetic*. This sort requires, in addition to that knowledge of the common rules which

<sup>1</sup> Educ. Com. 1861-2, vol. ii. p. 557. p. 84; 1857, pp. 263, 389; 1859-60, See also Min. of Council, 1847, vol. i. pp. 30, 87, and 179.

all arithmetic requires, merely a quick, vivid, and retentive memory ; skill in it is secured solely by practice. It is, therefore, the duty of the teacher to exercise his children so frequently upon this that they will acquire the true degree of excellence ; and if he insist upon their committing to memory the extended tables of multiplication, pence, &c., already alluded to, he will find his trouble considerably lessened.

**Should be taught with each rule, and from the very first.** When a child knows a rule fairly upon the slate, he should always be accustomed to solve some simple questions upon it mentally. These questions should increase in difficulty according to the proficiency of the children.<sup>1</sup> If this is done properly, the pupils will in a short time be able to solve questions which require a considerable amount of thought. Mr. Morrell says that 'it is not an unusual exercise to give a number such as 78,654,931 to be multiplied by 6, 8, or 12, and to receive the correct answer in a few seconds, without the use of pen or pencil.'<sup>2</sup> The chief value of such an effort is not arithmetical, but educational ; for, practically, a child will never be called upon to solve mentally so long a question. Its utility consists in the formation of a power of concentrating all the faculties on the performance of an allotted task ; and the mind that can do so will soon prove capable of any amount of labour upon other tasks as well.

When Miss Edgeworth ridiculed the faculty of 'multiplying in the head nine figures by nine,' she overlooked the valuable power of concentration, and referred solely to its utility in a strictly arithmetical point of view, and in this view it is worthless.

This power should be cultivated, as it is valuable, and as it can be cultivated without interfering with the true purposes of arithmetic as an instrument in the business of life ; but the teacher should refer chiefly to practical questions, such as those already described for slate arithmetic. The more practical arithmetic is, the more valuable it is.

**Mental as opposed to mechanical.** When mental arithmetic is opposed to mechanical, it consists in a judicious modification of the common rules, or in the framing of rules entirely new. Thus, to subtract 36 from 65, or to add 42 to 28, it is easier to act upon the *tens* first, although the ordinary rule requires that we should begin with the *units*. Again, to find the price of 240 articles at 13*d.*, we usually multiply 240 by 13, and then divide the product by 12, and the quotient so found by 20 ; but when we see that 240 is equal to 12 times 20, it is unnecessary to multiply by 240, and then divide by its equivalent (12 times 20) ; and

<sup>1</sup> See McLeod's Mental Arithmetic, after the method of Pestalozzi.

<sup>2</sup> Min. of Council, 1855-6, p. 564.

therefore merely call the pence pounds sterling, and get the true answer.

Or, again, to find the interest at 5 per cent., we consider the pounds in the principal as shillings for a year, and pence for a month, owing to the fact that to multiply by 5 and divide by 100 (as the ordinary rule requires) is the same as dividing by 20, and that to divide by 20 we need only reckon the pounds as shillings. The interest for a month being the twelfth part of the interest for a year, it will, at the rate of 5 per cent., be the twelfth part of a shilling, or one penny.

**What this sort requires.** This sort of mental arithmetic, therefore, requires a quick intelligence, an active and retentive memory, a thorough acquaintance with each step in the ordinary rules, and a perfect knowledge of the principles upon which they are founded. The only way to secure proficiency in it is by adequate practice, and by teaching arithmetic *deductively*; that is, by connecting one step with another by such proofs and processes as are easily understood when fully explained.

**General hints rather than rules.** The duty of a writer upon this branch is to give general hints rather than rules; but as many of the questions will be found to admit of the same solution as the best and easiest, these may be judiciously grouped under one rule; and, when rules are so formed, it is the duty of the teacher to see that the chief of them are fully understood and remembered.

**Mental arithmetic a valuable preparation for business of life.** Mental arithmetic, in both acceptations of the term, is a valuable preparation for entering upon the ordinary avocations of life, as it gives readiness in performing those little domestic and mercantile transactions that are continually occurring to all of us; but it is peculiarly advantageous in an agricultural community, where the calculations, for the most part, are made out of doors, and not, like the merchant's, in a shop.

**Mental arithmetic like Geometry in general terms.** Arithmetic is the 'logic of the people;' and what geometry in general terms is to Euclid, mental arithmetic is to it. When carefully taught, it improves the slate arithmetic itself; it gives precision and accuracy both of expression and results; it is permanent, and, in its higher acceptation, it forms an admirable agent for quickening the intelligence of the children—for developing the judgment and improving the reason.

**Not taught at present.** Such being its great advantages, it is with much regret that I am obliged to record the fact that it is either wholly neglected, or taught so seldom or so carelessly as to be practically valueless. This is my own experience; and, I see,

from the reports of inspectors in Great Britain and Ireland, that it is pretty generally the experience of all.

**Why.** This probably arises from the worthlessness of results produced by the present system of teaching it, from the very strong condemnations accorded to it on account of this failure, or from the appearance of trick and legerdemain which it bears with it. But the practical failure arises from its being confined to special rules got off by rote—a double error, as it should not be so confined, nor should they be got off without being fully understood; and the show is not necessarily a part of this exercise, only in so far as it is a part of all expositions of school proficiency in classes.

**Work at first partly in the head and partly on the slate.** In carrying out this exercise, it is a good plan to permit the children at first to work some of the questions partly in the mind and partly on the slate. Thus, to find the price of  $6\frac{1}{2}$  yards at 2s. 10d. per yard, they may be allowed to work the fractional portion on the slate, when they calculate mentally the price of the 6 yards.

**About fifteen minutes enough.** The lesson never should extend beyond fifteen or twenty minutes, as the mental strain is too great. The teacher's questions should be rapid, so as to prevent listlessness and inattention in the class. He may occasionally find a 'Ready Reckoner' a handy and suitable text-book, as the questions in it are easy and practical. By the use of it he can, if he think necessary, give a distinct question to each child.<sup>1</sup>

**Higher rules of arithmetic.** It would take too much space to go minutely into each of the higher rules of arithmetic; I am, therefore, obliged to omit them; but I do so with less regret from knowing that the majority of the children who attend our primary schools seldom remain long enough in them to go beyond Practice, and that the chief difficulties and errors are found almost wholly in the elements of every science.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> For further remarks on mental arithmetic, see the Reports of the Commissioners of National Education, Ireland, and the Min. of Council, 1846-7, vol. ii. p. 96; 1851, p. 695; 1855-6, p. 564; 1856-7, p. 467; 1860-1, p. 29; Currie's 'Common School Education,' p. 415; Dunn's 'Principles of Teaching,' pp. 95, 96; and Wood's 'Sessional School,' p. 261.

<sup>2</sup> Many of the faults found in the higher classes, and much of the slowness and want of intelligence displayed, may be traced to a neglect of a frequent recurrence to elementary rules and first principles. On this

point Mr. Warburton says (Min. of Council, 1859-60, p. 140): 'I make it a rule on every occasion to test the soundness of the children's arithmetic, however far they may have been pushed on, by simple dictated sums in the first four rules, and have found, more frequently than it is pleasant to state, that children professing a knowledge of Compound Proportion, Interest, and Decimals, could not be relied upon to put down in proper form and work out correctly a subtraction of two figures from three, or make out a bill of the simplest kind.'

**Three hints on Interest.** The three following hints concerning Interest, the most important of those rules not discussed, will be found of advantage:—

1. Accustom the child to place the multipliers and divisors in the form of a fraction before he begins to work, as by this means he will more readily understand many of the abbreviated processes given in the usual elementary treatises, and, which is even better, he will be enabled very frequently to make out others for himself applicable to the peculiar question before him.

For instance, to find the interest of £12 16s. 8d. for one year at 5 per cent., the child, before he begins the work, writes the question down thus:

$$£12\ 16s.\ 8d. \times \frac{5}{100};$$

and he can see at a glance that that is the same as dividing by 20.

Or, to find the interest for four years at 5 per cent., he writes the multipliers thus:

$$£12\ 16s.\ 8d. \times \frac{5 \times 4}{100} = \frac{20}{100} = \frac{1}{5};$$

and sees that dividing by 5 saves a vast amount of trouble.

2. Make him clearly perceive that to divide by 20 is merely calling the pounds shillings; and by 12, calling the shillings pence.

3. Do not let the children divide by 100, according to the long process of cutting off two figures, multiplying by 20, by 12, &c, but teach them to divide by it in one line, in accordance with the following rule. Consider all but the first two figures as pounds; (2) take the one-fifth of these two figures for shillings; (3) place the

Mr. Fletcher says (Min. of Council, 1846-7, vol. ii. p. 96): 'Nor is there in most schools that occasional reversal to the early rules, and to those even of Notation, which would awaken a child's perception to the value of the whole.'

It is a bad plan, however, to put children back from one rule to another to begin the study of it anew. Nor is it necessary: all that is required is to take the opportunity, as it offers, to give test questions upon what is already passed over, and to frame the questions on the rule at which they are actually engaged in terms of the others.

When children are learning Compound Rules, it is easy to give in

them sufficient practice in Simple Rules to render their going back to the latter unnecessary. For this purpose the highest denomination should consist of a large number; thus, subtract £5,020,070 16s. 9½d. from £100,106,308 19s. 8½d. In solving this question, the subtraction of the pounds forms a good practice in simple subtraction. In the same way, when the pounds are large the questions will serve for simple multiplication, division, &c., as also practice in notation and numeration. Such questions should be frequently given out by the teacher, as it renders going back uncalled for, of which nothing is more distasteful to the children or more disheartening.

remainder to the left hand of half the shillings in the dividend, and consider the amount as farthings: this will give the pence, &c. of the answer.

**Rules in Interest.** The following rules may be found of advantage:—

(a) *To find the interest at any rate for any time.*

Multiply the principal by the rate, and divide by 5: then count the quotient as *shillings* for a year, and as *pence* for a month.

(b) *To find the interest at 6 per cent. for a month.*

Cut off the units figure of the pounds; consider all to the left of it as *shillings*, and add the one-fifth of the units figure to itself, and call the sum *pence*.

NOTE.—The interest for any other time or rate is easily found from this.

(c) *To find the interest at any rate for 5 months.*

Multiply the principal by the rate, and count the product as *pence*.

NOTE.—This is but a particular application of Rule (a).

In some books of arithmetic, distinct rules are given for the solution of the following questions:—

(1) *What principal in a given time would produce a given interest at a given rate per cent. per annum?*

(2) *In what time would a given principal produce a given interest at a given rate?*

(3) *At what rate would a given principal produce a given interest in a given time?*

These three ought not to be separated, as they can easily be reduced to one rule. In each case there are given the interest, and some two of the three following terms, viz. *principal, rate, time*. And the rule for the solution of the questions may be thus stated: Multiply the interest by 100, and divide the result by the product of the two given terms. This is a simple rule, and one easily remembered.

**Questions on averages, stocks, and per cent.** In the majority of Civil Service examinations, questions on stocks, and those in which the terms 'average' and 'per cent.' occur, are now frequently given. It is necessary, therefore, that the children of our National Schools, many of whom will probably be competitors at these examinations, should know how to solve such questions. The following are a few examples:—

1. Find the cost of £3,456, 3 per cent. consols at 90½, brokerage being ½ per cent.

2. What income will £5,000 of 3½ per cent. stock at par, and £3,420 in the same stock at 106½, produce?

3. A person invested a sum of money in the 3 per cent. consols

when they were at 90, and some when at 75; what interest did he get in each case?

4. A person invests £720 in the 3 per cents. at 86; the funds rise 2 per cent.; he then sells out and invests in the 4 per cents. at 94; what is the change in his income?

5. If sugar be bought at 4s. 6d. and sold at 5s. 2d. what is the gain per cent.?

6. By selling a cow for £12, the seller loses 3 per cent. on his total outlay; what did he lose, and what would have been his loss or gain if he had sold her for £13 15s.?

7. What is the premium of a policy of insurance for £350, at £2 7s. 11d. per cent.?

8. The percentage of children learning to write is 52 in one school of 80 children, and 47 in another of 96; what is the percentage in the two together?

9. Suppose a person expended £420 one year, £560 the next, £321 the next, and £472 in the next; what did he spend on an average each year?

10. In a school there are three children of 6 years, four of 7, eight of 9, and nine of 10; what is their average age?

**Monthly exercises.** In all schools the children of the advanced classes should be required to solve, once a month, on paper, without the use of slates, miscellaneous test questions on the rules already learned by them. This they may occasionally do at home, but in general it is better to have it done in the school, under the master's own supervision. Special books should be provided for the purpose. I give a few examples of what each month's exercise should consist of:

# I.

1. Subtract 20,506,701 from 42,079,804, and the first again from the remainder.

2. Find by reduction how many statute perches there are in 3 Irish acres.

3. In three Irish miles of road, how many English perches? and calculate the cost of keeping the road in repair, at 3s. 4d. per statute perch.

4. What is the price of 16 cwt. 3 qrs. 12 lbs. at £5 10s. per cwt.?

5. Define the terms Prime Numbers, Composite Numbers, Aliquot and Aliquant Parts; Greatest Common Measure and Least Common Multiple.

6. Find the least common multiple of all the even numbers up to 20 inclusive.

7. (1) Add together  $\frac{2}{4}$  of  $\frac{5}{7}$  of  $\frac{4}{9}$ ,  $\frac{2}{3}$  of  $\frac{3}{4}$  of  $\frac{5}{6}$ , and  $\frac{1}{2}$  of  $\frac{4}{5}$  of  $\frac{7}{11}$ .



(2) Express 14s.  $1\frac{1}{2}d.$  as the fraction of  $\frac{5}{8}$  of  $\frac{7}{8}$  of 30s. (3) Value of  $\frac{11\frac{1}{2}}{320}$  of a cwt.

8. (1) Define Practice, Interest, Discount, and state how the last differs from the second. (2) Why is the first called Practice?

9. Calculate the interest on £5,600 for  $2\frac{1}{4}$  years at 4 per cent.; and of the same sum for 120 days at  $4\frac{5}{8}$  per cent.

10. A property was bought for £3,200, and sold for £5,681; find the gain per cent.

11. Extract the square root of 3; of  $\frac{5}{6}$ .

12. Extract the cube root of 40,306,407.

## II.

1. Multiply 421 separately by 300, 20, and 6, adding the results together. Point out the agreement between this, step by step, and the ordinary multiplication of 421 by 326. Show also the difference.

2. Resolve 43678 into prime factors.

3. Divide £450 into parts proportional to 4, 5, and 7.

4. A person leaves Sligo for Dublin (distance 135 miles), at 6 A.M., travelling for the first four hours at the rate of  $22\frac{1}{2}$  miles per hour, and the remainder of the journey at  $15\frac{1}{2}$  miles per hour. At what o'clock did he arrive?

5. A can give B 20 points in a game of billiards, and C 30; how many points can B give C?

6. Two men fire at a target, having 60 cartridges each. The first fires three times in 4 minutes, and the other twice in 6 minutes; how many times will the last have to fire when the first has finished?

7. A person invested £400 in the 3 per cents. at  $95\frac{1}{2}$ , and sold them when they rose to par; what did he gain by the transaction?

8. My income is £620; what is the amount of income-tax at 7d. in the pound?

9. Which is greater, the .45 of a guinea or the .36 of £1, and by how much?

## III.

1. How many times must 152 be added to itself to produce 1,368?

2. Divide 456789 by the factors, 4, 5, 7, expressing the remainders first as decimals, and secondly as vulgar fractions.

3. The 3 per cents. are offered at  $90\frac{1}{2}$ , the 4 per cents. at  $106\frac{1}{2}$ ; which is the most profitable investment?

4. A person's income is reduced by £40 4s. 6d. when the taxes were raised from 4d. to 7d. in the £1; what is his income?

5. Two clocks strike together at 8 on Monday morning. On Tuesday one wants 7 minutes to 12 when the other strikes 12; how much must the slower be put on so that they may strike 9 together in the evening?

6. A merchant buys 3 pipes of wine for £100, £115, and £132 respectively, and mixes all together, selling the mixture at 42s. per gallon; does he gain or lose, and how much?

7. A person pays £620 for a bill of £676 due three years hence; what is the rate of interest?

8. On what sum is the daily interest at 5 per cent. sixpence?

9. A person bought 120 lbs. of tea at 3s. 4d. per lb.; immediately afterwards there was a rise of  $4\frac{1}{2}$ d. per lb.; how much money did he save?

10. A wishes to settle on B an annuity of £150 a year free of income-tax, which is 5d. in the pound; what sum must he invest in the 4 per cent. consols at 90 $\frac{1}{2}$ , paying the usual brokerage?

## CHAPTER VI.

## GRAMMAR.

**Object of teaching grammar in schools.** Taking that definition of Grammar which is given in most treatises on the subject as our guide, we see that the object of all grammatical instruction must be *to enable children to speak and write their own language correctly*, or, in other words, to give to them 'the power of writing plain and clear sentences with correct syntax, orthography, and punctuation.'

**The sole use of text-books.** One plan adopted to secure this consisted in requiring them to commit the text-book to memory from the beginning to the end; but this is now abandoned by all except the very worst teachers.

**Why wrong.** The arguments against it are similar to those already brought against the system of learning the meanings of words from the columns of a dictionary: viz. (1) scarcely any child could remember all required of him; (2) it was laborious and unprofitable; (3) grammar could thus be taught only to those who had already acquired a considerable proficiency in reading and general knowledge; (4) it required an equal amount of attention to be given to each division of the science—to Orthography as to Etymology, to Prosody as to Syntax; (5) the teaching wanted that vividness and force which always characterise, to a greater or less extent, oral instructions, and (6) both the questions and answers constantly tended to become purely routine and mechanical, according to the well-established law, that when books alone are used, correctness of repetition comes in the end to be looked upon as sufficient.

**Evils of.** Grammar so taught was ineffectual, as it could not possibly give to the children any facility in expressing themselves correctly; and, among the evil effects produced by it, not the least formidable are that dislike to this study, and that settled opposition of the parents to it, with which all teachers of primary schools have to contend.

**Present system an improvement.** The system at present in force, though it is, in my opinion, as I shall endeavour hereafter

to show, by no means the most correct, is a great improvement. By it the child's first notions of grammar are formed easily from the verbal expositions of the master, and this knowledge is largely extended in the same unlaborious manner; so that when the text-book is put into his hand, almost at the close of his course, he is prepared to understand and profit by it. By such means the child is certain, when using the text-book, to commit to memory only what he already very fairly knows the value of, and the master is more at liberty, in treating the subject, to vary the terms made use of, adopting a different illustration and a different phraseology wherever the natural abilities and capacity of each child demand such a course. Not being called upon to interpret the words of an author, he will be more certain to avoid rote teaching, and to feel that his duty is to deal with the *facts* of language, and not with the *words* in which these facts are conveyed; he will be thrown upon his own knowledge of the science, and he will, therefore, the more likely make use of those natural modes of communication by which mind immediately acts upon mind, when no text-books intervene to perplex and confuse by being misunderstood.

He will also be the better able to introduce the children to what is easiest and most important first, and to dwell the longest upon what is most essential for each. An author cannot do this, as he is necessarily obliged to begin at the beginning—the part of nearly all sciences which is in general the most difficult and least understood—and to continue in accordance with certain heads and divisions which he previously marked out for his guidance.

**Depends very much on the skill of the teacher.** A system like this, which excludes the use of a text-book until a certain advanced proficiency has been attained, must necessarily vary—as indeed all other systems must—with the skill of the teacher. To succeed, the teacher must know the subject well himself, and he must possess the power of communicating his information methodically, intellectually, and agreeably.

**Grammar should begin with Etymology.** The following hints may be found of advantage. Grammar should be commenced by the study of Etymology, and not of Orthography, for Orthography has comparatively very little to do in securing the object sought.

**Technical terms.** Again, teachers should be particularly on their guard against confining their instructions to the mere *terms* of the science. This is the great fault of young and inexperienced men. They forget that these terms are used solely to facilitate expression, and that, therefore, they may be committed to memory and even applied correctly by a child who yet upon examination

would be found to know nothing of the real nature of the subject which underlies them.

The terms *noun*, *verb*, *adjective*, *adverb*, for instance, are purely technical, and are invented solely to record and express with brevity the peculiar grammatical force of certain words. To say that '*man* is a *noun*,' that '*good* is an *adjective*,' or that '*very* is an *adverb*,' is to talk technically; and unless the full meaning of these terms is known to the children, they would acquire as much knowledge from the repetition of words of a foreign language with which they were unacquainted.

**To teach the terms only is to teach nothing.** To permit the use of the technical word, without seeing that it is fully understood, is, therefore, in reality, to teach nothing. Many of the teachers who commit this fault fall into it unconsciously; but many of them—and I regret very much to say it—do so deliberately, under the erroneous impressions that explanation is too difficult for young children, and that they will understand the matter fully as they advance. Such men not only omit all explanation, but they look upon those who require it as too exacting and particular. It may be quite true that it is a matter of difficulty to give children correct ideas of the use of words, but it is equally true that, unless a child knows what is meant by the terms *noun*, *verb*, &c., any of his answers that contain these words are worthless. Such men rest satisfied with laboriously teaching nothing, and often feel injured because others will not give them credit for the performance.<sup>1</sup> In their hands technical terms are injurious instead of beneficial. They deceive both teachers and scholars, and prevent the real defects of information which underlie their flippant use from becoming apparent.

**The parts of speech should be taught at first and without using technical terms.** The use or force of a word in a sentence,

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Morrell (Min. of Council, 1848-9, vol. ii. p. 466) says: 'It is forgotten that a technical knowledge of the subject does not necessarily involve any real knowledge of it at all; and that the power of acquiring words, which is so remarkable in the child, may easily cast a veil over the real ignorance which lies hidden behind them. To deal with the *memory* of a child is infinitely easier than to deal with its perceptive faculties and its intellect. The words which a child so readily employs in answer to set questions, may seem to indicate the most precise and complete acquaintance with a subject; but I have been convinced, by many ob-

servations, that frequently no ideas whatever are attached by him to the terms he employs; and that, if he do attach any, those ideas are to a great extent incorrect, and to a still greater extent *inadequate*.' He adds this truth, which may partially account for the fact, that a few weeks of absence from school is for the most part sufficient to cause the children to forget all previously taught them; that '*knowledge digested, reduced to experience, made a part of our whole system of thinking, is never lost; verbal knowledge, on the contrary, passes away almost as rapidly as it is acquired.*' See also Min. of Council, 1855-6, p. 432. Mr. Brookfield's Rep.

which forms the chief object in teaching Etymology, can be treated of fully, though certainly in a longer way, without technical terms at all, and, in my opinion, *that is the way in which the parts of speech should be commenced by children: the use of the word first, the technical term expressive of that use afterwards.* Take, for instance, the sentence, 'Studious boys love their books.' We may thus express the use of each word—

*Example.*

Studious is used in describing the objects about which we are speaking.

Boys	„	in naming these objects.
Love	„	in expressing an action.
Their	„	for a word (boys) previously made use of.
Book	„	in naming an object.

No technical term is here employed, and yet the matter is fully treated of; and though it is at the expense of a few words, yet one cannot but see that, by this additional expenditure, the child has been enabled to arrive at the real essence of the subject easily, and without the intervention of a language which requires translation and explanation before it admits of intelligent use. Children will thus come gradually to divide words into—*naming words, describing words, action words, modifying words, connecting words, &c.* And these terms the teacher may make use of until they are fully understood. Then, and not till then, should the technical names be taught; for it is only then that the children are in a position to understand and appreciate their advantage.

**Teaching technical terms.** These terms may be introduced somewhat thus: The children may be told, for instance, that it has been agreed upon to call all words '*used for naming objects,*' by the short term '*noun;*' to call all words '*used to describe objects,*' by the term '*adjective;*' and to call all words '*used for other words,*' by the term '*pronoun,*' &c.—*brevity of expression being the sole object in view*; and that therefore in future, instead of saying that any word is '*used to name an object,*' or is '*a naming word,*' as they were before in the habit of doing, it is sufficient to say simply that it is '*a noun,*' as the sense will be exactly the same in both cases. Pupils by such a method cannot fail to see what technical terms mean, and why they are used, and are very unlikely to give to them an undue importance.

**Example of a method often confounded with it.** This system teaches the technical term from, or rather after, teaching the use of the word; but there is a system quite the opposite, which is sometimes confounded with it, and is in reality an abuse of it.

For instance, take the phrase, 'Little bird with bosom red;' the questions &c. go on somewhat thus:—

*Teacher.* What is the *use* of the word *little*?

*Child.* (No answer.)

*Teacher* (repeating the question in another form). What is it for?

*Child.* (Again no answer.)

*Teacher.* What part of speech is *little*?

*Child* (at once). An adjective.

*Teacher.* What is an adjective?

*Child.* 'A word *used* to describe an object' (being the definition he had learned of it).

*Teacher.* What is the *use* of the word *little*, now?

*Child.* To describe an object.

The true order is thus reversed, the *use* being taught from the 'part of speech,' and not, as ought to be the case, the part of speech from the use. This is clearly incorrect. A child who did not know the *use* of a word could not possibly tell what part of speech (the technical term expressive of that use) it was, except by guess or from memory; for an intelligent answer to the one question requires an intelligent comprehension of the other. But, being told the part of speech, the child could state its use; for that is mentioned in the definition.

**Children should give reasons for their answers.** When pupils once know the technical terms fully, they should ever afterwards employ them; but, to avoid all possibility of mechanical answering, they should be called upon frequently to assign reasons for what they say; or, in other words, to explain the exact meaning of the terms they make use of. To give the *definition* merely as the explanation of a term, is not, however, a sufficiently clear explanation. Take, for instance, the sentence—

'John loves his book well.'

If a child tells me that 'John' is a noun, 'loves' a verb, 'his' a pronoun, 'book' a noun, and 'well' an adverb, and if, to test whether he understands what he says or not, I ask, 'Why is John a noun?' or 'What is a noun?' and if he says 'a noun is the name of a person, place, or thing;' and if, in reply to similar queries about the other parts of speech, he says that 'a verb is a word used to express an action;' that 'a pronoun is a word used for, or instead of, a noun;' and, in the last case, that 'an adverb is a word which qualifies a verb, an adjective, and sometimes another adverb'—which are the usual forms of definitions given

for these words—his answers do not afford me sufficient evidence that he fully understands what he says. I remember asking a child, who had gone thus far accurately, what word did *well* qualify? and getting for answer, *his*, and *book*. And again in the sentence, 'The ink is black,' I asked a child, who told me that 'an adjective was a word which qualified a noun,' what noun did *black* qualify? He answered, '*A common noun, sir!*' In both of these cases the definitions were correctly repeated, but in both the subsequent answers proved what a mere pretence of knowledge existed.

**One test as to whether the pupils understand the reasons they give.** A master can easily test for himself the power that children possess of repeating and applying definitions accurately, without having the smallest intellectual acquaintance with the subject itself. If he name, in his question, the wrong part of speech, he will find that the definition of that part of speech is repeated as a reason. Thus, let him ask, Why is *he* a noun? Why is *rode* an adverb? Why is *white* a noun? &c. The child will say that *he* is a noun because it is 'the name of a person, place, or thing,' &c. It is from a knowledge of these facts that I am anxious to press upon the teachers the necessity for sifting each answer with great care.

**Definitions should be applied.** The child should not only give the definition, *but he should apply it to the exact case before him.* Thus—

'John writes very well; he reads badly.'

*John* is a 'noun,' because it is the *name of a person* (rejecting that part of the definition which is inapplicable here);

*writes*, a 'verb,' because it expresses *what John does*;

*very*, an 'adverb,' because it qualifies the adverb *well* (in this the child shows his knowledge, not only by rejecting that part of the definition which is inapplicable, but by naming the word actually qualified. The answer might have been given thus: 'Very is an adverb, because it qualifies an adverb;' but such an answer is incomplete, as the question, What adverb? is required to test the child fully);

*well* is an 'adverb,' because it qualifies the verb *writes* (here the reason is different; and it is in recognising such differences as they occur that the child's skill is shown);

*he* is a 'pronoun,' because it stands for the noun *John* (not because it stands for a noun, but for the noun *John*, because without this it would be necessary to ask, For what noun does it stand?)



It is in such a form that reasons should always be exacted.

**Reasons need not accompany each answer in the senior classes, but in the junior classes they ought.** In the senior classes it is not necessary to require them in the case of each word, but the child should always be prepared to state them if called upon. He should, for instance, be able to say *what* created the action of the verb; whether the adverb qualifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb; and for what word the pronoun stands. He should also be able to read any passage using nouns instead of pronouns, &c. But, in the junior classes, I think that every answer should be accompanied with some development of thought in the form of reason. Thus—

*John* is a 'noun,' because it is the name of a person;  
*writes*, a 'verb,' because it shows what John does;  
*very*, an 'adverb,' because it qualifies *well*;  
*well*, an 'adverb,' because it qualifies *writes*.

This early training is very effectual in rousing children from that sluggishness of thought and listlessness which are so frequently met with, and which tend eventually to produce the extinction of all thought. This extended form of answering may, of course, be gradually dispensed with as the teacher discovers that his children really know the uses of the parts of speech.

**The mere part of speech is not a full enough answer.** Such answers appear to be unnecessarily full; but, in addition to the training afforded by what makes them fuller than usual, anything less would scarcely be sufficiently correct. The answers—

*John* is a 'noun,'  
*writes*, a 'verb,'  
*very*, an 'adverb,'  
*well*, an 'adverb,'

do not closely define the uses of each of these words. This may be seen by translating the technical terms into ordinary language:—

*John* is 'either the name of a person, or of a place, or of a thing;'  
*writes* is 'a word which expresses some action;'  
*very* and *well* 'are words which express either the manner in which an action is done, or the manner in which the use of some qualifying word is modified.'

The parts between inverted commas in both cases are exactly

equivalent, but the latter form enables us to see more clearly how indefinite such answers are.

In the first case, for instance, we say that *John* is used to express one of three things, but we do not say which of the three. In the second case, we say that *writes* is used to express some action, but we say nothing of the cause of that action; the answers to the remaining two are equally indefinite with the answer to the first, their application to three different uses being mentioned without its being stated to which of the three they are actually applied.

Accompanying the answer with the reason removes this defect to a considerable extent. It not only does this, but it accustoms the child to think, and forms a good preparation for the 'parsing' exercises.

**Definitions should be simple and accurate, and repeated always in the same words.** The definitions which the children are called upon to repeat should be *simple* and *accurate*, and the repetition should always be in the same words.

What a *simple* definition is, however, is very often misunderstood. Some teachers, for instance, with the view of making the matter more easily understood, tell the child that a word is a noun, because we can *see it*, or because we can *hear it*, or *feel it*, or *smell it*, or *taste it*, as the case may be; or they tell him that a word is an adverb because *it ends in ly*, or that it is a preposition because *it governs the objective case*. It is quite a mistake to suppose that such teaching simplifies the matter. A definition serves as a measure, and should be applied to test the fitness of any word to occupy any given class, just as a carpenter applies his rule to test the fitness of any piece of timber to occupy any assigned position. To have four or five tests is, therefore, quite as inconvenient as if the carpenter was obliged to use four or five rules.

This plan consists in merely splitting definitions into parts, each in itself inadequate and incomplete; and it is because only one part is treated of at a time that simplicity apparently results. Were the definition written out in full, thus: 'A noun is the name of anything which we can see, hear, feel, taste, or smell,' very few indeed would be induced to make use of it as simpler than the definition in ordinary use.

**In what true simplicity consists.** The only genuine simplicity consists in having a good definition for each part of speech—one that will be comprehensive and adequate—clearly applicable to every word to which it should be applicable, and as clearly excluding all others. In proportion as such definitions are expressed with simplicity, and made intelligible to children, so will the classification of words be made easy for them.

**These definitions are also inaccurate.** But such definitions are not only, in my opinion, more difficult than those in general use, but they are palpably inaccurate. The definition for an adverb would make the children classify many adjectives incorrectly, as *manly, ugly, unseemly, &c.*; while the definition of a preposition would equally misplace active verbs. But even supposing they did not do this, they would still be injurious, as leading to inconclusiveness of mind; for, although many adverbs do 'end in *ly*,' and although all prepositions do 'govern the objective case,' it is not for either of these causes that we called any word an adverb or a preposition. The causes assigned are incorrect, and a habit of giving them as if they were not must naturally tend to vitiate the reasoning faculty itself.

**Nouns are words, not things.** The definition of a noun is inadequate, as it would exclude the names of all abstract qualities; but even suppose that it were not, it would still be incorrect, for we cannot *hear, smell, or taste* nouns; and although we may *see* them, they are not for that reason called so. Nouns, in fact, are *words*, not *things*, and this distinction is too often overlooked, especially by children. I remember puzzling an advanced class of girls by asking the simple question—Where are nouns to be seen? Some said in the room, as desk, slates, &c.; some outside, as houses, streets, &c.; but none appeared to know that nouns were seen only *in the book*—only where *words* were visible.

**Adjectives do not qualify nouns.** This error is not confined to children. Grammarians themselves have fallen into it in many cases; as, for instance, in their definition of an adjective, which they say is a word which qualifies a *noun*. This is quite incorrect: a noun is a word, and it is not the word which the adjective qualifies, but the *thing* for which the word stands.

**Definition of preposition incorrect.** This is one of the reasons why I recommend the teacher to test the accuracy of the definitions which his children are allowed to repeat. Book definitions are not always exact. Take as an additional instance the definition of a preposition which some writers give: 'A preposition is a word which connects words together, and shows the relation between them,' that is, between the words. This is an error: it is between the things for which the words stand, and not between the words themselves, that the relationship exists.

**Altered definitions of the parts of speech.** The following definitions may be found, perhaps, correct:—

A noun is a word used in *naming* an object (thing).

An adjective is a word used in *describing* an object.

An article is a word used to lessen the number of objects to which the noun may be applied.

A pronoun is a word used for a word already used (or simply for a noun).

An adverb is a word used to qualify a verb, an adjective, or an adverb (the word *another*, which is generally put before the word *adverb* in the above definition, is here left out as unnecessary).

A verb is a word used to denote some action.

A preposition is a word used to join two words together, and show the relation between the objects for which the words stand.

A conjunction is a word used to join sentences or clauses together, or to join words, without showing any relation between the objects for which the words stand.

An interjection is a word used to express sudden emotion.

**Definitions should not be changed.** Before being committed to memory they should be very carefully explained, the teacher using during his explanation whatever language he finds correct, varying his words, of course, to suit the requirements of each child; but, when once understood, they should be committed exactly as they stand, and be ever afterwards repeated in the same form of words. The reason is very plain. The terms of a correct definition are well studied—the redundant words lopped off, the essentials retained, while their arrangement is such that an alteration of the phraseology can take place only with disadvantage. Changes in the form of definitions produce looseness and general inaccuracy, not only in expression, but in the ideas themselves. And this is true not only of grammar, but of other sciences.

**The order in which the parts of speech should be taught.**

Next to knowing the proper method of teaching the parts of speech, it is essential to know the order in which they should be taught. The best way, in my opinion, is to divide them into threes, teaching in one class three, in the next class three, and in the class above three—by no means, however, limiting any class exactly to three, if it is found that they have acquired correct ideas of them before being fitted for removal in other matters. The first three may be the noun, adjective, and article; the next three the verb, adverb, and pronoun; and the last, the preposition, conjunction, and interjection. The first group may be commenced with the noun, the next with the verb, and the third with either the preposition or the conjunction. By such a course grammar can be commenced at an earlier period, and it is much less formidable than if the nine parts of speech were treated of together.

**Noun and adjective easily known from their definitions.**

The noun and adjective are very well adapted for a commencement, as they are easily distinguished by any one who understands their respective definitions. As the article does not admit of being so easily distinguished in this way, its early introduction might be

objected to as opposed to sound principle: but as there are so few articles, children soon learn to point them out quite correctly, though mechanically, and it is questionable whether it is not more advantageous, in some such cases, to admit of a small amount of the mechanical element, than to adhere strictly to the course which is founded upon purely intellectual teaching. *Articles* are continually recurring; so that more difficulty would be experienced in teaching children who did not know them, than advantage would be gained in waiting until they were able to learn them upon true principles. In the same way it will be found more expedient, in many cases, not to press upon young children the *uses* of the prepositions, and of some few of the adverbs; for it is sometimes a matter of considerable difficulty to point out the exact words connected by prepositions, and to explain the nature of the connection which they institute, and very frequently it is found almost impossible to make some adverbs agree with the definition. These exceptions can scarcely be quoted against the rule—that the *uses* should be taught before the *technical terms*; for ‘there is no general rule without exceptions.’ If the teacher keep in mind, however, the broad principle which should be his guide, he may very safely exercise his judgment when any deviation may appear necessary.

These exceptions are, however, only a question of time; for in all cases the pupils, as they advance, should be taught the uses of these parts of speech just as fully as the others.

**How to teach the article.** The following hints may enable the child to get correct notions concerning the ‘*article*.’ The phrase ‘a pen’ can be applied to any pen in the school. We can say, pointing to one, that it is ‘a pen;’ to another, that it is ‘a pen;’ to a third that it is ‘a pen;’ and so on, until we have applied it to all the pens in the school. We cannot, however, do this with the phrase ‘the pen.’ When we come to say that it is ‘the pen,’ we evidently find that we can only apply it to one thing in the same sense. If I tell a child to bring me ‘the pen,’ he must see that that phrase is applicable to only one particular object.

The phrase ‘a pen’ is therefore applicable to any one out of a class, while the phrase ‘the pen’ is applicable to some particular one—the difference in the application being caused solely by the use of the article.

Again, in the sentences—‘*Man* is mortal,’ ‘*A man* died yesterday,’ ‘*The man* is dying rapidly’—we have three different applications of the one word *Man*, caused by the use of the article ‘a’ or ‘the,’ or the omission of both. In the first, it is applied to any of the human race—to man and woman, boy and girl. In

this case it is said to be used in its 'widest sense;' and I may remark here that very few real nouns admit of being thus used. In the second the number of objects to which the term is applicable is very much diminished; it is now inapplicable to women or children, and refers only to such of the male sex, having arrived at the age of manhood, as died yesterday. If sixty men died yesterday, the phrase is applicable to each one of the sixty in exactly the same sense. The sentence, 'The man is dying rapidly,' clearly refers to but one man.

The article 'a' reduced the large number to which the first was applicable down to sixty, the article 'the' reduced this again to one. Hence the peculiar force of that part of speech 'in lessening the number of articles to which the noun may be applied.'

**The definite article not very definite in pointing out nouns.** Although the article 'the' points out the object more definitely than either 'a' or 'an,' and is thus entitled to be called the 'definite article,' it yet points it out very indefinitely after all. Thus, if I say, 'Bring me *the chair*,' I shall be understood by any one, if there is but one chair in the place, but I shall not be understood, if there are two or more chairs, except by those who had already received some clue to my wishes. The fact is that the expression is elliptical, and is, of course, intelligible only to those who can supply what is left out. 'Hand me the chair' (*on which I always sit*). 'Give me the pen' (*with which I wrote yesterday*). The parts in brackets, or something similar, being understood, complete the sense.

**Demonstrative pronouns point out imperfectly also.** In the same way the demonstrative pronoun, which is also used for pointing out, performs its peculiar functions imperfectly. It differs from the definite article, however, in this—that the sense is generally made complete in the one case by actually pointing to the object, and in the other by supplying certain words. 'Give me *that* chair' is indefinite unless I point to the chair. 'Give me *the* chair' is indefinite unless, as explained above, the ellipsis be filled up.

**How to teach the preposition.** With regard to the *prepositions*, many children never really understand their use, and the majority of those who do, do so only when age has improved the powers of their minds. The best plan to treat this part of speech is to select, in the beginning, the most familiar instances of its peculiar use. These will be found chiefly where the relation of one object to another in regard to *place* is denoted. Thus, 'The book is *on* the table,' 'My hand is *above* the desk,' &c.—these can be gradually extended, and more difficult examples can be selected,

until the children have acquired a good knowledge of the force of this part of speech.

**Conjunction.** It is easier for a child to understand the use of the conjunction. When it connects words, the words which it connects are apparent, because the conjunction, in the great majority of cases, is written between the two. When it connects clauses or sentences, the nature of the connection will soon become familiar if the passage be read now and then with the conjunction left out.

In examining a child upon this part of speech, he should be required to name the exact words connected by each, and, in the cases of sentences, he should be called upon to read the sentences, making complete sense in both, without using the conjunction in either. Thus in the sentence 'John and James ride well now, because they practised riding early,' a child should be able to say that 'and' joins the words 'John' and 'James,' and that *because* connects the sentence 'John and James ride well now' with 'they practised riding early.'

**Differences between the preposition and conjunction.** He should also be able to tell the difference in use between the two connecting words, that is, between the preposition and conjunction. He should know—

- (1) That prepositions connect words and show relation.  
That conjunctions connect words and *do not* show relation.
- (2) That conjunctions connect sentences as well as words.  
That prepositions do not.

**How to teach the parts of speech by threes.** In carrying out this system of teaching the parts of speech by threes, those who have learned to distinguish the first three should acquire a more extended knowledge of them during the time they are learning the others. Thus, when learning to point out the verb, adverb, and pronoun, they should learn also the *number* of nouns, their *gender*, and their *kind* (proper and common). They should learn the *comparison* of adjectives, and acquire a more intelligent knowledge of the *use* of the article, as explained in its definition, together with being able to distinguish the definite from the indefinite. In fact, they should learn, speaking generally, the leading features of the noun, adjective, and article—those parts of speech which form the first group.

When they come to the last three, they should learn in the same way the general features of the second three, while at the same time they should enter more minutely into the details connected with the first. That is, they should acquire such a knowledge of their 'parts' as would enable them to arrange these parts in their proper order, and to understand them when called

upon to parse syntactically. This arrangement is called parsing etymologically, from its going so far into the details of true parsing as a mere knowledge of Etymology will allow.

**When text-books should be made use of by children.** All this information should be acquired by the mere verbal expositions of the master—entirely without text-books. When the child has, however, reached this point, a text-book should be put into his hands, for he has obtained a sufficient knowledge of grammar to enable him to understand the book, and profit by what it contains. He will receive from the text-book, in a methodised form, and therefore more advantageously, the various minute details which it now becomes his duty to acquire. Any earlier use of the text-book would have been disadvantageous, for he had not at any earlier period acquired enough about the broad features of the science to make it judicious to attempt a systematic arrangement of his knowledge, or to hamper him with the minute details that such books contain. The great principle is to sketch forcibly and fully, by means of oral teaching, the outline, inserting also the most prominent of the details, and leave for the text-book nothing to do but complete the picture. The portions selected for each day's task should be small, and should be committed to memory at home by the child, to be said to the master next morning.

**Explanation of text-book by the master.** The master should not forget to explain the text fully, both before the committal to memory—so as to enable the child to learn it with ease and pleasure, and to prevent the formation of wrong notions—and after it, to test how far his previous explanation had been understood, and to complete the true impression.

In this explanation the master should seek for difficulties where none apparently exist, and, in the test examination afterwards, he should guard against the common error of believing that a child really understands what it can repeat flippantly and accurately. This error is easily illustrated. Take, for instance, the definition of Etymology. How many will repeat it correctly, yet how few will be able to tell you fully what it means! 'Etymology treats of the derivation, classification, and inflection of words.' This they repeat readily. But from which of them will you get a correct answer to the following questions?

What is meant when it is said that Etymology treats of the *derivation* of words?

What *classification* of words is alluded to?

What is meant by the *inflection* of words?

And yet, unless a child can answer these questions, he cannot possibly understand what Etymology treats of, no matter how flippantly he tells it to you in the words of the definition.



**Should learn Etymology and Syntax together when using text-books.** The child should commence the text-book, as he commenced his oral lessons on grammar, with Etymology. But conjointly with it he should commence the rules of Syntax. From his previous knowledge he is quite capable of understanding them, and by beginning them at this time, they will be fully known when the pupil is about to enter upon the higher portions of the *parsing* exercise.

**Many teach the rules of Syntax orally.** Many teachers—and in this I think they are quite right—even go the length of making their pupils familiar with the chief portions of Syntax by the same sort of oral instructions that they employed to make them familiar with the outlines of Etymology. One who knows the rules of syntax well himself can easily teach them to his children without the aid of a text-book.

**Usual plan of explaining the rules of Syntax.** But whether the child learns them first from the grammar, or directly from the master, they should, in every case, be familiarly and clearly explained before being committed to memory. The usual plan, at present, is to repeat the rule, and then to explain it by examples. Now, I think that the reverse of this is more correct. We should first lay before the pupils a number of examples illustrative of the general principle whose truth we wish them to perceive; we should point out to them the coincidences and points of agreement which we wish to embody in what is called a rule; we should, by judicious leading, assist them to express the real essence of this rule in their own phraseology; and we should employ for some time the rule as so expressed. After a time we should introduce them to the rule properly worded; we should assist them in applying it to other sentences; and, as the final step, we should cause them to commit it *verbatim* to memory.

**Example.** Thus we say, ‘a boy *reads*,’ ‘the boys *read*,’ ‘a horse *runs*,’ ‘horses *run*,’ &c.; and from these the child will see that *the verb varies with the number of the nominative*; that if the nominative be singular, the verb will be singular; and if the nominative be plural, the verb will be plural.

Again, we say, ‘thou *lovest*,’ ‘I *love*,’ ‘he *loves*;’ ‘I *am*,’ ‘thou *art*,’ ‘he *is*;’ and from these he will learn another fact—that the verb varies also as the *person* of the nominative varies; that if the nominative be *first* person, then the verb will be first person; if the nominative be *second* person, then the verb will be second person; and if the nominative be *third* person, the verb will be *third* person also. And both of these truths he may afterwards embody in the following rule, ‘A verb agrees with its nominative case in number and person,’ which is Rule 1 in Syntax. This is

the true system of teaching—first exemplar sentences, then the rule, then the committal to memory ; but it requires that teachers should know the subject well to practise it with effect.

**Unless pupils know the meaning, they cannot tell the part of speech.** Unless children know the *meaning* of the words, they cannot tell their *part of speech*, as the one is founded entirely upon the other. The meaning is the basis of that classification which results in the Etymological division of words, called *parts of speech*. To ask what part of speech any word is, is but a short way of asking two other questions : (1) What is the use or force of the word in the sentence ? and (2) what is the technical term expressive of that use ? And many children are set down as unable to tell the technical terms, when, in reality, their fault lay in ignorance of the *use* of the words. Had they known the meanings of the words, they would have told the parts of speech freely and correctly enough. It is on this account that the sentences selected to illustrate the parts of speech should be framed at first out of the easiest and most familiar words ; but when the pupils have gone through the lesson books so as to understand fully the force of the language made use of in them, they may be called upon to point out the parts of speech as they occur in any ordinary sentence selected. They may be either called upon to name all the nouns, verbs, adjectives, &c., or they may classify each word in the order in which it is met with.

**Test questions on definition.** The following may be taken as test questions on the definitions :—

What part of speech is used in *naming* objects ?—what in describing them ? What part of speech *stands* for a noun ? What part of speech is used to lessen the number of objects to which the noun is applicable ?—what to qualify an adjective ?—to qualify a verb ?—to express an action ?—to modify an adverb ?—to modify any qualifying word ? What part of speech is used to join words and show no relation ?—to join words and show relation ?—to join clauses ?—sentences ? What joining words do not connect sentences ? What part of speech is used to express sudden emotion ? &c. &c.

**Parsing.** To parse a word fully we must (1) state its *part of speech* ; (2) its several grammatical *parts*, if any ; and (3) the connection it has with any other word in the sentence. The first two steps depend entirely upon Etymology, and ought to be learned, as I have said before, chiefly from the oral teaching of the master: the third step depends upon Syntax, which is generally learned from the text-book.

**Different kinds of Parsing.** The first step, when taken separately, is sometimes called Simple Parsing ; the second, when

taken in connection with the first, Etymological Parsing; and the parsing which includes the three is called Syntactical Parsing.

The following sentence, 'Our cotton dresses are formed from the soft lining of a seed vessel,' is parsed as follows, so as to illustrate each of these three kinds:—

## SIMPLE PARSING.

<i>Our</i>	is a pronoun;	<i>from</i>	is a preposition;
<i>cotton,</i>	an adjective;	<i>the,</i>	an article;
<i>dresses,</i>	a noun;	<i>soft,</i>	an adjective;
<i>are,</i>	a verb;	<i>lining,</i>	a noun;
<i>formed,</i>	a verb;		&c.

In this kind the child gives merely the part of speech of each word; he must be able, however, as already explained, to give a proper reason, when called upon, for what he says.

## ETYMOLOGICAL PARSING.

To parse the same sentence Etymologically, we should say—

<i>Our</i>	is a pronoun, <i>of the possessive adjective kind</i> (or simply a possessive adjective pronoun);
<i>cotton,</i>	an adjective, <i>not admitting of comparison</i> ;
<i>dresses,</i>	a noun, <i>common, third person, plural number, neuter gender</i> ;
<i>are formed,</i>	<i>a regular passive verb, indicative mood, present tense</i> ;
<i>from,</i>	a preposition;
<i>the,</i>	an article, <i>definite</i> ;
<i>soft,</i>	an adjective, <i>positive degree of comparison</i> ;
<i>lining,</i>	a noun, <i>common, third person, singular number, neuter gender</i> .

The words in italic show the difference between Simple and Etymological Parsing. The one contains the other, but adds to it the *accidents* of each word. The *case* of nouns, and the *number* and *person* of verbs, although Etymological parts, are left out because they are scarcely definable, except in connection with other words in the sentence, and are determined by rules of Syntax.

**Test questions on Etymological Parsing.** In Etymological Parsing the child should be able, when called upon, to answer such questions as the following, in addition to those already required for the previous kind:—

(1) What is the difference between pronouns of the possessive

adjective kind and personal pronouns in the possessive case? (2) Name the possessive adjective pronouns. (3) Name the personal pronouns in the possessive case. (4) What is meant by degrees of comparison? When are adjectives in the positive degree?—when in the comparative?—when in the superlative? When are they said to admit of no comparison? How are the comparative and superlative of adjectives formed? &c. (5) When is a noun said to be common?—when proper?—when singular?—when plural?—when neuter gender?—when masculine?—when feminine?—when common? How is the plural formed? How is the feminine formed? &c. (6) When is a verb said to be passive?—regular?—irregular?—defective? What part of the verb 'form' is used in the tense 'are formed'? What other part of a verb enters into composition with an auxiliary? Analyse the tense 'are formed.' Which of the two shows that the verb is passive?—which that it is regular? &c.

It is easy to judge from the children's answers to such questions as these whether they know the subject mechanically or intellectually.

## SYNTACTICAL PARSING.

The following is an example of the syntactical mode of parsing:—

<i>Our,</i>	a pronoun, <i>of the possessive adjective kind</i> , REFERRING TO DRESSES;
<i>cotton,</i>	an adjective, <i>not admitting of comparison</i> , DESCRIBING THE DRESSES.
<i>dresses,</i>	a noun, <i>common, third person, plural number, neuter gender</i> , AND NOMINATIVE CASE TO THE VERB 'ARE FORMED;'
<i>are formed,</i>	a verb, <i>passive, indicative mood, present tense</i> , THIRD PERSON, PLURAL NUMBER, TO AGREE WITH ITS NOMINATIVE CASE 'DRESSES;'
<i>from,</i>	a preposition, GOVERNING THE NOUN 'LINING;'
<i>the,</i>	an article, <i>definite</i> , LIMITING THE SIGNIFICATION OF THE NOUN 'LINING;' &c. &c.

The part in small capitals is peculiar to Syntactical Parsing; the part in italics refers to Etymological Parsing; and the remainder is Simple Parsing.

We thus see that Syntactical Parsing includes the other two. Those who parse by this method should therefore be able to answer all the questions already given for the others, and, in addition, questions similar to the following, which may be said to be peculiar to itself:—

**Test questions.** (1) Repeat the rule of Syntax relating to the words 'our' and 'cotton.'

(2) When is a verb said to be first, second, or third person?—when singular?—when plural?

(3) Repeat the rule of Syntax about the government of the word 'lining,' &c. &c.

**How to quote rules of Syntax.** In quoting these rules, *in support of their previous statements*, the children should only quote so much of them as actually applies. Thus, in the phrase 'which he loved,' the word 'which' is the objective case governed by the verb 'loved,' by the rule that says, 'When a nominative comes between the relative and the verb, the relative is governed by the verb following;' the remaining part of the rule, 'or by a noun following, or a preposition going before,' is left out as inapplicable in the present case. The skill which they display in selecting what is appropriate shows clearly whether they know the rules thoroughly or not. Of course this method refers merely to the rules quoted as *proofs*. When the object is to examine upon Syntax without any connection with a previous parsing exercise, the entire of the rule should be given, and in the exact words of the author.

**Too many forms of Syntactical Parsing.** In my opinion, there are too many forms of Syntactical Parsing. We have, for instance, Murray's method, in which the tenses of the verb are arranged on the plan of the Latin language; and we have what is called the English method, where the tense is subdivided into the present and the past only—all compound tenses being reduced to either of these forms prefixed to the infinitive mood, or to the participle of the verb. In my opinion, there should be but one form, so that a child leaving any school for another would not be obliged to unlearn what he had already acquired.

**Murray's the best.** The form of Parsing of which I approve has been already given. It is an extension of Murray's method, but it is not fundamentally different. The extension is adopted to render the parsing more definite and exact. Parsing, as generally practised, consists merely in naming the part of speech and a few of the leading parts of the principal words, as the noun or verb, omitting altogether the connection existing between the words, except in the case of the agent and verb, or verb and object. Most pupils would say, for instance, in the above sentence, simply that 'our' is a pronoun, 'cotton' an adjective, 'from' a preposition, &c.; but, as I have shown before, these answers are too indefinite, and require to be limited by pointing out the exact meaning to be attached to them in each particular case.

**Parsing gives a very elaborate history of each word.** From the use of technical terms, this does not seem to be the case. A glance, however, at the two forms of parsing given below, the one with and the other without technical terms, fully establishes the fact.

*Example.*

<i>John</i> is a noun,	is either the name of a person, place or thing ;
proper,	it is applicable to but one individual in the same sense ;
third person,	the object for which the word stands is spoken of ;
singular number,	it is applied but to one person ;
masculine gender,	the individual for which it stands is of the male sex ;
nominative case to the verb 'leaps.'	the object for which it stands creates the action expressed by the word 'leaps.'
<i>Leaps</i> is a verb,	It is a word used to express action ;
regular,	the form which expresses past time is formed from that which expresses present time by the addition of 'd' or 'ed ;'
transitive,	the action expressed by the word affects, or is received by, some object ;
indicative mood,	the action is simply said to take place ; no conditions under which it takes place are mentioned ;
third person,	that which creates the action is spoken of ;
singular number,	that which creates the action is but one object ;
agreeing with its nominative case 'John.'	some of the parts of the word used to express the action are selected with reference to some of the parts of that which created the action.
<i>A</i> is an article,	It is a word used to lessen the number of objects to which the name of anything can be applied ;
indefinite,	it diminishes the number of objects to what is contained in a <i>class</i> , but does not point out any one object particularly ;
referring to the noun 'horse.'	its particular force (expressed above) is applied in this case to the word 'horse.'
<i>Horse</i> is a noun,	(See <i>John</i> , above) ;
common,	it is applied to more than one object in the same sense ;
third person, singular, masculine } gender,	(See <i>John</i> , above) ;
objective case, governed by the verb 'leaps.'	the object expressed by the word 'horse' receives the action expressed by the word 'leaps.'

*Well* is an adverb,

qualifying the verb 'leaps.'

It is a word which may be used to modify an action, or the force of any qualifying word; in this case it is used to modify the action expressed by the word 'leaps.'

What is contained in the right-hand column is the same in meaning exactly as that in the left; but how elaborately expressed in the one case compared with the other!

**This is a good exercise for school or home.** Parsing without technical terms is an admirable exercise. It may be practised at home, and the work brought next day for inspection; or it may form a desk occupation occasionally in the school-room. It will teach the pupils to think upon the nature of what they say about each word, and it will prove to them that, although technical terms can be wholly dispensed with, yet it is chiefly by their aid that we are enabled to express ourselves with brevity.

**The chief difficulty of parsing is in determining the meaning of the passage.** A glance at the forms of parsing already given will show that the difficulty is almost entirely with the *meaning* of the passage. There is, of course, the difficulty which beginners always feel in naming correctly and in proper order the several parts of each word, and in pointing out the dependence of one word upon another—a difficulty which they feel even when the words are arranged in the simplest logical order; but when once this, which may be called the mechanical portion of parsing, is overcome, the difficulties experienced arise from determining the meaning of the passage itself.

**Failure from not being able to discover the sense.** Most teachers fail in parsing a sentence from mistaking its sense. Passages from Milton, Shakspeare, and others, are, to many of them, as so much Greek, and of course they are wholly unable to construe them. If these wish to succeed, the remedy is in their own hands. They should not, as they generally do, have recourse to a treatise on grammar, for the purpose of studying its rules anew, but they should rather take up standard works both of prose and verse, and read them attentively and thoughtfully, noting the peculiarities of style adopted in each. If these books are not within their reach, books which contain well-selected extracts will suffice. The Reading Books ordinarily used in schools contain several very good specimens, but I do not know of any better book for this purpose than the 'Selections from the British Poets,' about to be published by the Commissioners of National Education in Ireland. These selections are made with great taste and judgment, and are well calculated to make the student acquainted with

the style of the various authors quoted from. A person who studies these volumes carefully will rarely fail in determining the meaning of a passage placed before him, and therefore will rarely fail in parsing it.

**Analysis and filling up ellipses.** The meaning of any passage will be easily detected by children if they are in the habit of filling up ellipses, analysing, and transposing sentences, under the immediate superintendence of their teachers. Before parsing, they should be called upon to supply all words left out, and to analyse and transpose the parts of the sentence so as to disclose their true grammatical or logical order, and make the meaning clear.

**Advantage of analysis.** Analysis, when properly carried out, makes the parsing exercises intelligent; it makes thought definite; and it gives precision and accuracy in the use of language. By it we acquire the power of dealing with the logical construction of propositions, and with the various grammatical forms, and of applying them to the discovery of the meaning of what we hear or read. Analysis is, in fact, a most important agent for the discovery of the true force of words in accordance with the order in which they are arranged, and an acquaintance with it is essentially necessary, not only for parsing, but for making language effectual as a means of communicating ideas.

**Learned terms unnecessary.** The learned and cumbrous terms, however, which are so often met with in treatises upon the Analysis of Sentences, are in all cases unnecessary and hurtful. Such expressions as the 'subject enlarged,' the 'adjunct,' the 'complete predicate,' the 'predicate itself,' 'accessory sentences,' 'subordinate accessory sentences,' 'illative sentences,' 'antithetical sentences,' 'subordinate adverbial sentences,' 'abridged subordinate adverbial sentences,' are not only difficult to understand and remember, but they are, happily, quite unnecessary. They are not essential to the real and proper analysis of sentences—they are, in fact, mere conventional expressions, which a pupil may know without being able to explain what it is they are intended to convey, and which many may be entirely ignorant of who yet may employ the principles of analysis efficiently and effectually to the discovery of the meaning of each passage. A child, for instance, may be able to see that the sentence, 'Although clever, he makes no progress,' is equivalent to 'Although *he is* clever, he makes no progress,' without burdening his understanding with the fact that such a sentence is called by some writers 'an abridged subordinate adverbial sentence.'

**Jargon instead of sense.** Pupils who are taught these terms very often know nothing clearly of what they really mean. Mr.



Alderson, after showing that their extensive use is an evil in the case of boys, says, 'With regard to females, such a course is certainly injurious. The female mind is prone to take refuge from precise or concentrated thought in a haze of vague generalities and cloudy phrases; and this tendency is fostered to a dangerous extent by the technical language with which they come in contact in the analysis of sentences.'<sup>1</sup>

**Proper order in which words ought to be parsed.** All that is really required is to help the children to collect the true meaning by arranging the clauses in their natural order. There is not the slightest use, in the majority of cases, to give any name either to the clauses themselves, or to their subdivisions or arrangements. And to practise them in this arrangement, I recommend that the words of each sentence should be parsed, not as they actually occur, but as they would occur if logically arranged. Take, for instance, the following sentence: 'Rice, we are told, grows luxuriantly in portions of America.' '*We are told*' should be parsed first; '*rice*' next; '*grows luxuriantly*' next; '*in portions of America*' last.

**When small words may be passed over.** In the earlier classes every word should be parsed; but as the pupils advance, words of frequent occurrence need not be parsed more than once. Dr. Woodford treats of this matter so fully and so well, that I cannot do better than quote his words. He says:<sup>2</sup> 'The common method of parsing is to give every word straight on, with all its repetitions, with or without mention of its syntactical relation. Now, the constant recurrence of "*THE*," *the definite article*, "*A*" or "*AN*," *the indefinite article*, "*AND*," a conjunction, and "*OF*," *a preposition*, occupies much more time than could be supposed without calculation.

'In four pages and two lines of M'Culloch's "Course of Reading," in passages not likely to exceed the average use of these words, the total number of words, including repetitions, is 1,439; of this number "*the*" is 107, "*a*" or "*an*" 45, "*and*" 52, and "*of*" 82; that is, *the* is more than a thirteenth part of the whole, *a* or *an* a thirty-second part, *and* more than a twenty-seventh, and *of* more than a seventeenth: and, combinedly, the repetition of these words is more than one-fifth of the whole. Now, supposing the parsing exercise of a class to occupy half an hour daily, for five days in the week, this class will be engaged half an hour weekly in proclaiming "*THE*" *the definite article*, "*A*" *the indefinite article*, "*AND*" *a conjunction*, and "*OF*" *a preposition*. If to "*and*" we add *but, if, or, &c.*, and to "*of*" *to, for, with, &c.*, it will be found that the use-

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1860-1, p. 177.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 1852-3, p. 1108. See also his remarks, 1855-6, p. 651.

less repetition of such familiar words occupies about one-third of the whole time spent in parsing. Now,' he adds, 'after the first week of general parsing, it might be sufficient to parse each of the conjunctions and prepositions, as they occur, once in each lesson, and seldomer as the class advances, and requires to be rendered familiar with additional steps.'

**Present methods of teaching grammar are unsatisfactory.**

Up till now I have been giving suggestions for the teaching of grammar in accordance with the plans most generally approved of, and did I also think that these plans were the most correct, there would be but little else for me to add in this chapter; but, as I am of opinion that even these plans, though decided improvements upon those they superseded, are still by no means the best, it becomes my duty before closing to point out what I consider are their defects, and to suggest remedies.

**Text-books not properly used.** Although the use of the text-book is properly deferred now until the pupils have acquired, by oral teaching, the ability to understand and profit by what it contains, yet, when they are permitted to study the book, they are allowed to do so very much in the same way that they were in the former system. They begin at the first page, and commit all of it to memory until the end, and thus waste much time upon Orthography and other portions of the subject that appear to me to have but little to do in attaining the great end in view. They are obliged to commit to memory, for instance, a great many rules about *vowels, consonants, diphthongs, triphthongs, mutes, liquids, labials, nasals, palatals, gutturals, monosyllables, dissyllables, &c.*; but how can these possibly help a child 'to speak or write his language with propriety,' which, in common school education, is all that grammatical instruction should aim at? Children may know these rules, and in fact all that is treated of under the head of Orthography, and yet still say 'John and James is here,' 'Them's his books,' 'The hare has ran away,' or 'They done it.'

I certainly am inclined to think, though in this of course I may be wrong, that very few of the many admired speakers in Parliament, or even in the Church or at the Bar, could repeat correctly and readily the letters called semi-vowels. Why, therefore, should children, on pretence of teaching them to speak as purely as these men, be obliged to learn what these men have thrown aside as useless? If, indeed, this knowledge were essentially necessary in order to understand those parts of grammar that are practically valuable, then indeed we might have a reason for teaching it; but it has no connection whatever with Etymology, or with Syntax. Orthography is, in fact, a part of *grammar* only in the most extended signification of that term. The forms and sounds of the

letters, and their classification, belong to a regular treatise on language, and they have as much right to be included in a practical school grammar—a work designed to teach us to speak and write correctly, that is, in accordance with certain recognised forms contained in the rules of Syntax—as the alphabet itself has. To teach us these appears to me to be as wide of the practical object in view as if a writer on Political Economy, before treating of the laws of demand and supply, gave a classification of the different sorts of paper, silk, or cotton, &c.

**Parts of Etymology should also be left out.** With regard to Etymology, some knowledge of it is clearly requisite, for, without it, we could not understand the rules of Syntax. For instance, to say that a noun in any given number requires that form of the verb which is in the same number and person (which is one of our guides in speaking), would convey no idea to our minds, unless what was meant by the terms *noun*, *verb*, *number* and *person* was understood; and although we might express the same sense without the use of these words, yet it would be at the expense of too much time and clearness. But there are several parts of Etymology just as inapplicable in primary-school teaching as Orthography is. Thus, what has the division of nouns into *real* and *abstract*, *participial*, *collective*, and *diminutive*, or what have certain rules about the words *very*, *rather*, *exceedingly*, *compound substantives*, *compound adjectives*, *cardinal* and *ordinal numbers*, &c., which are found under the head of Etymology in most grammars, to do with teaching us to frame a correct sentence? We may know them, and speak badly: we may not know them, and yet speak well. They should, therefore, be omitted; and, for the same reason, so also should be the whole chapter on Derivations, on English Etymologies, on the History of the English Language, and on Latin and Greek Roots; all these should be included in a work on Language, but not in a practical school grammar.

**Parts of Etymology should be reclassified.** On the other hand, however, there are many things included under the head of Etymology that should be grouped, with the present rules of Syntax, under one division, which might be called 'Rules of Speech.' For instance, the rules to guide us as to the selection of the article, or the following rules: 'The word "news" takes a singular verb;' 'Sciences whose names end in *ics* generally take a plural;' or the rules about personification, about the use of *shall* and *will*, about the prepositions which certain words require after them, &c., should all be removed from the head of Etymology and placed as 'Rules of Speech.'

**Syntax should be enlarged.** Syntax should be enlarged, and should be made the most prominent part of the book, as it is in

reality the most valuable. In most grammars, it is in reality enlarged; for many rules included under it at present relate neither to *concord* nor *government*, the only two parts it allows of; but as this arises from the carelessness of the writers, it is not the enlargement of which I speak.

**What a proper school grammar should contain.** A treatise such as I recommend would contain but the two parts—Etymology and Rules of Speech—Orthography and Prosody being laid aside as not bearing upon the object in view; and the Etymology would be treated of solely in reference to the other head.

**How to teach the rules of speech.** To teach the second part properly, the master would be obliged to know its rules off: he should have a ready tact in framing sentences to illustrate them; he should be able to point out errors wherever they occur; and he should get his children to do so too. By this means the rules would have a practical bearing upon the speaking of both pupils and teachers.

**Complete accuracy, however, cannot be produced by rules only.** These Rules of Speech would be admirable aids in acquiring the habit of speaking grammatically, and, when properly made use of, they would be found to produce great correctness; but I am under the impression that *complete* accuracy is not attainable by any set of rules whatever, no matter how well they are understood, or how diligently and skilfully they are applied to actual speech.

**We speak by what we hear and read.** We speak very much by ear; the form of our sentences, and even the choice of our words, depend very much upon what we are in the habit of hearing and reading.<sup>1</sup> If sufficiently fortunate to be placed among educated and refined people, our language will insensibly show this; while if, on the other hand, our lot is not so happily cast, the taint will be quite as easily perceptible. How often do we hear errors excused thus: 'I know I am wrong, but I spoke without thinking;' or 'I know the rule well enough, but I forgot it just now'? If we reflect carefully upon these answers, we shall see the inadequacy of rules to guard us against all faults. We should learn also not to value their aid too highly; for those who know them best, as teachers, too often find a difficulty in bringing them to bear upon their speech;<sup>2</sup> while, on the other hand, many

<sup>1</sup> Rev. Mr. Brookfield (Min. of Council, p. 507, 1854-5) says, 'The better instructed children acquire its principles *unconsciously*, by reading and writing under the correction of their teachers.'

<sup>2</sup> Mr. Cook (1848-9, vol. i. p. 51) says, 'Most of them appear to find

it difficult to bring the rules of grammar, which they really understand very well, to bear practically upon their habitual language. Early habits, and association with uneducated persons, counteract the theoretical knowledge which they acquire at school.'

of our most correct speakers must have forgotten them since their school-days.

**Teacher should set a good example.** To speak well, therefore, we must not come much in contact with faults and vulgarities; and hence it is the duty of teachers to present in their own language examples which their children may imitate with safety; and this is especially the case with teachers of the poor, where theirs is the only good example the children are likely to receive.

**Teachers should read good authors.** Where teachers are conscious of their own defects, they should at once adopt the best practical means for removing them—the study of good authors; they should read much, especially aloud, so that the eye, the ear, and the mind may become trained to what is correct; in fact, they should become so thoroughly imbued with what they read, that they will insensibly think and speak in the same forms. This will not be found to require much special study. Special study, comprising the analysis of forms and the comparison of styles, will, of course, materially assist; but mere reading—thoughtfully and intelligently of course—will in the end insensibly bring them to express themselves in the same forms as are thus made familiar to the eye and brain.

**Cheap literature will improve the speech of the people.** The cheap literature of the present day is likely, therefore, not only to prove a valuable agent in the instruction of the people and in their amusement, but in making them speak and write grammatically.

**Extract from 'The Times' to show that we speak as we read.** The following extract from *The Times* of December 7, 1861, sustains what I have just said upon the inadequacy of rules, and upon the necessity which exists for reading much:—

'Grammatical accuracy is acquired, not by the recollection and use of an infinity of rules, complicated by an infinity of exceptions, but by familiarity with good authors. Grammar, *like spelling*, comes instinctively from judicious reading and cultivated memory. Nobody would think of turning to an English grammar for aid in the composition of a sentence, any more than he would think of getting a dictionary by heart in order to secure the accuracy of his orthography. A few salient points may be indicated as the student goes on, and a general conception of grammar may be built up gradually as the language is mastered; but to plunge into this complex system of rules at the outset is simply to throw time away, and to confuse the understanding altogether.' The writer then adds: 'Mr. Bright, M.P., was perfectly justified in saying that it is very difficult for any person who read well-written

books, and understands them, not to acquire a very competent knowledge of grammar.'

**Should also practise written composition.** Frequent practice in actual composition is necessary, however, to give facility in expressing oneself on paper. This is a portion of grammar scarcely at all introduced into primary schools, very much to the detriment of the true interests of the children. Of what advantage will our learning be unless we are able to communicate it freely and clearly, and, so far as letters are concerned, in the proper forms recognised by society? We are called upon to make use of written composition at almost every turn. We cannot conduct a mercantile concern, we cannot succeed in a profession, or even in the lowest offices of the State, without being able to express ourselves in writing with clearness and correctness.

**Especially necessary in poor schools.** This exercise generally forms a part of the course of education in higher class schools; but whatever its value may be in these, it is much more valuable in schools for the poor. Children of the wealthier classes are necessarily obliged to practise composition. At their entrance into life they are compelled to make use of it, while their constant intercourse with the world forces them to continue it; the child of the poor man, however, is very differently situated. His social relationships seldom oblige him to exercise this skill, and therefore, unless composition has been made a pleasure to him, it is not likely that he will continue to make use of it. In this respect it is like reading; unless it can be done with ease, it is not attempted at all.

**When it may be taught.** Composition should always be taught to the senior classes in a national school. It can be made occasionally to take the place of the ordinary dictation lesson, or it can be made a good home exercise—the child bringing the paper next day for revision. Once or twice a week would be sufficient, provided that proper care and earnestness were exercised.

**How it can be taught.** There are many ways in which children may be accustomed to express themselves in writing. They may be required to write answers to easy questions. They may be required to write out the substance of an easy fable, or of a short lesson previously read over and explained to them. They may be required to write down what they have learned from any of their daily lessons. Or they may be called upon to describe in their own words what they frequently see—as *grass, potatoes, cattle, trees, the town or country in which they live, &c.*

**Careful revision essential.** But no exercises will teach composition effectually unless carefully examined and corrected by the

teacher. It is in the method of examining them that success or failure lies. No pains should, therefore, be spared in this. The correctness should be plain, and should be made intelligible to the children. Insist upon their using a simple style; diligently put down all high-flowing expressions; the thoughts may be full and rich, but the language should be plain.<sup>1</sup>

A second trial should always be given. For instance, if any sentence be incomplete, if the pronouns be not properly used, if the construction be confused—all errors to which beginners are very liable—the nature of the error should not only be written on the exercise itself, but the pupils should be called upon *orally* to frame the sentences better, and then they should be called upon to do so in writing.<sup>2</sup>

**Why children dislike composition.** Children generally have a distaste for this exercise, but that principally arises from their being called upon to write about what they know little, and from their first efforts being too strictly criticised. The subjects should be familiar, and the pupils should be encouraged to say whatever comes into their minds, whether good or bad, the great thing being to secure at the outset the power of expression: polish can be secured afterwards.

I think it a judicious course for the teacher to tell the children at first the ‘heads’ of what he wishes them to write about. The exercise, by being thus broken up into definite portions of thought, will be much easier, and, of course, much better and more profitably performed.

**Derivations.** What is called ‘derivations’ generally forms a part of grammatical teaching; but so far as I have ever seen, the result has been of scarcely any practical value. I do not, therefore, lay much stress upon the teaching of this part of Etymology, for to teach it effectually requires not only a thorough knowledge of the relation of words, but an accurate acquaintance with the languages from which the roots are derived, and this the majority of our teachers do not possess. The Rev. Mr. Cook agrees with

<sup>1</sup> ‘The greatest defect was in the use of far-fetched and high-sounding expressions, often inappropriately employed. It is one to which imperfectly educated persons are peculiarly liable; its absence is one of the surest signs of a finished education and disciplined mind.’—*Mr. Moseley, Min. of Council, 1847, vol. ii. p. 408.*

<sup>2</sup> ‘The Prussian teachers, by the constant habit of conversing with their pupils, by requiring a complete answer to every question, by never

allowing a mistake in termination, or in the collocation of words and clauses, to pass uncorrected, nor the sentence so corrected to pass unrepeatd, by requiring the poetry of the reading lessons to be changed into prose, *oral* or *written*, and the prose to be paraphrased or expressed in different words, and by exacting a general account or summary of the reading lesson, are, we may almost literally say, constantly teaching grammar.’—*Horace Mann.*

me. He says,<sup>1</sup> 'The appearances are often very illusory; a master must be very well educated to avoid mistakes, leading to strange perversions of sense; I should deprecate its introduction into schools conducted by masters and mistresses who knew nothing of the language to which they must refer.'

Again he says, in his Report for 1852, p. 321: 'The Latin and Anglo-Saxon roots found in grammars, or the facts connected with the formation and transition of the English language, though interesting, are learned with little mental exertion, and are not of much practical value.'

**Mr. Mitchell.** Mr. Mitchell says:<sup>2</sup> 'To obtain any *real* knowledge of Etymology demands a more extensive acquaintance with other languages than is to be found among our pupil-teachers.'

**Mr. Bellairs approves of teaching derivations.** Several inspectors, however, speak in favour of this study. Mr. Bellairs says:<sup>3</sup> 'Constituted as the English language is, so much of it being derivative, the omission cannot but be important; for it will frequently be found that the key-word of a sentence is one which cannot fully be understood without reference to its root; and in the writings of the best authors it may, I believe, be generally discovered that, although the leading ideas are connected by words of Saxon origin, and which, therefore, are much the most numerous, the ideas themselves are stated in words derived either from the Greek or Latin language.'

**Applied with advantage to technical terms.** I have myself seen it applied with advantage to the discovery of the meaning of technical terms. These are generally formed of almost unchanged words of Latin or Greek, so that a knowledge of the original words very often produces clearer ideas of the terms than what can be produced by simple definitions.

**When taught, it should not be taught by rote.** When this subject is introduced, the teachers should avoid treating it too much as a rote exercise. The words should not be got off by heart from certain lists, any more than their 'meanings' should be got off from the columns of the dictionary. The force of each prefix, affix, &c. should be taught where it is actually applied in the ordinary text of the reading lesson.

**Proficiency to be aimed at.** To be considered proficient in this subject, the children should be able to tell what *prefixes*, *affixes*, and *roots* are; and should be able to give the meanings of those most frequently used, or, from being given the meaning, they

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1845-6, vol. i. p. 144.

<sup>2</sup> Min. of Council, 1852-3, p. 628.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 1845-6, vol. ii. p. 168.



should be able to name in each language, where possible, a prefix, affix, or root, corresponding to it. They should also know the chief roots, their meaning, the language from which they are taken, the parts which enter into the composition of English words, and be able to give examples of words formed from them. They should, however, in a special manner, be able to trace the meaning of the word from the meaning of the root, for in many cases the connection between them is by no means very plain. Thus, the root of 'explore' is *ploro*, to weep; but between *weeping* and *exploring* there appears to be no connection whatever. It is the duty of the master to point out this connection, and so as to enable his children to understand it fully. From inattention to this, some very absurd mistakes are made; as, for instance, I was told lately that 'carnivorous' came from *carnivis*, flesh, and *oro*, to beg, and that *disaster* came from *dis*, asunder, and *aster*, a star.

**Meanings ought sometimes to be given in terms of the root.** It is a very good plan to make the pupils give the meanings in terms of the root and prefixes, &c. Thus, instead of saying that to be *unanimous* means to *agree* together, the children might, when tracing words to their roots, say that *unanimous* meant to be of *one mind*—to have, as it were, the *same mind*—and therefore to agree.

**Grammar is an intellectual study.** In conclusion, I may state that, from all I have written, it appears that grammar is not treated as it ought to be. The treatment of it, like the treatment of arithmetic, is too routine and technical; but inasmuch as grammar is more purely intellectual<sup>1</sup> than arithmetic, it is, in proportion, worse taught. In fact, the more any subject appeals to the judgment and the reason, the less is known of it. Rote teaching in such cases supersedes carefully-arranged instruction, and pupils guess instead of thinking. Such subjects are certainly more difficult than others: but, as if to compensate for this, they are, when once known, the least likely to be forgotten.

**But it may still be introduced early.** But although grammar is a subject eminently requiring 'head-work,' yet it is rightly introduced into the school course at an early period; for when properly taught, many of its leading facts, and many of its most valuable qualities, can be made available for the improvement of the youngest children. In fact, grammar can scarcely be begun too soon, provided it is begun properly; for to teach the *grammar*

<sup>1</sup> 'Grammar accustoms the mind to reflect more than any other department of primary instruction whatever.'—*Mm. of Council*, 1848-9, vol. ii. p. 172.

'It is the best study for drawing out the intelligence of the children.'—*Education Commissioners*, vol. vi. p. 214, 1861.

of a language is merely to teach the *sense* of it. 'Whatever words make *grammar* together, make also *sense* together, and whatever words make *sense* together, make also *grammar* together.' Neither can we regard it as a mere accomplishment, such as music and drawing, but we must look upon it as an essential portion of even the poorest education, and therefore as much a part of the course in the lowest National School as in the highest College; for persons of all ranks, if they learn to read at all, must equally learn to know what words make *sense* together, and why they make it.

## CHAPTER VII.

## GEOGRAPHY.

**Geography may be treated of in two ways.** We may teach geography either synthetically or analytically. We can either begin with general views of the whole surface of the earth, and descend gradually to the most minute description of each portion of it, or we can, on the contrary, set out from the spot on which we stand, describing the school and school-grounds, then the immediate neighbourhood, then the townland, the parish, barony, county, country, &c. &c.; each new subject being more extended than its predecessor, until, in the end, we embrace the whole world and all that dwell upon it. The one plan enters upon the geographical study of the earth by giving at first the broadest outlines merely of the continents, oceans, &c., and then gradually fills up the picture; while the other treats first of the topography of the neighbourhood, and lastly of the relative position, &c. of countries when connected as a whole.

**Both practised, but first best.** Both these plans have been practised, but the first alone has been successful; for, however good the second may be in theory (and very many arguments can be brought forward to show that in theory at least it is excellent), it is found in practice that it requires men possessed of more than the usual intelligence of teachers to carry it out successfully. It requires special maps and diagrams of an expensive kind, and necessarily varying for each school; and it requires also from the children a regularity of attendance and an amount of attention to school duties much beyond what experience has shown it right to expect.

**From what the synthetical system arose.** This system arose from supposing that what is naturally most interesting to us, and with which we are most frequently brought in contact, should not only be the best known but the first known. But this is not always the case; for, as John Norris says, 'It is one thing to state that a thing *deserves* to be known, and another to say that it is learning and wisdom to know it.' I am very much inclined to coincide with Mr. Gordon, when he says, 'It is surely a more liberal and improving knowledge which embraces, though in a very

general manner, the great features of the entire surface of the earth, than that which is limited to an acquaintance, not very minute, with the topography of any of its political divisions, however much recommended by the accident of a personal relation to it.'

**Knowledge of other countries very valuable.** There is no doubt but that our own country and our own neighbourhood are naturally more interesting to us than any other; but will a knowledge of them, in this age of change and emigration, be more useful? And, if not, would the time spent upon the acquisition of all their minute details not have been better spent in obtaining general views of the world—its countries, its people, its animals, vegetables, minerals, &c.?

**Our thoughts are oftener on foreign countries than on our own.** Steam and the electric telegraph have so extended the facilities of communication, have so enlarged the commerce of the world, and so bound nations and people to each other, that we no longer feel and act as when isolated in single spots; we think as frequently of Australia, of America, of France, if not even more so, as of our own land; and therefore geography, to be practical, must embrace a large area, even if the knowledge so scattered be not so deep—and this especially in primary schools, in which the pupils remain so short a time.

**We must, however, appeal to topography of locality first.** In carrying out the analytical, or descending system, we cannot, however, wholly reject the other, which I may call the topographical system of teaching geography. The terms *city*, *country*, *continent*, *river*, *mountain*, &c., do not, in general, convey correct ideas of the things themselves to the minds of children; and as true ideas are essential, and only to be satisfactorily obtained by a judicious extension of the child's views of the locality in which he lives, we must, to be intelligible, appeal to topography first, not as a system of teaching, but only as a means of explanation of certain terms.

**Mr. Moseley's views on this.** The following admirable remarks from Mr. Moseley's Report for 1845<sup>1</sup> prove the necessity for such a course, and show how it is to be done:—

'To understand the difficulties under which a child labours, we have only to consider how many things go to our own conception of a distant region. The map serves, indeed, to define the idea we have of it, to give it vividness and completeness; but it does not originate it.

'We already know what a country is, which the poor child does

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1845-6, vol. i. p. 238.

not. When a *country* is pointed out by name to him upon the map, and he has learned to tell how, in respect to the four cardinal points, it is bounded by other countries, and what are the names of its rivers and mountains and chief towns, his memory may have been largely taxed, and yet his principal idea of the country may, nevertheless, remain in a great degree identified with an irregular figure upon a piece of paper. A vast chasm is interposed in the child's mind between the objects with which he is himself familiar, and those of which, in such instruction, he is required to conceive the existence—a chasm which his imagination is not strong enough to bear him over.

‘His conceptions are too vague and too incoherent to be separated from the material things of which they have been formed, or to be presented to the imagination, and made the subject of comparison, of analogy, of accumulation, and of invention.’

**Must first teach him to observe.** ‘The first step in his education is to teach him to *observe*. This accomplished, and the child knowing at length adequately, *for the purpose in hand*, the characteristic features of that portion of the earth's surface which is within the compass of a day's journey, its varieties of elevation and aspect, its hills, valleys, and streams, his attention may be directed to the agrarian divisions of his parish, the fields and holdings which unite to form it. The boundaries of these, with which his memory is familiar, will convey to him his first idea of a map and its uses; that idea will, moreover, be precise, and truthful. The next step might make him acquainted with the watershed of the district, and then the teacher would bring under his view the useful productions which it is made to yield by labour, whether pastoral or agricultural or mineral, associated as these are with the characteristic features of its surface level, its climate, drainage, aspect, and soil. Then the pursuits of its inhabitants, whether agricultural or manufacturing or commercial, in alliance with these and dependent upon them. Next, the domain of Natural History may be made to yield much for his instruction, in respect to the infinite variety of animal and vegetable forms which are assembled within the reach of his immediate observation, the birds which frequent that region, the domestic and wild animals, some of the tribes of insects, the commoner plants which grow around him, and the different kinds of trees. It is not proposed to burden the child's mind, in respect to any of these matters, with scientific distinctions or a hard nomenclature; all that is sought is a knowledge of them in their *ordinary relations*—such a knowledge as a child acquires in respect to those other things with which he is most familiar.

**Explanation of certain terms.** ‘Long before the teacher has

exhausted this field of knowledge, he will, however, have become sensible of the expediency of making excursions beyond it. The idea which a child associates with a farm or field, now firm and consistent, will readily separate itself from that locality, and become the idea of a *tract* of land, having prescribed limits and a definite form and boundary and bearings, as to the four cardinal points. And by a process of accumulation, to which his imagination will easily lend its aid, this abstract perception or idea of a limited portion of the earth's surface may be made to pass into the conception of a far-extended *country*, the relations of whose lesser political divisions to the whole are those of the individual properties and holdings to the whole parish. The village mill-stream may become, by a like process, a *stream*, and have an existence in the mind separated from the locality. In thought, he can add many such to one another, and then you may speak to him of the Thames and the Rhine and the Danube, with a probability of interesting him, and with the certainty of being understood. So the high ground, whence this and some sister brook pursue their course through neighbouring valleys, will convey to him the idea of the *watershed* of a continent. His conception of a *mountain system* may be reached by an easy and natural progression, the first step of which is a hill familiar to his earliest recollections. A neighbouring canal or navigable river will supply to him the idea of *water communication*; a streamlet, tributary to some mill-pond, will suggest to his imagination the widened mouth by which a great river opens into the sea; and the idea of a *port* on the shores of which it will be easy to collect in imagination a commercial community. A mud bank will instruct him faithfully as to the formation and continued enlargement of a *delta*, and account for the richness of its soil and the exuberance of its vegetation.

**Making geography interesting to children.** 'Geography acquires its full value as a branch of education only when it loses the character of an accumulation of facts, undigested by the child's mind, but heaped up in his memory, linked by no association with the world of thought and of action which immediately surrounds it, or with that which is within it. Tell the child to observe the lines of the map which hangs perpetually before his eyes, and talk to him only of the *names* of the places indicated upon it, and you will soon weary his attention; but speak to him of the living men who inhabit any of these places, tell him of their stature and aspect and dress and ways of life and of their forms of worship—speak of the climate of that country, of the forms of vegetable and animal life with which his eye would be conversant if he dwelt there, of the trees and flowers that grow there, and of the birds and beasts—and you will carry his interest with you.'

**Value of this early training as a preparatory step.** By such training, the pupils will not only learn to form true notions of the terms generally used in describing countries, but they will come to understand what is really meant by a *map* of a country. And this is essential when we consider how frequently we must appeal to the map when teaching geography.

**The first map.** The first map used ought to be a rough sketch of the neighbourhood<sup>1</sup> in which the school is situated, and this chiefly to show to the children what is meant by the word *map*; but the next ought to be a map, not of any particular country, but of the world, on the principle already explained of giving, first, broad ideas of the continents and oceans, and of their relative positions, and then descending to particulars.

**First lesson on it described.** The first lesson on it should consist of the very simple one of assisting the children to distinguish the coloured from the uncoloured or white parts of the map. The very youngest children will be capable of learning to do this. The only error they are likely to make is to point to the white portion outside the circular black lines which bound the hemispheres.

**Second lesson.** They are next to learn to distinguish the different portions of coloured surface from each other—to trace, in fact, the boundaries of each. Their attention may then be directed to the thick black irregular lines, and other peculiar marks traced here and there over the map. They are next to learn that the coloured part represents land, and the uncoloured part water, and that the dark shadings referred to represent *mountains, hills, &c.* They should then be called upon to point out themselves the large portions of land, and the various mountain chains, &c., scattered over the map. They may then be told the names of the countries, and be called upon to point out each when its name is mentioned.

**Third lesson.** Their attention may next be called to the fact that the uncoloured parts, which represent water, are all connected together like one body, but that nevertheless those portions of it that lie between the different divisions of land get different names, each, however, being called an *ocean*. For instance, that part of the water which appears on a map *above* Europe, Asia, and America, is called the Arctic, or Northern Ocean; the part *below* Asia is called the Indian Ocean; the part between America and Europe or Africa is called the Atlantic Ocean; the part to the *left hand* of America and *right hand* of Asia is called the Pacific:

<sup>1</sup> The Ordnance Survey Maps would supply to each teacher, with great accuracy, a representation of

his own neighbourhood, which he could easily enlarge so as to serve for a good school map.

while the part *below* America, Africa, and New Holland is called the Southern, or Antarctic Ocean. The small hinged globe<sup>1</sup> may now be used to show that the Arctic, the Pacific, and the Antarctic Oceans are not in reality divided, though each appears in two different places on the map. In fact, that they cannot be divided, as there is no land by which any separation could be effected. When familiar with the appearance of the *oceans*, their attention may also be called to the other portions of water on the earth's surface, that is, to *lakes* and *rivers*, and in connection with this they may be told that all the visible water on the surface of the globe is contained in these three—in the oceans (with their subdivisions), in the lakes, and in the rivers.

**Fourth lesson.** In this lesson the terms *above*, *below*, to the *right hand*, and to the *left hand*, are used. They should now be told that for these terms are substituted the technical terms, North, South, East, and West, which, so far as a map is concerned, express exactly the same sense. They should be made perfectly familiar with the use of these as applied to a map, and for this purpose they might be got to show the country painted *above* Africa, *below* Europe, to the *right hand* of Africa, to the *left hand* of Asia, &c.; and then to show the country to the *north* of Africa, to the *south* of Europe, to the *east* of Africa, and to the *west* of Asia, their attention being called to the fact that the answer in each case is the same.

**Cardinal points.** The true meaning of the terms north, south, east, and west is of course different. It is now the time to show them what these terms mean when applied to the earth itself instead of to the map. This should be done by reference to the sun. (See Dean Dawes' 'Hints,' page 5, for very useful suggestions to enable a child to gain a good knowledge of the four cardinal points.)

**Should point to the actual position of each country on the earth.** When they have acquired this information, they may be told that any country lying to the north of another is painted *above* it on the map, or if to the south it is painted *below* it, and so on with the other points; but they should be made invariably, in the beginning, to point out not only the position of each country on the map, but its actual direction on the globe from where they are standing at the time. If the map were placed on the north wall of the school, some assistance might be afforded, as the countries will then be to the east and west, as they are actually upon the earth's surface.

<sup>1</sup> I allude to 'Malby's Semi-Terrestrial Globe,' manufactured for the

Commissioners of National Education, Ireland.



**Next lessons.** As the pupils have thus far learned the names and relative positions of the continents and oceans, they should now be taught their chief subdivisions—the most marked in outline of the several countries in each continent, and the largest of the several bays, gulfs, and seas belonging to each ocean. They will then learn their less prominent divisions, together with the names of the chief capes, mountains, lakes, rivers, &c., throughout the world.

**Nature of their answers.** In answering upon this they should tell about *a country*, its name and position; as Siberia to the north of Asia, China to the south-east, &c. About *a cape*, its name and position; as Cape of Good Hope to the south of Africa, Cape Horn to the south of South America, &c. About *a mountain*, its name, position, and direction; as the Rocky Mountains to the west of North America, running from north to south. About *a river*, its source, direction, and ending; as the Amazon, rising in the Andes Mountains, flowing easterly into the Atlantic Ocean, near the Equator. While, as regards the *oceans*, they should be able to name their subdivisions in order, and to tell what the straits and channels in each ocean separate and connect.

**Definitions of terms.** In connection with this, they should learn the definitions of the several geographical terms; as island, lake, river, gulf, strait, isthmus, continent, &c., *and always with reference to the map.* A child, for instance, is told that ‘an isthmus is a narrow piece of land joining two larger portions,’ and then several instances should be shown to him on the map; after which he should be called upon to discover others for himself, correcting him in each case when wrong. He should see that the land must not only connect, but be narrower than what it joins, before we can call it an isthmus. Thus Suez, Panama, Corinth, are isthmuses, because they join pieces of land broader than themselves; while, on the other hand, the chain of the Pyrenees, though in strictness the connecting link between France and Spain, is not an isthmus, for though it connects, as all isthmuses do, it is too large relatively to what it joins to be included under the definition.

In the same way can be explained the peculiarities of a strait, a bay, a gulf, a lake, an island, &c.

**When a definition is forgotten, appeal to map.** When a child happens to forget a definition, it is better to refer him to the map than to tell it to him. Thus, if he forget what a *lake* is, a number of lakes should be shown to him, and from a comparison of these he should be assisted to draw for himself the definition required. If he succeed, it is not likely that he will ever again forget it.

**Carelessness in pointing to name instead of the place.** Let me now guard the teachers against a carelessness, too often

met with in the use of the maps, which permits the child to point to the *name* of what he is desired to show, instead of to its actual *place*. I have seen many children, when told to point out the Cape of Good Hope, for instance, who pointed merely to the word *cape*, or to the whole expression 'Cape of Good Hope,' although these words are printed on the *white* surface representing water. They were actually, therefore, pointing to an ocean instead of to a cape, and, as found upon examination to be the case, they were learning to look upon a cape as water, instead of land. This error more frequently happens, and is probably a more frequent cause of inaccuracies, in pointing out towns. Those children neither know the true position or the comparative magnitude of what they point out, who represent one town by a long name like St. Petersburg or Constantinople, and another by the short one Paris or London. Nor, when they mistake where the letters are printed for the position of the town itself, can they find the river upon which it is built, or, very frequently, the county or country in which it is. Such errors are the result of carelessness or injurious haste, and admit of no apology. I think it is sufficient, however, merely to point them out, to get them removed.

**Danger of using the map.** The danger of using the map is that the teaching may degenerate into mere 'map teaching.' It is one thing, however, to teach the map and another to teach geography. A knowledge of geography is not secured by the mere pointing out of places, or in telling their names and relative positions as they appear; however well the map may be known, it is but a picture after all, and geography does not treat of pictures, but of real land and water. No opportunity, therefore, should be omitted of withdrawing the minds of the class from the map, to fix them on that which it is supposed to represent. This will be difficult if the master treat geography merely as consisting of so many names of rivers, countries, lakes, &c.; but if, remembering that all knowledge has man himself and his different relations for its object, and that every study becomes interesting and valuable in proportion as it is directed to that end, he treats, in his geographical lessons, of the productions of the world, of its different climates, of the exploration of mariners, the acquisition of warriors, the extent and variety of commerce, the relationship existing, whether friendly or unfriendly, amongst the different families of the earth, of the manners and customs of the people, &c., he will have no difficulty in withdrawing the child's mind from the picture to the reality. And in proportion as his illustrations are vivid and his descriptions interesting, his labour will be less.

**What should be combined with each lesson on the map.** During the whole time, therefore, that he is teaching the map—

for it is necessary to teach the map as well as to teach geography—care should be taken to combine with each lesson as many little facts, within the comprehension of the children and suitable to the growth of their mind, as will tend to *realise* the subject, and make it interesting and instructive. They may be told, as already stated, the productions of each country—under the three heads of animal, vegetable, and mineral—and which of them form the chief exports, with what country each chiefly trades, and for what articles. They should also learn the different races and habits of the people; the various causes which retain them in one spot, as in China; or determine them upon particular countries, as Australia, California, &c., with the routes pursued by emigrants and those engaged in commerce, in going from place to place; they should also know the influence of geographical position, or the proximity to deserts, mountains, &c., upon temperature, upon health, upon the races of animals, and the growth of plants. The mineral wealth of the large mountain chains, the character of the rivers rising in them, whether rapid and shallow, slow and deep, navigable or not, and if navigable, the towns which have sprung up on their banks, together with their commercial character, should also form portions of the lessons.<sup>1</sup> Each lesson must become more minute, and each description more strictly accurate and scientific.

When giving those facts, the teacher should take every occasion to make the children compare them with what they already know, *or with what they had observed in their own country and neighbourhoods*. It is by such a comparison that knowledge of distant things and places is made real and instructive.

**A country once well described becomes a standard.** It is a good plan to describe one country well, and make it the

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Combe, in his 'Notes on the United States of America,' mentions the plan which a gentleman adopts to improve his sons in geography, and which I think may be followed with advantage by teachers. He desires one of his sons to read from the daily newspapers the list of ships which have arrived in the port of Boston (any other port would, of course, do). It specifies the places from which they have come, and the nature of the cargo. He then gets one to point the place out on the map; another is designed to assign a reason why it brings that particular cargo from that particular place. This leads to an explanation of climate, soil, and natural productions

of that part of the globe; and this is often followed up by descriptive particulars concerning the religion, government, manners, and customs of the people.

This will be found a difficult test for even advanced pupils, as geography is now taught in schools. I select a dozen of the ports mentioned in a Liverpool newspaper as carrying on a trade with Great Britain, and anyone who tries will find how few scholars could state where they are, or the nature of the cargo usually brought from them: Callao, Matamoras, Pensacola, Taganrog, Cardenas, Matanzas, Lagos, Massowah, Tamataive, Macao, Pernambuco, and Stavanger.

standard for most others. 'If any one country were well taught, its size made fully apparent, its natural features all placed as a picture before the mind, its productions, its people, its usages, its laws, its religion, all impressed and explained, it would become a kind of central point of light and knowledge, from which the scholar could proceed to other countries, until he has, as it were, paced the globe, circumnavigated its oceans, and seen in his mind's eye everything remarkable as he passed onwards.'

'Lively narratives of travellers and tourists might be used with great advantage in teaching geography to primary schools. The description of a country like Switzerland, its mountains, lakes, plains, glaciers, waterfalls, avalanches, smiling valleys, and eternal snows, all accompanied with a proper map and a description of the habits, history, and government of the people, would certainly do far more to instruct the mind than a catalogue of boundaries and divisions involving a number of names to which no mental imagery whatever is attached. The comparison of Switzerland, again, with a country like Holland, would draw forth various considerations highly instructive; while the mere localities would be far more vividly than ever impressed upon the mind, by connecting them with the mighty stream which rolls from the summits of the one, and loses itself in the marshes of the other.'<sup>1</sup>

**This subject requires a great deal of general knowledge.** Geography is one of the most valuable of studies, as it deals with so many various subjects of the most practical kind. It instructs, and while it instructs it humanises, by showing us how intimately we are all bound together in working out a common end. There is scarcely any subject, however, which requires from the master a greater amount of general knowledge, or a greater tact in bringing his information to bear upon each day's lesson; but, on the other hand, there is scarcely any subject in which pupils take so much delight, or in which they make such gratifying progress, when it is rationally and carefully taught—taught not as a system of names, but as an interpretation of nature and art.

**Teachers should not wholly neglect names, &c.** In making geography descriptive, the teachers must not, however, fall into the extreme of making it purely so. It is essentially necessary to teach the *names* of places, of mountains, rivers, oceans, seas, and the whole topography of the map, as a picture of what in reality exists, as it is to teach the facts to which I have previously alluded; but instead of teaching the names by themselves, they should be joined with everything which will create in the minds

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1848-9, vol. ii. p. 469.

of the children an interest and a pleasure, so that, thus associated, they may be permanently remembered.<sup>1</sup>

**What a knowledge of geography is.** The following extract from Dr. Arnold's 'Lectures on History,' places the connection between the two portions of geography in a clear light, while at the same time it contains some hints upon the general objects of the study, which will be of assistance to the teachers:—

'Let us consider a little what a knowledge of geography is. First, I grant, that it is a knowledge of the relative position and distance of places from one another, and by places I mean either towns or the habitations of particular tribes or nations, for I think our first notion of a map is that of a plan of the dwellings of the human race. We connect it strictly with man and with man's history, and here I believe with many persons geography stops. They have an idea of the shape, relative position, and distance of different countries, and of the position, that is, in respect to the points of the compass, and mutual distance of the principal towns. Everyone, for instance, has a notion of the shapes of France and Italy: that one is situated to the north-west of the other, and that their frontiers join; and again, everyone knows that Paris is situated in the north of France, Bordeaux in the south-west; that Venice lies in the north-east corner of Italy, and Rome nearly in the middle, between north and south, towards the western sea. This much of geography is indeed indispensable to the simplest understanding of history, and this kind of knowledge extending over more or less countries, as it may be, and embracing with more or less minuteness the divisions, provinces, and positions of the

<sup>1</sup> The *names* may be made interesting by an attention to their derivation. In fact, 'the *Etymology* of geographical names forms an important feature in this branch of knowledge. The name of a place often tells its condition or history; and the explanation of the same, by calling into exercise the power of association increases the probability of its being remembered. Thus the name *Buenos Ayres* still shows the salubrity of the air of that town; Sierra, the Spanish name for a range of hills, the *sax*-like appearance which it presents; New York tells us that it was once a colony of *England*, and those who know that it was first called New *Amsterdam* know, too, that it was founded by the *Dutch*; *Virginia* shows that it was colonised in the reign of our virgin queen, Elizabeth; *Carolina*,

during that of Charles (*Carolus*). The term *fell*, applied to mountains in the north of England, the south of Scotland, and to the islands of the north and west, shows that these parts of the country were occupied by some tribe or tribes of Scandinavian origin; while *ben*, or *pen*, found in the most mountainous regions, confirms the facts of history, that these high grounds were unconquered by the northern invaders, and continued in possession of the original Celtic inhabitants. In thus finding out the cause of the name, the reason has been exercised, and the study rendered highly philosophical; and a science which has often been thought to consist only of lists of hard unmeaning words, has been made attractive in a more than usual degree.'—*Min. of Council*, 1846–7, vol. ii. p. 356.

smaller towns, is that which passes, I believe, with many for a knowledge of geography.

'Yet you will observe that this knowledge *does not touch the earth itself*, but only the dwellings of men upon it. It regards the shapes of a certain number of great national estates, if I may so call them, the limits of which, like those of individuals' property, have often respect to no natural boundary, but are purely arbitrary. A real knowledge of geography embraces at once a knowledge of the earth, and of the dwellings of man upon it. It stretches out one hand to history, the other to geology and physiology. It is just that part of the dominion of knowledge where the students of physical and of moral science meet together.'

He adds, 'The deeper the knowledge the easier it is remembered. I find it extremely difficult to remember the position of towns when I have no other associations with them than their situation relative to each other. But let me once understand the *real* geography of a country; its organic structure, the form of its skeleton,—that is, of its hills; the magnitude and course of its veins and arteries—that is, of its streams and rivers; let me conceive of it as a whole mass made up of connected parts, and the position of man's dwellings, varied in reference to these parts, becomes at once easily remembered, and lively and intelligible besides.'

**If skeleton map were given, the pupils should be able to fill in the towns, &c.** In fact, if the skeleton of a country were properly sketched out, if all its natural advantages and disadvantages were fully known, any intelligent child should, from merely knowing the general laws which determine man's residence in different places, be able to place, in the rough outline, without ever consulting the finished map, the majority of the towns and cities it actually possesses. The very effort to do this would be instructive, and even the failures could be made to yield valuable knowledge, by causing enquiry into the reasons for any discrepancy which might exist.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Certain conditions are given, from which certain consequences are to be inferred. Thus they are expected to discover that the rivers of Eastern Europe are slow, and of Western Europe rapid; after having been told that the former have their rise at a slight elevation, and have a lengthened course, and the latter originate in the high land of Central Europe, at no great distance from the sea. Political and social geography are thus shown to be in a great degree dependent on physical geography; the reason is seen why one

country is agricultural and another commercial; why a certain manufacture should be carried on in a particular locality in preference to every other; and why an alteration in the mode of manufacture should involve a change in its seat. Thus, that Holland is agricultural, and England manufacturing; that our cotton manufacture is carried on in South Lancashire and the edges of the neighbouring counties, and not in Lincolnshire; that our manufactures generally are travelling north and west; and that iron, which was once

**Errors now met with in examining upon geography.** In examining a class upon geography, the chief defect now apparent is a want of sequence and proper connection among the several questions. Most teachers begin, no matter with what class—with the highest as well as with the lowest—somewhat thus:—

1. What is a map?
2. What is *this* map a picture of?
3. How is the world divided?
4. How many parts land?
5. How many water?
6. Where is the Equator?
7. Where is the tropic of Cancer, &c., &c.

All these forming the unvarying introduction to some such questions as these:—

1. Show me Europe.
2. Where is the Mediterranean Sea?
3. Point to the Cape of Good Hope.

Now this is very absurd. (1) Because if the queries suit one class, they cannot suit all. (2) The pupils learn the questions and answers by rote, and gradually cease to think upon the subject at all, answering merely mechanically. And (3) the questions are so separated as to destroy all connected thought, and to blend the impressions into a confused mass. At one time they ask about *a line*, at another about *a strait*; one time about *an ocean*, the next about *a mountain*; one time about *a cape*, the next about *the poles*, going from question to question without any distinct purpose in view. This is exactly as if, in teaching grammar, the master asked a question, now about *a noun*, next about *a verb*; now about *a vowel*, and again about *Syntax*.

**Teacher should have a distinct object before him.** In every lesson the teacher should have a distinct object to carry out, and to that he should adhere to the exclusion of everything else. Thus, if he wish to treat of the continents, or of the oceans, or of their subdivisions, or of the mountains of the world, or of its rivers, he may do so in each case, in one lesson or in several: or if he wish to show the natural connection between some of these, as between the shapes of the continents and the oceans, between the mountains and the rivers, between the rivers and the towns, &c., he may do so by grouping them judiciously with that end in view. In fact, if he wish to talk of land, well; if of water, well; and if of their connection, it is well also; but he should know exactly,

largely manufactured in Kent and Sussex, is now only smelted on the great coal fields; are not merely so many facts, but highly interesting

facts—interesting because regarded as effects, the causes of which are perceived, and have probably been discovered by the student himself.

before he begins, about what he intends to talk, so that he may not run one subject into another.<sup>1</sup> His questions and the proper answers should form a connected catechism upon the subject-matter of the lesson, that is, when his object is to *teach*. When he is merely *examining*, it is different; for as in this case he proposes to test what is known, and not to impart methodically arranged information, it is allowable to take a wider latitude, and not only allowable, but judicious.

**Map to be rolled up in examining upon geography.** In *examining* a class, if the object be to test whether the pupils know the *map* or not, the map should be exposed; but if the object be to test whether they know *geography*, the map should be rolled up. The map is used for *teaching* geography, but not for *examining* upon it.

**Two methods of testing the children's knowledge of what has been already taught to them.** (1) Let the teacher place a black-board beside the map selected, and having directed the class to confine their statements to some one branch—as either the rivers, peninsulas, or the countries, &c.—let him require each boy in turn to name and point out an example, and give some fact connected with it. This fact should be one which the child had already learnt from the master's teaching. The master should now write on the black-board the name of the example given, to serve as a guide for the closing part of the lesson. Thus, if the first child select the Danube (the map being Europe, and the subject the rivers), he may say, pointing to the map, 'The Danube is the largest river in Europe; it rises in Baden, and flows east into the Black Sea.' The teacher will then write the word *Danube*, or an abbreviation of it, on the black-board. The next child may select the Volga, and in that case the master writes this word below the other; and so on, until all the children have named examples.

When all have done so, the master should select any boy at random, and pointing to the first word written on the black-board, require him to trace the river out, and tell exactly what was first said of it. He will then call upon another child to do the same with the second name, and so on.

This plan of examination secures the attention of the class, and

<sup>1</sup> 'Several masters are now adopting the plan of first describing the great mountain ranges of a country, then the rivers rising on each side of the watershed and passing through the intervening valleys; next, the chief towns along their banks, and

on the line of coast; and lastly, the political divisions of which these towns are the capital, and with which their names are associated.'—*Min. of Council*, 1851, p. 1013.

See also 'Outlines of Geography,' by Professor Pillans.



by the repetition involved, it fixes the information conveyed more firmly in the minds of all.

(2) Select the two boys from the class who are best informed on the maps. The class can then be separated into two divisions, having these boys as heads, by their alternate calling of the remaining pupils to either side. The abilities of the pupils will in this way be pretty fairly balanced. When thus arranged in two lines (A and B), the first boy in A asks a question of any boy on the opposite side, which if he answers requires no further action. The head in line B puts a question in the same way to any boy in division A, his own dignity and the teacher's interference always preventing his questioning opponents of marked inferiority. If the boy questioned is unable to give the answer, the questioner supplies it, and in return is questioned by the former, his failure in answering counterbalancing the defect on the other side, but provided he answers the defaulter in the first case becomes his prisoner, and takes his place behind his captor, having while in that position no voice in the competition. In the event of a boy having already secured a prisoner, he can save himself from imprisonment by setting the captive free. The questions are asked in this way alternately from side to side, the teacher acting as umpire, and deciding the legitimacy of question, answer, and result. The field from which the queries are selected should be previously apportioned and adhered to in the lesson; care being taken to reject questions on trivial or unimportant places, which the love of victory may incite the children to employ. Of course the division having the greater number of prisoners at the termination of the lesson carries the victory. This is called by the children, *prison-bar*, from its resemblance to that game; and as they take great pleasure in it, it might be occasionally practised, especially on wet days, with considerable advantage.

**When text-books are to be used.** Text-books on geography, like text-books on grammar, are necessary merely to complete the picture whose chief features have been already sketched out by oral teaching; they should not, therefore, be put into the child's hands until he knows the Map of the World well. When this is the case, the text-books may be used to assist the maps—which are but text-books in another form—and the instruction must be more systematic and minute.

**Order in which continents, &c., may be taught from them.** It is difficult to say to which of the continents the teacher should first attend, and in what order they should follow each other, so as to provide, as well as possible, for the numerous cases in which children are forced to leave school before they learn a complete course. I think the following arrangement as good as any:—

Teach *first*. Europe, in connection with the child's own country.

*Secondly*. Asia—the broadest features not already known—together with the next most important part of the British Isles.

*Thirdly*. America, as Asia, in connection with the remaining part of the British Isles.

*Fourthly*. Africa and New Holland, and British Dependencies.

*Finally*. A minute knowledge of the continents, with a revision of Great Britain and Ireland.

Such an arrangement introduces the child at an early stage to a knowledge of his country, and will therefore tend to remove the stigma, which is sometimes deservedly attached to many schools, that their pupils can give minute descriptions of Siberia or Patagonia, for instance, but cannot tell anything of the British Empire, or even of the counties, &c., of their native land.

**Lessons for committal to be small.** The lessons marked out for each evening's study should not be too large, and prior to the committal to memory the pupils should go over them upon the map—either the maps at the school, or atlases which for this purpose they should all be obliged to purchase. They will thus be able to get the lessons off more quickly and more correctly, and to understand them better.

**Globe, use of, in the earlier lessons.** Up till now I have merely referred to a globe once, and that to show the connection existing between portions of the same ocean and continent when separated on the map. Thus far I think it necessary in the beginning, and also probably to give the children true ideas of the position of different countries in respect to each other, and their distance asunder; but, in my opinion, it is very far from correct to use a globe regularly from the first, or to commence geography at all by discussions upon the shape of the earth, its size, measurement, lines, &c.

**A child's notion that the World is a plane may be allowed for some time.** The child's notions of the world as a level surface, dotted here and there with hills and valleys, inasmuch as they are very natural and unproductive of any serious error, should be allowed to continue for some time. Very little good, if any, ever results from violently overthrowing the preconceived notions of a child, no matter how erroneous these notions may be; they should be gradually corrected by the child himself. It will not do to tell him that he is wrong, and that a certain other thing is right. He should have the materials placed before him which will enable him to conclude for himself that he is so. When a child, for instance, supposes the world to be a plane, he certainly makes a mistake; but instead of blame, he is rather deserving of praise for

having brought his senses to bear correctly upon the things around him. Everything he sees or knows tends to make him think so of the world, and it would be unnatural for him to think otherwise. He merely commits the error of judging from a paucity or incompleteness of data. The teacher's duty is, therefore, not only to tell him that he is wrong, but to place before him the facts he did not know of, and the very same mind that previously drew the wrong conclusion will now draw the correct one. It is on this account that I have recommended first the use of maps. As he advances, and is capable of understanding the proofs of the earth's sphericity, he may begin the study of globes and mathematical geography.

**Proficiency for each class.** It merely remains for me now to sketch out the proficiency of each class in accordance with what I have just written. Geography can be introduced at a very early age, and that without occupying much of the master's own time; for, after the child has acquired correct notions of what is meant by the words town, country, &c., the map teaching may safely be left very much to monitors. Even without monitors, if the maps are exposed before their view, the children will be able to collect a good deal of information by themselves. Geography also forms an agreeable change from the other subjects of their school course; but that the young children may not weary of it, their lesson should never be allowed to extend beyond fifteen or twenty minutes. The following is the *minimum* which, I think, every teacher should expect from his classes:—

1st. Should know the oceans, continents, and their relative positions.

2nd. The subdivisions of the oceans and continents, together with the outlines of Ireland (or England, or Scotland, as the case may be).

3rd. All this, together with the chief lakes, rivers, mountains, capes, &c., in the two maps—World and Ireland.

4th. In addition to this, the text-book of Europe and Ireland.

5th. The whole of the text-book fairly, but that part relating to the British Isles well; and, in addition, a fair knowledge of Dr. Sullivan's 'Geography Generalised.'

## CHAPTER VIII.

## HOME LESSONS.

**Necessity for.** A child has so much to learn, and so little time, if in the poorer ranks of life, to learn it in, that it is not only necessary to establish a judicious and economical system of instruction in school, but it is also exceedingly important to arrange such a course of studies as will make every moment *out of* school available that can, consistently with other duties, be devoted to learning. Hence the necessity for what are called Home Lessons.

**They extend the school hours.** The school hours are about four daily; if, therefore, a boy's studies were limited to that portion of each day during which he was in immediate connection with his teacher, there would be exactly five-sixths of his time remaining, from which, if we deduct a large allowance for sleep, for taking food, for recreation, and for those small household duties that children are occasionally called on to perform, there would still be a considerable margin unprofitably employed, and which, being generally spent in idleness, would be so far counteractive of the improvement effected during school hours. And when we consider how very few years make up the entire school life of the majority of children, we cannot but attach to this loss the greatest weight. Home lessons are a most important means to mitigate the evils of short attendance and prolong school life.

**Their moral influence.** But besides the advantage thus springing from a judicious appropriation of time and continuance of mental effort, during a period which would otherwise be devoted to idleness, there are other advantages of no less importance attending the introduction into the school course of home lessons; one of these, and by no means the least important, is the *moral* influence which they exercise. Those lessons are not prepared under the master's eye; they are prepared *at home*, away from his control, and are, therefore, performed chiefly from the child's sense of duty. But a boy who does things because it is his duty to do them, is morally advancing, and the exercise that constantly affords him the opportunity for so acting must be regarded as an admirable means for moral culture.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Home lessons create habits of obedience to motives not suggested by the dictation or presence of the master, but coming directly from the

**They make self-educators.** Owing to the large amount of voluntary exertion, of unaided solitary work, and of individual, independent mental effort which they necessarily require, they create habits of self-dependence, of self-reliance, and a resolution to overcome difficulties. These advantages are very important, especially when we consider that a child can never become a self-educator by even the best course of mere teaching. He has two instructors—the master and himself; but the best cultivation of his mind is made by his own unaided exertions. Tell him all that is known, it will not improve him unless he thinks and works for himself, and in this light ‘home lessons’ are essential. They permit him, to a considerable extent, *to educate himself.*

**Afford practice in collecting the meanings of printed words.** They give to the child, also, sufficient practice in collecting, without the master’s aid, the meaning of printed words; and as books are now the great means of education, the power of mastering their contents by one’s own unaided exertion is at the root of all learning and of all progress, and is, therefore, an advantage second to none other.

**They reproduce the business of the day.** Improvement to be thoroughly effectual must be continuous, and, in the case of children, it is the result of endless repetitions. Home lessons are, therefore, valuable also for the aid which they can be made to afford in causing the progress in school to be less evanescent, for it is easy by their assistance to reproduce what has been already gone over, and to supplement it. The home duty can be made either an extension of the school duty, or a reproduction of it, or the two duties can be so intimately blended together in other ways, that they will mutually assist each other. They form also an admirable test for the amount of information a child carries away from any given lesson, and of his ability to apply it.

**They show the amount of interest each boy exhibits in his own advancement.** They serve, moreover, to show, probably in a way that no other lesson is so well calculated to do, the amount of interest and heartiness with which a scholar works. The difference in the zeal which boys bring to bear upon their school duties is even greater than the difference in ability which they exhibit, and it is a matter of considerable importance for the master to be able to determine exactly the amount of hearty co-operation he is to expect from each.

**They create home tastes.** These lessons give children home tastes, and domestic habits which may hereafter preserve them from

pupil’s own sense of duty, they have a moral effect, at least as valuable as

any other benefit that attends them.—*Min. of Council, 1846–6, vol. ii. p. 334.*

many dangers, and they ought on this account, at least, to be a favourite with all parents.

**Well regarded by intelligent parents.** Some parents, I know, are exceedingly careless in respect to them, and some even oppose them; but home lessons have always been well regarded by every intelligent parent, not only on the grounds just stated, but because they afford a most satisfactory proof of the master's care and the child's diligence and anxiety to improve. When they are well carried out, the parents will not only take a greater interest in them, but in all that concerns the school; they will more readily cooperate with the teachers, for these lessons form, to a certain extent, that binding link which connects the master's influence with the homes of his children. In many cases they have proved also the means of rousing the parents themselves to a sense of their own ignorance, so that many men, who can now read and write, have owed the first thoughts they had about self-improvement to seeing their children engaged with their school books by the fire-side; and many have even received their first lessons from their own little ones.

**Value of home lessons may be lost from various causes.** These lessons may, however, fail from various causes. They may not be adapted to the exact abilities of each child. They may be so difficult as to be unintelligible without assistance, and so long as to weary and disgust; while, on the other hand, they may be too easy—they may require so little mental effort, that the child may learn to neglect what he feels he can perform with so little trouble. Again, they may have little or no connection with the school business for each day; they may be got off in school instead of at home; they may be heard without judgment, revised without regularity or earnestness, and required only at intervals.

**Proper length to be given for home study in each subject.** With regard to the length of the task, it is impossible to give any definite rule; each teacher must be guided in this solely by his experience of the children *and by the circumstances of their homes*. In many districts the children are required to work before and after school hours, and in some seasons they are more constantly engaged than at others; the home lessons should therefore be different in such cases from those applicable to children more favourably circumstanced, *and they should vary with the season*—long, when the work is scarce; short, when business is hurried.

**Arrangement of home lessons depends on number of books to be learned.** Lessons on all subjects ought not to be said on one day, as some teachers require. If, for instance, a child is getting tasks in the following books: Grammar, Geography,

Table-book, Arithmetic, Spelling-book—it would be wrong to oblige him to get a task every day in all of these. The better plan is to group them in pairs, giving, suppose, grammar and spelling-book for Monday; geography and spelling-book for Tuesday; table-book and arithmetic for Wednesday; grammar and geography for Thursday; spelling and arithmetic, with a short lesson added in the table-book, for Friday, and repetition for Saturday. This, of course, is but one way in which the lessons may be grouped; others equally good can be made out, but which it is unnecessary to give here, as teachers will have no difficulty in making such arrangements for themselves as will best suit their respective schools.

**Depends also on the teaching power.** The arrangement of the lessons must also depend a good deal upon the number of classes to be taught and upon the extent of the teaching power in the school. It is injudicious to introduce home lessons on grammar, geography, &c., too early—the proper time for the use of these text-books is already given—and it is equally injudicious to make the lessons so numerous that the teaching power of the school will be unable to met the increased labour. No lessons should be introduced which cannot be properly *taught*—not *heard* merely—and no lesson should be omitted which can. I do not mean taught by the master himself, for some of these lessons may, in case of necessity, be taught by an intelligent lad selected out of the senior class, and the teacher in setting apart the quantity in each case should take this fact into consideration.

**Home business as connected with school business.** The *home* business may be connected with the *school* business in many ways, and in nearly all the subjects of the school course. (1) *Pennmanship*.—Each child may be required to practise writing in copybooks, from models previously set by the teacher, and in books distinct from those in use in school. These can be brought for examination at whatever times the master may think correct, once a week, or once a fortnight, or monthly, according to the proficiency of each child, and the dependence to be placed in him. (2) *Arithmetic*.—Certain questions may be given to the class, to which they will bring answers neatly written out. Four or five questions, judiciously selected, will be sufficient. (3) *Grammar*.—Those learning to parse may be called upon to write out the parsing in full of any passage selected, together with the rules of syntax relating to any particular case; while those who are learning the parts of speech merely may be called upon to transcribe forty or fifty lines from a Reading Book, marking the *nouns*, or *verbs*, or *adjectives*, &c., or two or three of them, according to some system of marking already determined upon—as, for instance, underlining the noun, putting two lines below the verb, one above

and one below the adjective, one only above the adverb, &c.; or they may simply write the words in columns, each column being set apart for a different part of speech; and occasionally they may be called upon to state the reasons for each answer. Or, again, certain words may be given, which they are to place in sentences of their own forming, where these words will have different uses or will be different parts of speech. Or, certain rules and definitions may be given, which they are to illustrate by examples different from those in the book; or they may be called upon to quote the most ordinary errors of speech committed in the neighbourhood, and to show why each is wrong. (4) *Geography*.—They may be called upon to describe any country *solely by reference to the map*, its shape, its boundaries, its rivers, towns, &c.; they may be required to tell the seas, bays, gulfs, the straits, &c. of any country; or to answer any other question, within the immediate sphere of their knowledge, upon places, people, exports, &c. (5) *Reading*.—The pupils may be called upon to read the lesson over carefully at home, so as to be able to answer questions on its subject-matter, and to read with ease and fluency. This preparation may be tested, either by examining them before allowing them to read it again in the presence of the master, or by calling upon them to produce a written summary of its leading facts, or at least the different heads of which it treats, and to be able to say something on these heads. Or, the children may be required to bring a written abstract of what they were previously told about any lesson taught to them the day before, or at any time selected. (6) *Meanings*.—They may be called upon to bring lists of the meanings—that is, the applications—of the chief words in any lesson selected. These may consist of words already told to them, or, in the case of the most advanced classes, words for which they must consult a *dictionary*.<sup>1</sup> The very fact of the child being obliged to go over each line to test whether he knows the meaning of the words, as they occur, is advantageous. Care should be taken, however, not to allow this exercise to become merely rote or mechanical, and the teacher should still remember that it is to him, after all, and to his oral instructions;

<sup>1</sup> It is somewhat singular that this is a book which a teacher seldom or never recommends pupils to buy, yet it is obviously one of the most necessary and useful books they could possess. If a child once acquires the habit of using a dictionary, he will learn more in one month than another of equal abilities would learn in three without one. A useful home lesson might be given twice a week to the highest class, by the teacher

selecting some page in their reading-book, and requiring them to find out in their dictionaries every word with the meaning of which they were unacquainted; the meaning should then be committed to memory, and the next morning the class should be required to write down the meaning of the words, and the parts of speech to which they severally belong.—*Minutes of Council*, 1856, p. 375.



that the pupil must chiefly look for his vocabulary. (7) *Spelling*.—Pupils may be called upon to prepare the passages selected from their reading-books, or to commit to memory certain columns in the 'Spelling-Book Superseded.' This preparation may also be made introductory to the *dictation* exercise. (8) *Etymology*.—They may be called upon to write out the derivation—the root, prefix, and affix—in any list of words selected, and to define the meaning of the words in terms of the signification of its parts. Or, they may be called upon to make out lists of roots, with derivations from them, &c. &c. (9) *Composition*.—This may be connected with the school business by making it refer to something already taught to the class; or by calling upon the children to read over and reproduce in their own words any passage selected. Original composition is a very valuable home exercise, and by its very nature it must be confined to the best of the senior classes. (10) *Memory*.—This may be strengthened by the committal of pieces of prose or verse, as already explained in a previous page.<sup>1</sup>

**Home lessons to be partly oral and partly written.** We thus see that home lessons can be made to embrace nearly all the subjects taught in school, and that they should be partly written and partly oral. In the junior classes they should be chiefly oral; in the middle division of the school there should be nearly an equal

<sup>1</sup> The following extract is from Gill's *School Management*, p. 123:—

'A better plan of home tasks, accomplishing spelling and promoting habits of observation and enquiry at the same time, is that of Dean Dawes. It consists in giving out a subject for a written exercise, in which the child's own observation or reading, or its parents' or its neighbours' employments, will give the required information. This is prepared at night, and being presented in class the next morning, occasion is taken to hold a conversation on the misspelt words. With this plan may be associated—but in the higher classes—that of Isaac Taylor, for the cultivation of language in connection with the conceptive faculty—though equally well adapted to improve spelling. It is to give an object or a class of objects, to have written all the words descriptive of them; thus, *leaves* are—"thick, thin, polished, rough, indented, even, scalloped, trifoliate, hairy, downy, dull." The *sky* is—"serene, stormy, clear, overcast, misty, hazy, foggy, gloomy, lowering, bright, resplendent, brilliant,

deep, dull, brazen, ruffled, red, azure, vaulted, boundless."

Mr. Morrell, in his General Report for 1851, Min. of Council, p. 917, gives the following example of home tasks given out by the master of the Stockport British School, for the week:—

#### FIRST CLASS.

MONDAY.—Give a list of the capes, bays, and rivers of England.

TUESDAY.—Enter a page of sums.

WEDNESDAY.—Parse the first forty-eight words in the reading lesson.

THURSDAY.—Write a list of the mountains of England.

FRIDAY.—Write the definitions of the parts of speech.

#### SECOND CLASS.

MONDAY.—Write a page, and underline the nouns.

TUESDAY.—Enter a page of sums.

WEDNESDAY.—Write a list of the streets in Stockport.

THURSDAY.—Write a list of the counties of England.

FRIDAY.—Enter a page of sums.

mixture of the oral and written elements; but in the senior classes the written exercises should largely predominate. These are the most difficult, but they will be found to be the most valuable, as they teach spelling, grammar, composition, &c., as well as the immediate subject to which they are supposed to relate.

**Revision essential.** When the exercises are written, they should be revised with great care and faithfulness. This is the chief difficulty when the classes are large, but without it the lessons become useless, if not injurious. The teacher should make time for doing it himself, or else delegate the duty to such of his scholars or monitors as he can thoroughly depend upon.

**Method of.** The following plan of examination is stated by Mr. Morrell to be amongst the most effectual devised. It is practised by the teacher who describes it for him. The teacher says, 'I have one hundred and twenty slates of home tasks brought at once. After play-time each boy takes his slate from its nail, and stands to a line round the room. On one side are those who know how to do long division, that is, the reduction and proportion classes; these I call *examiners*. On the other side are all the others, who will generally require their sums to be examined, and many of them *set*. I then walk along the line and hear every copy read; then the examiners sit on four or five forms, and the others take their slates to them to be examined; if the work be wrong, the examiner hears the boy do it till it is right; but if found correct, he signs his name and sends the owner with it to me. The examiners also bring their own slates to me at the same time. I seat myself conveniently to receive the slates, inspect them, and mark the date in a fractional form on every book or slate, as far as the boy has done. If I have any suspicion of the examiner, I hand the slate to a pupil-teacher to check any error. Generally I find nearly all this can be done in twenty or twenty-five minutes.' The practice of bringing the exercise worked out on slates may be objectionable, from the awkwardness and inconvenience of bringing slates backwards and forwards from home to school; but the principle of correction here resorted to—that of appointing deputy examiners—may be carried out advantageously in almost any school. But teachers ought to remember, that the less they depute their own work to others, the better it will be done. Properly prepared note-books ought always to be used instead of slates.

**Oral lessons.** I have noticed two very serious and very general faults in hearing these. (1) The tasks are merely repeated, or *said*, as it is called, to the master; and (2) they are heard individually, and not, as they ought to be, in classes.

**1. Rote answering.** The mere repetition of the words of any

lesson is no proof that the child understands it. If he say it well, it is certainly a test of his diligence and earnestness when at home, and is so far satisfactory; but the master who limits his attention to this test is discharging his duty very badly, and indeed is doing no more than any boy might do for another, as not the smallest professional skill is requisite.

When the 'tasks' are so taught, very few children have proper ideas of what is contained in the text-books, but especially of the definitions, in which, however, a clear and full comprehension of their meaning is so absolutely necessary. In grammar, for instance, when pupils are questioned as to the meanings of the terms generally made use of, they utterly fail. In geography, the things defined are so seldom explained, that their knowledge in this most interesting subject is mere word knowledge, and the map is so seldom consulted during the repetition, that the exercise becomes a mere test of memory, that child passing the examination most creditably who *remembers* most. And so on with the other subjects. Lessons thus taught are worthless in an educational point of view, and he who knows how very valuable such lessons could be made, must look, as I do, with deep regret upon the unintellectual form which they are allowed to assume.

**2. Individual teaching.** To hear the tasks individually is a most serious fault, inasmuch as, from the loss of time which it necessarily involves, the master is obliged to omit some of the most important parts of his duty, and to discharge the rest without intelligence, and without that patient thoughtfulness which is necessary to success. Such a practice is moreover subversive of all order and all system.

**Evils of.** About half an hour daily is the period generally set apart for 'Home Lessons,' and this, in a properly conducted school, is amply sufficient; but by the individual system of hearing them, it would occupy at least ten times as long. Let us take, for instance, the moderate calculation that there will be, on an average, the following children in each class:—

10 in the highest,  
10 in the next,  
12 in the next,

and that each child will be prepared with tasks in *two* separate subjects; and this is a very low estimate indeed. There will, therefore, be, according to this system, sixty-four distinct tasks to be gone through, which at five minutes for each, will give *five hours and twenty minutes*, a time that could not possibly be so devoted.

Suppose that these are heard in the half-hour, as they profess to be; then we have the startling fact, that each task could not occupy more than *half a minute*! Now, what task could be even repeated in that time? I am aware that many teachers, who have half an hour marked on their time-tables for this duty, occupy very frequently an hour and upwards, in order to get through the business tolerably; but this is merely committing a violation of rules in neglecting the written record of the school, and does not much improve the value of the tasks themselves. Can anything, therefore, be plainer than that either the individual system must be abandoned, or the lessons must remain, as they now are, a mere mockery of teaching?

**Irregular attendance not a good excuse for individual teaching.** The excuse, so frequently offered by teachers, that 'they are driven into this course by the irregularity of the children's attendance,' is not valid. In the first case, nothing should drive them to do what is a mere waste of time, useless to the children and destructive of order; and, secondly, they should not act unjustly, and all who practise this system must clearly do so; for it compels them to punish the most deserving, in order to let offenders escape lightly. That this is so will be easily perceived from the following calculation. Suppose that the lesson extends to half an hour, and that all the children (say fifteen) are learning the same part; it is clear that each child will receive the full benefit of the thirty minutes, on the principle of collective teaching so well understood at the present time. But suppose that one of these attended well, and that the remaining fourteen attended so irregularly that in the end they came all to have different places; the consequence would be that each child would then receive but two minutes instead of thirty; and that he who attended well, and who, on that account deserved encouragement and reward, *would be actually punished by the loss of twenty-eight minutes' instruction*, and this simply because of the irregularity of those with whom it was his misfortune to be associated. And yet this is the result of that system which permits every child to take up the place in his book at which he left off when last in attendance, no matter how far his class-fellows may have gone on. It punishes the just for the unjust.

**Loss brought on each child by himself.** It is no reason to urge that to skip through the book is a disadvantage; for if there is any serious loss, it is brought on those who suffer it by themselves. They, and they only, are to blame, and upon them only should the disadvantage rest. I am aware that most children, on their return after a lengthened absence, insist upon being heard what has been taught to their previous class-fellows; but to any

such child the teacher should always be prepared to say, 'I should be glad to teach you these lessons, and would have done so had you come, but now I cannot possibly teach them to you alone without depriving others of my time, to which they are equally entitled with yourself. You lose certainly for the present, but you have none but yourself to blame. Be therefore more diligent at home to remedy the disadvantage caused by your absence. The evil was brought about by yourself, but the cure is in your own hands.' He can also explain generally to the children that this system causes loss of time to all—that if each had his own way, all would lose the twenty-eight minutes out of the half-hour, and that, therefore, they ought to consider how much more profitable it would be to receive the lesson lasting for *thirty* minutes instead of for *two*, even when joined with the disadvantage of occasionally passing over some pages when unavoidably absent.

**'Skipping' is not so serious an evil as it is thought.** This skipping of pages, however, is not so serious an evil as many suppose. It is too frequently taken for granted that the text-books—the grammar, geography, 'Spelling Book Superseded,' &c.—are so progressively compiled, that one lesson is absolutely and essentially necessary for the proper comprehension of the next. This is by no means the case; each column of the spelling-book is independent of the one before or after; and although in the grammar and geography there is not so great a want of connection, there is yet sufficient to make it quite possible for any child to understand one part without having read what went immediately before. In the description of any continent, for instance, we have the countries and their chief towns, the bays and gulfs, the islands, the mountains, the rivers, &c., grouped separately. A child may not have learned the 'bays and gulfs,' for instance; but he may, nevertheless, be quite capable of getting off any of the others, and, therefore, of joining the class with perfect advantage to himself.

**Changing the system when once established.** Many teachers to whom I have thus explained the defects of the individual system have not given it up. They say it is impossible; but although, in their cases, from its being so long, and therefore so firmly established, giving it up may be a matter of extreme difficulty, and requiring great tact and firmness, yet it is by no means impossible. I have seen the whole system completely changed without a murmur from either the children or the parents, on the appointment of a new teacher; and besides, it is utterly and entirely discontinued in all good schools, of which, I am happy to say, the number is by no means so small that I cannot quote them effectively as examples to others.

Some teachers deceive themselves into the belief that they

have given up the individual system of teaching these lessons when they call up all the classes at one time, and thus imagine that their instruction is, as a consequence, collective; one teacher, in particular, who stated to me that he had only *one* class of home lessons, had in reality a dozen. His method of proceeding was somewhat thus: He called up the three highest reading classes of his school, and formed them into one class, by making them stand together, with toes to the draft circle. He then took the first boy's book, and heard him his spelling; then the next boy's, and heard him; or, if two or three happened to be in the same part of the book, he gave a question to each of them consecutively. But this, as I showed him—without, however, convincing him—was nothing but the individual system, with the shadow of a modification introduced occasionally—a *class* not being a mere assemblage of children round a line, but an assemblage of children receiving a common instruction upon the same lesson.

**Hints to assist teachers in changing.** To assist teachers who are endeavouring to get rid of the individual system, I may suggest the propriety of having at least three different sections for home lessons arranged on the basis of the ordinary classification of the school, but slightly different from it. Suppose the classes for ordinary purposes were *a, b, c, d, e*—*a* being the highest; they might be divided, for the purpose of home lessons, into three, by putting part of *b* with *a*, and the remaining part of it with *c*, and joining *d* and *e* together, for it will always be found that some in any intermediate class will be fitted to go with the next above, while the rest will scarcely be much in advance of those below. Now, if a boy in class *a* is absent for several days, it may so happen that, when he returns, those in class *b* will be about the place at which he was when he left. He can, therefore, fall in with them for some time, until, by a little more diligence and extra work at home, he qualifies himself for his former position.

**Lessons defined for a week in advance.** Again, in each class there should be a black-board or tablet suspended, upon which would be written the lessons for a week *in advance*, and of which each child should be required to take a copy on Friday evening, or Saturday. This would enable all absentees to prepare the proper lesson, if absent any time in the week. This arrangement could be carried out very simply, and is valuable in many ways besides the one just given.

**Preparation of lessons in school.** With regard to the preparation of these lessons *in* school, instead of out of school, it is scarcely necessary to say more than that such a course would entirely defeat every good end they were intended to produce.

The very name of 'home lessons' would show the proper place for their preparation. I am sorry to say, however, that many teachers act with so little thought and good sense as to allow of this preparation in school. Others allow what is called 'looking over' their tasks; and several permit an exercise called 'preparing lessons'—not home lessons necessarily, but any lessons which form a part of the day's business; the plan being, after one lesson has been taught, to send the children to the desks 'to prepare for the next,' and this they continue doing until the master is ready to call them up again; but all these are violations of good order. It is clear that the children should be engaged in school at those duties only which require the immediate care and supervision of the master. It is to receive his aid that they, in fact, come. If, therefore, a portion of time be devoted to what can be equally well done at home—no matter how necessary and valuable the business may be—it is misapplied, and the result is unsatisfactory. It is the master's duty to teach and explain, but not to superintend the preparation.

**Additional remarks on two books.** In conclusion, I shall make a few remarks upon two books used for home lessons—the Table Book, and the 'Spelling Book Superseded.' I have already said all that is necessary upon Grammar, Geography, Arithmetic, &c. in the previous pages.

**1. Table Book.** In questioning the children upon each table, there are several methods: one is to cause the child to repeat the table verbatim: or to call upon him to write it down exactly as printed. The next is to ask the values of each item, taking the names as they occur; as, 'How many *drams* in an *ounce*?' 'How many *ounces* in a *pound*?' &c. The next is to take the items out of the order in which they were learned, that the memory may thus be the more severely tested. And, finally, the table may be examined on somewhat as follows:—

What is the *sixteenth* of an ounce called?

„ *fourth* part of a hundredweight?

„ *fourteenth* of a stone? &c.

**2. Spelling Book Superseded.** This book, as generally taught, is abused; it is converted entirely from the purpose it was intended to serve, and made to do duty as an ordinary spelling book. The pupils prepare it by rote, and so say it. This book was written in connection with the new and improved method of teaching spelling, namely, by dictation; and when used, it should always be in reference to that. It supplies the teacher with many sentences for dictation, framed with considerable ingenuity, and

with a special fitness for what they are intended to serve; and it is from these chiefly that spelling is to be taught, or from others of the teacher's own formation, or, which may be considered better still, from sentences framed by the children themselves. Thus, 'The Queen occupies the *throne* of England'—spell *throne*. 'This was *thrown* away as worthless'—spell *thrown*. Or the two words may be united together in one sentence, as, 'Chances are often *thrown* away by which monarchs might have preserved their *thrones*.' The principle being always to teach spelling by *dictation*, and the meanings of words by their *application*.

In order, however, to draw the attention of the children forcibly to certain words and their meanings, it was necessary to arrange them by themselves. This Dr. Sullivan has done under five distinct heads, which he calls 'verbal distinctions.' And the system of *dictation* does not prevent the children from committing these to memory—this in every system is useful, but the classification aids memory by appealing to the understanding, and renders the committal no longer irksome.

**Five classes of verbal distinctions explained.** The words which form these classes are arranged in reference to their *spelling*, their *pronunciation*, and their *meaning*. In the first class we have words pronounced *exactly* alike, and different in *spelling* and *meaning*; in the second class, the words are pronounced *nearly* alike, and differ as the others; in the third class, we have words *erroneously pronounced alike* by careless and incorrect speakers; in the fourth class we have words that agree in *spelling only*; and in the fifth, we have those that are spelled and pronounced alike, but differ in *meaning*.

**Method of teaching each explained.** In these we have different objects to test, and therefore we cannot, as teachers generally do, apply the same system of questioning to each. In the first class, a child using the words may fail in *spelling*, or if he meet them in a book he may confound their *meaning*; he cannot confound their pronunciation, as they are both pronounced alike. It is, therefore, to the spelling and meaning that the master's questions should chiefly relate, and both of these are tested by sentences for dictation, such as those already given. In the second class, the questions may test the same points also; for although there is a difference of pronunciation between the words, yet in ordinary conversation this difference is scarcely perceptible. As, however, the difference ought to be known—no matter how small it may be—the children should be required to sound each word; and, when doing this, the master should see that they bring out the true pronunciation with sufficient distinctness. In the third class all the three are to be attended to, but the chief point is the pronunciation.



The children should, therefore, first be called upon to *read* the sentences for dictation, or the columns themselves, and the questions may be framed somewhat as follow:—

‘Spell *immigrant*, and tell its meaning. What word is pronounced nearly like it?—(this tests the pronunciation). Spell it, and tell its meaning.’ It was better for the teacher to take *immigrant* first, instead of *emigrant*, for it is the word *emigrant* that is generally mispronounced, and therefore it is it which should be pronounced by the child. Or the master may say—

‘There is a word which means *somewhat red*—what is it? Spell it (reddish). What word is frequently confounded with it in pronunciation? (radish). Spell it, and tell its meaning.’ In the fourth class, the pronunciation is also the chief point to be attended to. The dictation sentences must be *read* as in class three, and the questions may be framed somewhat thus:—

‘Pronounce a-b-s-e-n-t. What is the meaning of it? Pronounce the same letters another way. What is the meaning then?’

‘What is the name of the instrument used for shooting arrows?—spell it. Pronounce these letters another way, and state the meaning of the word.’

In class fifth, the chief point to be attended to is the *meaning* of the words, and the questions should be framed to test this. ‘What is the meaning of *angle*? There is *another word* spelled and pronounced like this. What is its meaning?’ But the best way is to frame small sentences, and teach the meaning by the application, as already stated.

In this class, Dr. Sullivan has printed certain words in italics, to assist the teacher in tracing the secondary meanings to the common or primary meaning, of which they are variations. Thus *bait* signifies that which is put on a hook to catch fish; also, to take refreshment at an inn; also, to set dogs on a bull, or other animal; and all these meanings, so apparently without connection, are all traceable to a common source. *Bait* means a *bit* or *bite*—hence a *bit* or *bite* when put on a hook is called a bait; to take a *bit* or *bite* at an inn is also to bait; to set dogs at an animal to take a *bit* or *bite* out of him is to bait that animal. The primary meaning of this word is not now used; but it occurs, as is just shown, in each of the secondary ones, and it is to this point that the teacher should carefully direct the attention of his children.

‘**Exercises in Orthography.**’ That part of the Spelling Book headed ‘Exercises in Orthography’ should be taught as explained for the first class of words, i.e. the words should be got off by the pupils, and be tested next day partially, as they occur in the columns, but chiefly by framing them into sentences for dic-

tation.<sup>1</sup> As they are based upon certain irregularities in the letters, they may be made, however, exercises on pronunciation, as well as on spelling and meaning; and for this purpose the pupils should be made to pronounce each word correctly as it occurs. But as a bad pronunciation once acquired is very difficult of removal, the master should at the close of one lesson, go over with the children

<sup>1</sup> The following are six examples of sentences for dictation that may be made out of the difficult words occurring in the 'Spelling Book Superseded.' The words selected are arranged in rows at the top of each

exercise. Of course the exercises here given, being constructed on the principle of getting as many of the difficult words as possible into each, will not be good specimens of composition.

## I.

Legislature  
Customary  
Parliament  
Westminster  
Aquatic

Procession  
Desuetude  
Barouche  
Landau

Equerry  
Suite  
Pursuivants  
Route

Equipage  
Enfilade  
Volunteer  
Metropolitan

Once every year, on the first meeting of the Legislature, it is customary for her Majesty to go in state to open Parliament at Westminster by reading, in either House, speeches previously prepared for her by her ministers. In former times an aquatic excursion on the Thames formed a part of the royal procession; but this practice has now fallen into desuetude, and the sovereign usually proceeds in the state carriage, a barouche,

open landau, or some such equipage, attended by her equerry and suite, with heralds, pursuivants, and a body-guard of special troops. An enfilade of the military, militia, or volunteer corps, are often ranged in continuous lines at either side of the line of route; while the metropolitan police are occupied in preserving order in the vast crowd which always assembles to greet the Queen on her appearance in public.

## II.

Progenitors  
Classic  
Notoriety  
Degenerated  
Enthusiasm  
Legions

Lethargy  
Belligerent  
Synonymous  
Heroism  
Proverbial  
Plebeian

Carnival  
Allegro  
Cavatina  
Amorous  
Serenade  
Sombre

Gondola  
Fantastically  
Freights  
Thoroughfares  
Spectacles  
Bal-masqué

The Italians of modern days differ in many respects from their progenitors of immortal classic notoriety. Their language has degenerated, and that military enthusiasm which inspired the legions who won for the republic the title of 'Mistress of the World,' is now replaced by a lethargy only occasionally interrupted by fitful outbreaks of that belligerent spirit which once made the name of the Roman soldier synonymous with heroism.

In spite of the proverbial indolence of the plebeian Italians, they are ever

ready to exert themselves in promoting amusement, particularly during the season specially devoted to pastime, and known as the Carnival. During that period of revelry, the sprightly allegro, the gay cavatina, or the amorous serenade perpetually fill the air with joyous music. Sombre gondolas, with their fantastically attired freights, glide almost imperceptibly over the water, and the motley groups which throng the principal thoroughfares present the spectacle of a vast bal-masqué.

the words in the next. If this be not done, the children, when getting them off at home, may contract a style of pronunciation exceedingly objectionable.

## III.

Boatswain	Regimental	Armistice	Picket
Brigantine	Provost	Fracas	Marines
Quarantine	Clandestinely	Civilians	Lieutenant
Sergeant	Regimental	Duresse	Surveillance
Grenadiers	Canteen	Colonel	Incarcerated
Blasphemous	Promulgated	Brigadier	Futile
Invectives	Alcoholic		

The boatswain of the brigantine now in quarantine outside the arsenal, and a brusque sergeant of the grenadiers, had recourse to most blasphemous invectives when taken to the temporary provost for clandestinely obtaining an entrance into the regimental canteen after a prohibition had been promulgated forbidding the use of alcoholic liquors during the armistice. The prisoners had subsequently been engaged in a

fracas with some civilians. They are now suffering duress under warrant of the colonel, and await a court-martial, at which the brigadier-general will preside. Besides the picket on ordinary night duty, a guard of marines, commanded by a lieutenant, exercise the strictest surveillance; so that any attempt on the part of the incarcerated to regain their liberty would be extremely futile.

## IV.

Pavilion	Corinthian	Promenading	Cartoons
Theatre	Arabesques	Auditory	Trelliswork
Transpontine	Statuettes	Chastely	Ventilator
Purlieus	Terpsichore	Azure	Pendent
Façade	Colonnade	Festoons	Solar
Portico	Corridor	Medallioned	Amphitheatre

The Pavilion Theatre is acknowledged to be one of the largest establishments devoted to public entertainment, either in the metropolis or its transpontine purlieus. The façade is of a most imposing character, with its Corinthian portico embellished by arabesques and statuettes of Apollo, Terpsichore, and other patrons of the drama. A light colonnade encircles the building, and forms a spacious corridor for promenading. The audi-

tory is perfectly circular, and chastely decorated in pale azure and gold, with carved festoons of pure white, while the domed ceiling is medallioned with cartoons of the most prominent promoters of music and the drama. In the centre of the ceiling is an ornamental trelliswork, serving as a ventilator; and the house is illuminated by one pendent solar-gaselier capable of flooding with light the spacious amphitheatre.

## V.

Galleons	Antres	Courtesy	Nonchalance
Aboriginal	Caziques	Pageantry	Decisive
Reconnoitring	Cavaliers	Accoutred	Colloquy
Horizon	Amicably	Hauberk	Marquee
Canoes	Emissaries	Cuirass	Discomfit
Primitive	Dynasty	Chivalrous	Intimidate
Barks	Complaisance	Belligerent	Legitimate

When the Spanish adventurers, under Cortez, first landed from their

galleons and war-ships on the Mexican coast, the aboriginal inhabit-

**Rules of spelling.** I have already referred to the next part—to the rules for spelling; and it is not necessary to add here more than that the rules should be thoroughly explained, and that the children should know fully why any word is an example, and why another is an exception.

The remaining portions of the book are very rarely taught, but, when taught, the proper plan may be collected from what I have already advanced.

**Home lessons a test of teachers' excellence.** In all home lessons the teachers should show by their manner, by their earnestness and zeal, that they look upon them as equally important with any other part of the day's duty. If they do not do this, the children and parents will soon grow as remiss as they are themselves. I know that there is great difficulty in carrying out these

ants, who had been reconnoitring the fleet from its advent above the horizon, having never previously beheld vessels larger than their own canoes and primitive barks, fled to the fastnesses of the forest and hid themselves in caves or antres, until, summoned by their caziques, they sallied forth to meet the cavaliers, either amicably or hostilely. The wily emissaries of the old Spanish dynasty received their semi-barbarous opponents with all the com-

plaisance, courtesy, and pageantry for which the nation had early obtained celebrity; and, accoutred as they were in hauberk, cuirass, long Toledo, and other appurtenances of strife peculiar to that chivalrous and belligerent age, their soldierly bearing and apparent nonchalance to the issue of the decisive colloquy in progress between the leaders in the commander's marquee, could not fail to discomfit, or at least intimidate, the legitimate owners of the soil.

## VI.

Battalion	Panic	Esplanade	Hors-de-combat
Fusiliers	Sortie	Glacis	Heroic
Bivouacked	Corps	Redoubt	Exploit
Devious	Volunteered	Escalade	Incomparably
Intricate	Rendezvous	Bayonet	Encountered
Circuitous	Strategical	Phalanx	Bulletin
Route	Mancœuvres	Cuirassiers	Incredible
Adjutant			

The first battalion of the Scots Fusiliers bivouacked for the night in a ravine which they were successful in reaching by an intricate and circuitous route. Every arrangement was made by the adjutant and commissioned officers in charge to prevent surprise or panic in case of a sortie from the enemy. Early in the morning a detachment of the corps enrolled themselves as a 'forlorn hope,' left their rendezvous, and after some clever strategical mancœuvres they fearlessly crossed the esplanade, then impetuously ascended the glacis

and redoubt, after which, by a most successful escalade, they reached the fortification and gained possession of it at the point of the bayonet, notwithstanding the firm resistance they encountered from a phalanx of the cuirassiers, who, like the 'Old Guard,' were resolved 'to die but not surrender.' The number killed and hors-de-combat in this heroic exploit is fortunately so incomparably small with respect to the numbers engaged and the danger encountered, that the official bulletin seems almost incredible.

lessons effectively; but I know that an intelligent painstaking teacher will always succeed, and, when he does succeed, I think there can be no better test of excellence.<sup>1</sup>

**Record of answering.** It is very useful to mark the character of each boy's answering, noting each miss and each correct reply. This is usually done on a slate specially used for the purpose, the entries being intrusted to the head boy of the class. Sometimes the other boys dissent from the marks recorded, and an unpleasant feeling is thus created. The following means of marking the results is found to give satisfaction to all.

Place a small box containing about a dozen iron wires of four inches in length at the head of the draft (the cheapest kind of knitting needles cut in twos will answer admirably, or, when wires are not easily got, ordinary pen-holders and pencil-cases). The first boy, if he answers, takes one from the box; this he passes to the next who answers correctly, and the boy who receives the mark goes above all who have failed; in the same way, this boy passes the mark quietly to the next who answers, and so on. At the end of the first round of questions the last boy who has answered retains *the mark*, and the boys who have missed have passed down below him. All the pupils above him in the class have credit for the mark he holds. In the second round another mark is lifted at the head and passed as before. Suppose a boy who had answered in the first round missed in the second, he passes down below the boys who have made both answers, but takes the mark which circulated at the first round, when he comes to the end of those who are answering. Again, if the boys who missed the first round answer in the second, the mark representing the first is passed to the end. Children very soon come to understand this method in practice, and it goes on almost imperceptibly to the end of a subject; when those holding marks are requested to show, and each pupil takes credit for the number he holds in his hand, *as well as all the marks below him*.

<sup>1</sup> For remarks on Home Lessons, see Min. of Council, 1845-6, vol. ii. p. 334; 1847-8, vol. ii. pp. 254, 369 and 374; 1848-9, vol. i. p. 130;

1851-2, p. 916; 1856-7, pp. 374, 537, 557, 644; 1857-8, pp. 519, 592 and 679; 1859-1860, pp. 30, 190, 195.

## CHAPTER IX.

## GENERAL HINTS.

**1. Programme of proficiency for each class.** There should be in every school a *Programme of Proficiency for each Class*. The following document (pp. 254, 255) will explain its nature.<sup>1</sup> In it, reading is taken as a standard, as it is the only subject which all must learn, and do learn, from the first day of their attendance until the last. There are *nine* different degrees of efficiency, corresponding to *nine* different divisions of readers; and although in some subjects the progress expected is more than what is generally attained, yet it is not more than what I know to be possible, provided the methods of teaching are made use of which I have sketched out in the previous pages, and provided also that each subject is commenced at the proper time. It is only by beginning early that the true point of excellence will be reached.

**Children of each class should know what is required from them.** That part of this document which refers to any one class should be copied out neatly on a tablet, or painted on a board, and suspended in the draft space of the class to which it belongs. The children should know it as well as the teacher, for it is equally for the guidance of both. It should be the guide to direct the questions of the one, and the studies of the other. Many children object to be placed in certain classes, and to learn certain things; this document will show to them the grounds of their classification, and the exact amount of information which they must possess before they can seek for a higher position. They will, therefore, be more easily induced to devote their energies chiefly to the points in which they have not yet reached the defined standard, and to pay less attention to the others. It will thus not only make their progress more uniform, and check improper wishes for hasty promotion, but it will induce them to make stronger efforts for their advancement, while, at the same time, it will guide these efforts.

<sup>1</sup> For other programmes, see Min. of Council, 1846-7, vol. ii. p. 232; 1852-3, p. 626; 1856-7, p. 529; and

also the programme of proficiency in use in all the National Schools of Ireland.

*Programme of Proficiency for each Class,*

CLASSES AND DRAFT	READING See Note 1	WRITING	DICTATION, COPYING, &c.	ARITHMETIC.		
				TABLES	NOTATION AND NUMERATION.	RULES, &c.
a <sup>1</sup>	Alphabet	Preparatory exercises on slates.	—	Composition of addition table.	To form the nine digits from a model set before them.	—
a <sup>2</sup>	The easiest monosyllables.	Do.	—	Repeat all the columns in order.	To write and read any number up to 10.	—
a <sup>3</sup>	Irish National School First Book with ease.	The elements of letters on paper.	—	To know them <i>well</i> , and to verify the subtraction table.	To write and read any number up to 100 pretty accurately.	To add simple questions which do not require 'carrying.'
b <sup>1</sup>	The Second Book of the Commissioners of Nat. Ed. in Ireland, fairly.	Letters and easy words tolerably.	To copy passages from the previous reading book.	Apply the addition table to large numbers, and to know the subtraction tables well.	Do. well — to know all the exercises on these — and to read and express number of <i>two periods</i> pretty fairly.	To know addition well, and subtraction pretty fairly.
b <sup>2</sup>	Do. <i>well</i> .	Words and easy sentences pretty fairly.	To write easy words dictated from previous book, and to copy from the book they read in	The multiplication, pence, and money tables.	To put down any numbers required with average correctness and intelligence, and arrange them, for addition, &c.	Subtraction well, and multiplication and division fairly.
c	Earlier lessons of 3rd Book fairly.	Ordinary sentences fairly.	Do.	The most important of the others.	Do. with greater neatness, despatch, and intelligence.	Long division and compound rules.
d	3rd Book <i>well</i>	Ordinary sentences with <i>proportion</i> and smoothness.	Do.	To know <i>all</i> the tables pretty fairly.	A superior progress still, especially in the <i>theory</i> of.	Reduction well, and easy questions in proportion.
e	4th Book <i>well</i>	Do. with <i>ease</i> and <i>freedom</i>	Do.	Do. <i>well</i> .	Must know the English, French, and Roman system, &c.	Proportion, fractions, and practice.
f	5th Book <i>well</i>	Do. with ornamental and large hands.	To write any sentence correctly from dictation, from a newspaper or from a book which they have not read	Do. with notes, &c.	To be able to reduce a number from the <i>binary</i> scale to the <i>decimal</i> or to the <i>quinary</i> , &c. and to perform in each the processes of addition, subtraction, &c.	All arithmetic well, and intelligently.

NOTE 1.—In each class the children must be expected to spell all the words of their *king-books* both singly and in groups.

arranged in reference to Reading as a Basis.

MENTAL	GRAMMAR	GEOGRAPHY	HOME LESSONS		GENERAL INFORMATION See Note 2	EXTRA SUB- JECTS
			WRITTEN	ORAL		
To count correctly.	—	—	—	—	—	—
To count intelligently.	—	—	—	—	—	—
To know all included under the head of intelligent counting.	—	To know the general divisions of land and water.	—	Tables.	To know the information contained in their reading book.	Days of week, months &c. of year.
Easy questions on rules already learned.	—	To know the chief divisions of the continents and oceans.	—	Do.	Do.	—
Practical application of pence table, and easy questions on rules learned.	To know the noun, adjective, and article in any easy sentence.	To know all their divisions, with the outlines of the map of their own country.	To write pieces of poetry from memory.	Do.	Do.	—
Do.	Adverb, verb, pronoun, with more minute details regarding the previous three.	To know the chief rivers, lakes, capes, mountains, &c., on the two maps — world and that of their own country.	Do. with abstracts of any lessons taught to them, as grammar, arithmetic, &c.	Do. and Spelling Book superseded.	—	—
Easy questions on rules learned; tables practically applied; prices of articles.	To know all the parts of speech, and to have a good knowledge of those learned before.	To know the map of the world well, and the text-book on Europe, and their own country.	Do.	Do. with text-book on geography and grammar.	Do.	—
Do. with ordinary marketing and shop transactions.	To analyse easy sentences, and to parse fairly, quoting rules of syntax.	To know the maps of all the continents, with the text-book of Great Britain and Ireland.	Do. and original composition.	Do.	Do.	Book-keeping, &c.
To know the rules of, and to be able to frame them, &c.	To parse and analyse well — to change from poetry to prose, and to paraphrase, &c.	To know local geography well, and to have a fair knowledge of mathematical geography.	More difficult composition, with letter writing, forms of address, &c.	Do. with geometry, &c.	Do. with a connected view of all previously treated of, and learned.	Mensuration, geometry, algebra, &c.

NOTE 2.—They must also be expected to give the meaning of the words and phrases in connection with the reading, as already explained.



**Another use of programme.** This document will also check the tendency which some masters exhibit, of teaching their favourite subjects, to the entire or partial exclusion of others—a very serious evil where it exists to any great extent, as it destroys all true classification, and prevents, therefore, satisfactory progress.

**2. Promotion from class to class.** It is of great importance that some well-defined system of promotion from class to class should be established in each school. It is important (1) in its influence upon the children, (2) from its forming a necessary element in judging their answering, and (3) in estimating the faithfulness and ability of the master. I find that teachers, as a general rule, detain their pupils much too long in every class, but especially in the junior classes. This is caused in some cases wilfully and knowingly, in order to make the pupils pass the inspector's examination; in others, it is the result of carelessness and inattention; while, in some few cases, it arises from mistaken views of the principles which should regulate promotions.

**Pupils wilfully kept down in order to pass inspection.** There are some cases, but, for the honour of the teaching body, I believe they are very few, in which teachers regularly and systematically sacrifice their children's interests, by wasting their time and forcing them over the same routine for months and years, that they may gloss over successfully their own inattention. They detain the children in what they know, lest by removing them to more difficult subjects they would be found to fail on the day of examination. The children learn little new; and by the continual recurrence of the same dull task, they acquire—which is among the chief evils entailed—a distaste for all learning. I have seen instances in which little children could repeat, without the aid of the book, all the disconnected sentences in their lessons. What a time must these have been detained in ceaseless repetition! And what a distaste for all learning must they have been gradually acquiring! Had these children been removed into the next class, extra labour would, of course, have been required to fit them for inspection; and to save this, their interests were sacrificed.

**Pupils kept down through carelessness and want of thought.** Many teachers seem as if they never reflected upon the removals from class to class; or, in other words, upon the rate of progress in their schools. They are content to teach the children as they come, and to see little things day by day, for years, in the same book, without ever asking themselves why this is so, or thinking of the means by which such a state of stagnation could be changed. Mr. Moseley says,<sup>1</sup> that 'there is a mass of children whose tendency it is to gravitate, and who are allowed to do so,

<sup>1</sup> *Miu. of Council*, 1846-7, vol. i. p. 155.

and to become the dregs of the school.' From month to month they make no progress, they remain perpetually at the bottom, and are subjected to the influence of that monotonous and mechanical system which characterises the teaching of the lower classes.

This is the result of carelessness, and is therefore so far less deserving of blame than if it were wilfully done; but, as regards the children concerned, he who permits it is guilty of a fault just as serious as he who keeps them down for a purpose. The results are the same—their time is lost, their progress in knowledge is stopped, and a growing dislike for all learning and study is gradually but surely cultivated.

**Kept down from not knowing when to remove them.** There appear to exist incorrect views as to when a child is in reality fitted for removal, as well as to the principle which should determine the number of promotions. I have known teachers who kept the pupils on the rolls of the lowest class when they were well able to read in the middle of the book used by the class above them, and this from an inability to contend with the difficulty arising from their mixing, if promoted, with the more advanced children.

**General rule for removal.** As a *general rule*, promotion ought to take place so soon as the child has mastered the subjects of its present class, as marked upon the programme of the school. There are some circumstances, however, which will modify this rule, such as the place in the book where the class is reading into which it is removed—if the children in it are near the end, it would be more judicious to postpone the removal until the book is finished, as then all could commence together. It is very wrong to remove children singly, as this in the end destroys all classification. They should be removed if possible in drafts; and this, by a proper system of teaching, will be found possible in nearly all cases, without producing any serious amount of individual injury to the smartest children.

**Plan adopted by me.** The plan adopted by me is found to work well. I examine each school once in four months, and I expect that the children presented for inspection should be up to the requirements of the programme, and, therefore, fitted for removal. Thus, for instance, there are generally two drafts in the first, or lowest class, independently of the alphabet draft. Draft one is presented for my inspection as *fitted for removal*. My examination is directed to test whether the children in it are so or not. If I find that they are, I recommend their removal into second class, of which they will form the junior division. Draft two of first class becomes, by the fact of this promotion, draft one, and the duty of the teacher is to prepare it for removal at

next inspection—four months hence. This he can easily do, as before their promotion into draft one the children ought to be well advanced towards the middle of the book.

That which was the senior draft of second class ought to be fitted for removal in the same way, and draft two of it would take its place. Those removed from second into third, third into fourth; and fourth into fifth, do not necessarily begin the book upon their promotion, but go on with the class into which they are changed. This I find they can do, from the facility which they have already acquired in reading, and from the fact that it is almost as easy to read in the middle of any of these books as at the beginning. They do this to avoid the serious evil arising from an increase of classes. Promotions from these classes are regulated, however, as from the others; that is, the best of each—those who have been in the book for *two* visits of the inspector—must be fitted for removal. This system would work better by two inspections yearly instead of three.

**How attendance is taken into account in this plan.** The attendance of the children is an important element in this scheme of removal. The way I find that it can be best taken into account is as follows: I direct the teacher, in making out the class lists, to place a dividing line between the drafts, so that I can thus see at a glance all the children who ought to be fitted for removal at any given period. Those children admitted after the rolls have been written are placed on the rolls by themselves, no matter in what draft they are taught. I then examine *all* who are thus enrolled in the best draft, and any out of the low drafts that the master chooses to present as fitted for removal owing to superior talents and attention. All who have reached the requisite proficiency I recommend for removal, without any reference whatever to their attendance, but all who fail I reserve for separate consideration. I look to the record of their attendance, and if I find that they have attended well, I blame the teacher—unless in the very rare cases of natural dulness; cases, however, so extremely rare, that they are generally unimportant—but where I find that they have attended badly, I blame themselves.

**Advantages of this.** This course I find to be the fairest for all parties, and I also find that it exercises a powerful influence over the children and the teacher. It defines the duty of both, and marks the causes of failure so clearly, that it always rouses their energies to the utmost. The children feel that they have a task assigned them, which must be executed in a definite time, and that the reward of removal awaits its successful performance. They are thus driven to *attend better*, to exert themselves more earnestly, and to be more anxious to co-operate with the teachers; and all

teachers know well the rapidity of progress that necessarily follows the good attendance and hearty co-operation of their children. The teachers themselves know that their own work is to prepare the best draft of each class for promotion; when their children have succeeded, they feel that their merits will be valued; but when they have failed, they must be equally conscious that their neglect has been discovered.

**Junior drafts.** It might be supposed that the junior drafts would necessarily be neglected upon this plan; but this is not so, for the teachers cannot for their own sakes forget them. They are the material upon which, after the promotion of the others, they will be called upon to work. It is, therefore, their interest to have them so far advanced that in four months they also will be fitted for examination. Besides, all inspectors will consider it their duty, while devoting their chief attention to the first section, to enquire into the progress of the others, and see that it is commensurate with the proficiency of the highest drafts.

**The principle of this is applicable to all cases.** This system can only be carried out where the inspection is regular, and at proper periods; but the principle upon which it is founded is applicable to all schools, and ought to be carried out by the teachers themselves, in the absence of their inspector. It consists merely in *draft* promotion instead of *individual*, and in promotion after examinations held at stated times, upon a regularly defined programme of proficiency for each class.<sup>1</sup>

**No dregs in a good school.** When a fixed time is thus defined, the teacher's attention will be directed to that 'gravitating mass' to which Mr. Moseley alludes; and, if a conscientious man, he will take such special steps as will meet their peculiar case, and force them onwards. It will never do to let them lag behind. In a good school there should be no dregs.

**Removals should be numerous and judicious.** Removals ought to be *numerous*, generally equal to the average attendance, and *judicious*—that is, the number must not be made up from any special classes, but from all, in proper proportions. The promotions should be regulated by the number in each class and their attendance; but, as a general rule, they should be most numerous from the low classes, and gradually diminish upwards.

<sup>1</sup> The system recommended in the Manual of the British and Foreign School Society, of dividing the books into such portions as can be taught in a given time, and having the same portions always taught at the same draft, will assist in making the removals more uniform. 'This divi-

sion of the Lesson Books into *aliquot* portions of time is essential to the right working of the whole, or some drafts would be pushing up to the next station before those occupying it were ready to resign it to them.'—*Manual of British and Foreign School Society*, pp. 11 and 12.

**3. Classification.** Intimately connected with this subject is the original classification of the children. This should depend, as a general rule, solely upon the school programme; but there will be some exceptional cases, which must be dealt with exceptionally. Mr. Keenan says:<sup>1</sup> 'Under ordinary circumstances, a teacher experiences little difficulty in assigning to a child the class for which his attainments qualify him; but when his acquirements are unequal—that is, when he knows enough of one subject, but too little, or perhaps nothing, of another necessary to qualify him for a certain class—there is some difficulty in the matter; a difficulty which is often felt, particularly in dealing with children who come from private or hedge schools. It would be impossible to lay down rules which would regulate every case of the kind that might occur. The teacher must rely upon his own tact and judgment in deciding on what is best for the interests of the child and the school. There ought to be a balance struck between his attainments and his deficiencies, and he must be placed in that class which will be as little above or below his acquirements as will enable him to make the most profitable use of his time.'

**Exceptional cases should gradually cease.** Such cases, at the commencement, should always be treated as exceptional; but the master ought to arrange his teaching in such a way that their exceptional character will gradually disappear. These can never form a large number in any school which has been well and systematically taught; and where they, therefore, do occur, the error will be found to spring from the master himself—from his giving too much time to his favourite subjects, to the exclusion of others.

**System of separate classification for each subject.** The basis of classification is thus the *general* attainments of the children; but under some systems of school teaching a separate classification is adopted for each subject, in accordance with which children who read together may not write or count together, or stand up to the same lessons in grammar and geography. This, however, is found to be so objectionable, that it is adopted very rarely. 'It proceeds sometimes from the circumstance that separate charges are made for different subjects, and sometimes from the notion that boys should be classified in each subject according to their knowledge of each subject respectively. The least injurious form of this plan is where the rearrangement of the classes takes place in the arithmetic lesson only; though even this would, in my judgment, be better avoided. I would arrange the classes upon an average of their attainments and capacity, but mainly according to their respective powers of reading, and of understanding what they

<sup>1</sup> Report of the Commissioners of National Education, Ireland, 1856-7.

read. I would then keep each class to its own books and its own subjects, labouring to bring the children of each class to a fair equality with each other in every subject, instead of losing time and creating trouble by reclassifying the children whenever there was a change of lessons. I dwell at length on this practice, because it is so common in Lancashire, though not elsewhere, and because I have seen so much confusion resulting from it, and so much valuable time lost. Moreover, all respect for the upper classes is destroyed where there is no fixed class at all, but where a boy is only in the first class one minute to be degraded to a fourth class the next.<sup>1</sup>

**2. Means for keeping up attention of class.** When the classification has been completed, steps must be taken to make the children so joined together act as one, for otherwise the instruction will be, in reality, *individual*. When in desks, the occupation is a silent one, and collectiveness will be, in most cases, secured by supervision. The teacher himself can do this, or monitors appointed by him. If no boy idles, the benefit of the exercise is generally felt by all; but this is not so in class teaching. In this, especially when the class is large, considerable tact, judgment, and professional skill are necessary to create united action among them. One child may be gazing round him; another may be seemingly attentive, and yet his thoughts may be far away; another may answer without reflection; and there may be a general want of mental energy in all. To remove these defects completely is in the power of our best teachers only; but there are certain arrangements for this purpose which may be adopted by all, with more or less of success. (1) *Children may take places.* Each gets a question in the order in which he stands to the draft line, and when any children miss, he who answers goes above them. This has its advantages and disadvantages. It creates attention by the hope of attaining an honourable standing in the class, or by the fear of losing one previously acquired. On the other hand, however, those who have already answered correctly, from knowing that they will not get a question again for some time, generally lose all interest in the progress of the teaching, and thus do not profit either by the answers or the mistakes of the rest. The instruction thus becomes almost *individual*, and is open to all the objections to which that system of teaching is liable. Besides, there is a great deal of time consumed, and the questions are very unequally distributed. (2) *Children may be required to hold out hands.* In this case the question is given to the *class*, and those who think they can answer hold out a hand, and the master selects any one of these he may think it right to call upon. As no child can tell who will be

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1849, vol. ii. p. 177.

selected, all must be attentive. In making his selection, the master should be guided very much by the character of the children. He should rouse the sluggish and inattentive by frequently appealing to them; and, to prevent imposition, he should call upon those of whom he has any doubt; for many times pupils hold out their hands without really being able to answer, and with the intention of deceiving. When instances of this are detected, the master should hold the boy up to public censure; for if such a fault be left unpunished, it will sow the seeds of deceit and untruthfulness, and, at the same time, frustrate the object in view in teaching. The following letter from a 'first-class' teacher explains the system fully. After stating in what it consists,<sup>1</sup> he says, 'One objection to this plan is that a boy may wilfully deceive you. This may be effectively guarded against in a number of ways: such as by studying the disposition of the boys, and putting the questions pointedly to those of whom you are suspicious. When a pupil is found out in deception a few times, he will be shamed out of the dishonest practice, and particularly so if the teacher make it a point to dwell on the honour and high principle of the boy who candidly acknowledges his mistake; and if a pupil is shown by the manner and bearing of his master that it is more reprehensible to deceive than to miss a question, the temptation to act wrong (which is the fear of the master's displeasure at the question's not being answered) will thus be removed, and generally the boy cured of his habit. But a stronger objection is, that a child may think he knows what is required, and yet, should he fail when appealed to, he will most unjustly be stamped as disingenuous. Such a proceeding would have a mischievous tendency in arresting all efforts on the part of the boy to expand his mind by exercising the powers of thought and reflection. To prevent this, the questions must be pertinent and definite, and such that the pupil can at once *judge* whether he knows or not.' He adds, 'I have tried the system long, and with boys of every variety of character. I have found it answer not only as a quick and efficient mode of examination, but, what is far better, a means of moral improvement to the boys, inculcating, as its tendency is to do, principles of honour and manly conduct, and discountenancing in the most direct and strongest manner all attempts to equivocate and deceive.' (3) *The pupils may be directed to answer only when pointed to.* The hands are not held out in this case; the master selects the boy to whom he will put the question, and in doing this he ought to be guided by the character of the children, as in the case before. The boys may be put to the 'foot' who fail from heedlessness to tell what question has been given to another boy, or what answer was received. (4) *Pupils are per-*

<sup>1</sup> Rep. Com. Nat. Educ. in Ireland, 1850. Mr. Butler's Report, App.

*mitted to answer together.* This is the most objectionable course. It prevents individual mental effort, by allowing one or two advanced boys to lead the others. This they can do so quickly, that any one unaccustomed to children would be deceived. It can be easily proved that they do so, even in the most successfully conducted simultaneous classes, by separating the best, and asking the others the same questions once more ; or by causing each child to answer for a short time by itself. Again, as another proof, it will be found that, whether the answers are wrong or right, they will be simultaneous, and be given in the same words by all. This system breeds conceit in the best and smartest children, and creates shallowness and mental inactivity in the others. It should never be permitted in draft teaching. It is too noisy for the school, and it fails in procuring both the collectiveness of attention and the individuality of mental effort at which it aims.

**System of simultaneous answering leads to different estimates of the school by examiners.** This system of answering leads to the formation of different estimates of the same school by the parties officially connected with it. The manager—generally a gentleman of education and intelligence, but inexperienced in school-teaching—hearing boys answer all together the various questions proposed rapidly by the master, naturally forms a high opinion of the amount of information possessed by each boy : and even the master himself is often led into the belief that what he hears is really the result of individual effort ; but when the inspector sifts the answering thoroughly, as it is his province to do, making each child depend solely upon himself, and affording no hint or clue by which he could guess at the answer, he soon lays bare the hollowness and insufficiency of the results. The manager and teacher are shocked, but they attribute the bad answering to timidity in the presence of a stranger, to nervousness, to the form of questions, &c., in fact, to every cause but the true one. Both become more or less dissatisfied, and the school is more than likely to suffer in consequence. All this may be prevented by either of those persons taking upon himself the office of an examiner, that is, of an examiner in the true sense of the word. He will thus place himself in the position of an inspector, and he will be almost certain to detect the very faults, concealed from careless supervision, which the inspector exposed, and will, therefore, be less liable to blame those to whom no blame is attached, and be also more likely to apply the necessary remedies. There is another fact which touches upon this point, and which the hard working teacher should ever bear in mind—it is *not what is taught, but what is understood*, that counts to their credit upon the day of examination. Many a one labours hard to make his



children know what they ought to know; but if they do not know it, how can he expect them to answer on it? Hard work is essential, but it is valuable only when it produces results.

(5) *The children may correct each other's answers.* According to this system, when an error is made, the master does not immediately correct it; he calls upon the child himself, or one of his class-fellows, to do so. If all fail, he corrects it himself, as correction then becomes a part of his duty. But he should do this, not as many do, by simply telling the proper answer, but by leading the children on, step by step, until they can form the correction themselves. He should lead them from what they know to what they are expected to know—from the known to the unknown. This is a very excellent plan for keeping up the attention of the children, and for making the instruction really collective; but to prevent confusion, they should hold out hands when able to correct any error, but they should only hold them out when called upon by the master. If they hold them out before being directed, they may distract the attention of the boy from the work before him, especially in reading. The eagerness of the children when a good system is adopted, and the attention of the teacher, mutually act upon each other. The master stimulates the children, and the children stimulate the master. A dull heavy class destroys the energy of the teacher; a lively, intelligent, active class makes a zealous and interesting teacher. They act and react upon each other. (6) *They are at liberty to question each other at the end of the lesson.* This keeps up the attention to a certain point merely; for when a child has fixed upon one or two questions, it very frequently happens that he ceases to attend. This system, however, is useful when made to embrace all the facts which occurred in the lesson, and when all others are carefully excluded.

It sometimes happens that pupils run away from the lesson altogether and bring out 'crambo' questions, which they have been making up for days before. This is mere waste of time. The questioning, to be judicious, should refer solely to what was taught in the lesson; and when it does so, this system is an admirable means of fixing the facts permanently in the minds of the children. See a variation of it, called *prison-bar*, described in the chapter on Geography. It can be applied not only to geography, but to almost all the subjects of the school course. (7) *The pupils may be rewarded or punished.* A good system of reward and punishment is an essential part of school management. The teacher should exercise the greatest judgment in the use of either; he ought not to be too hasty either in rewarding or punishing, lest he may prove unjust; neither ought he to punish or reward frequently, lest he may bring these correctives into disrepute as means to an end. The reward

should be in reality a distinction, and the punishment beyond doubt a disgrace. But I shall enter upon this subject in another place.

**Good in all these plans, but none all good.** The value of these different means for securing attention may be summed up by saying that 'There is good in all, and none all good.' A judicious union of all is, therefore, the true course. The pupils should be made 'to take places,' 'to hold out hands,' 'to answer when selected,' 'to answer together,' 'to correct each other's answers,' 'to examine themselves at the end of the lesson;' and they should do all these under proper laws of reward and punishment, as occasion offers. The plans should be blended together, but none should be permitted to interfere with the other. In this the teachers must act chiefly for themselves; but let me assure them that there is no mechanical means of keeping up the attention of the class which will prove effectual, unless the teaching itself is animated, varied, and attractive. We may compel attention, but it is one thing for the teacher to *win* to himself the child's fixed attention—to bring about that state in which all the elements of its physical being are absorbed in its intellectual activity—and it is another to compel the semblance of this attention. The one is the resource of an unskilful, and the other of a skilful teacher. Where the children do not think or attend, except upon compulsion, it is almost certain that the teaching is bad.

**5. The state of the school in reference to the teacher's certificate.** The difference in grade should accurately mark the difference in the state of the school; but as in all schools the same course of study is generally pursued, the difference must be sought chiefly in the quality of the teaching, and in the amount of skill exhibited in discipline and organisation. With the lowest grades there will always be found some mixture more or less of the mere mechanical element in the instruction; but such, when not in excess, must be overlooked as one of the necessary consequences of the very existence of such teachers in any system of national education. With the higher grades, however, any exhibition of such an element should be visited with marked censure, and the higher the grade the more severe the rebuke. In fact, a first-class man ought to teach in first-class style and have a first-class school; and each of the other grades should equally exhibit methods of teaching and general results in correspondence with their rank. Promotion from one grade to another should depend upon this. It will not do to urge mere faithfulness in discharge of duty; for although this is a very valuable quality, it is not a claim for promotion, inasmuch as it is simply the condition upon which the office is held, for he who does not discharge his duty faithfully is dismissed; but to merit promotion, a teacher must show that his

school is not only well taught, but that it is taught as well as those conducted by the teachers in the grade to which he aspires.

**Dr. Newell's opinion.** Dr. Newell, in his General Report for 1859, thus writes upon this point: 'I maintain that every teacher seeking promotion should not only possess the additional attainments required of teachers in the grade he aspires to, but he should prove that his school is as superior to the schools conducted by teachers in the class he is anxious to leave, as the class he seeks is more respectable and better paid than their class. The information a teacher possesses should be regarded chiefly as a means for making him a good instructor of youth. Let every teacher thoroughly understand that his school must be effective according to each step in the ladder of classification, and that this is the first condition of promotion.'

**6. Junior classes.** The character of a school depends very much upon the state in which these are found. The following extracts show the importance attached to them by inspectors of schools:—Mr. Moseley says:<sup>1</sup> 'The instruction of the children who compose the junior division is more important than any other function of the school, and, if it be duly attended to, no other useful subject of the school will be neglected.' He says, in a note in the same page: 'I speak in this matter from experience. As inspector of the royal naval schools at Greenwich, I receive twice a year from those schools returns including the particulars referred to in the text. Very important results have followed from the attention which the masters have thus been induced to give to them. If asked to assign a cause which more than any other has contributed to the high standard of instruction attained in these schools, I should fix upon *this*.' Mr. Fletcher reports:<sup>2</sup> 'I am so convinced, indeed, that much of the indifference of the parent has the origin to which I allude (neglect of junior classes); that to do his duty by the "little ones" would be my advice to any young master desiring as soon as possible to fill his school, and then to keep it full.' Mr. Jones says:<sup>3</sup> 'The lower classes are starved intellectually and neglected in education. I find very few masters, even among those who have gained certificates, capable of teaching the lower classes; and, as a general rule, I am dissatisfied with the instruction given to them.' Mr. Bowstead says:<sup>4</sup> 'I must press upon the teachers the importance of bestowing upon the junior classes their full share of attention.' Mr. Sheridan says:<sup>5</sup> 'In dealing with the junior classes, teachers

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1846-7, vol. i. p. 156.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 1846-7, vol. ii. p. 66.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 1854, p. 601.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. 1854, p. 632.

<sup>5</sup> Report of Commissioners of National Education in Ireland, 1858. Mr. Sheridan's Report.

should always bear in mind, (1) that the majority of the pupils in the junior division are quite old enough for the middle division—some, indeed, even for the senior—and, consequently, that the great object of the teacher should be to qualify them for advancement out of the junior division as soon as possible. (2) That, owing to their inability to read intelligently, children are quite unable to *help themselves*, as long as they are detained in the junior division; that whatever progress they make in the first and second classes must necessarily be made under the immediate instruction of the teacher or of some one deputed by him; and, consequently, that it is not only an utter waste of time, but something worse, to assign tasks to be learned by such children at home, or to place them at desks by themselves “to prepare lessons.” (3) ‘That the reading, spelling, counting, and some expertness in adding numbers mentally, are all that is really necessary to qualify children for advancement out of the junior division, and consequently, that these should engage the teacher’s *principal* attention.’ Dr. Newell says: ‘An element of success will be found in teaching effectively the junior classes, whose progress is generally so slow. To this point the attention of managers and inspectors should be constantly directed. The senior classes are more showy, and with most persons are thought of more importance than the junior; but here, as in many other instances, the humblest work is the most essential. The aim of the teacher should be to have *all* his classes properly prepared, but especially the junior classes, which constitute the majority.’

I could give numerous other extracts, but as the space will not allow, I can only refer the reader to the books in which they may be seen. See note.<sup>2</sup>

**Why the junior classes are the most neglected.** Although these classes are the most important, they are by no means the most carefully attended to. It is generally up-hill work teaching young children, and in comparison with teaching the senior classes, much duller and more distressing, and hence teachers devote their principal time to the grown and advanced boys. They either teach the small children carelessly themselves, or wholly abandon them to monitors or assistants. It is no doubt very natural to wish to spend most of one’s labours upon those who can best appreciate them, but teachers should enter upon their duties with

<sup>1</sup> Report of Commissioners of National Education in Ireland, 1855. Dr. Newell’s Report.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.* for the years 1856 to 1861 inclusive. Also Min. of Council, 1846–7, vol. i. p. 408; 1846–7, vol. ii. pp. 55 and 65; 1851, p. 887; 1852–3,

pp. 377 and 625; 1854–5, pp. 415, 601, 623, 632; 1857–8, p. 586; 1859–60, p. 154; 1860–1, pp. 19, 85, 102, and 209. Report of Education Commissioners, 1861, vol. i. p. 154; and vol. ii. pp. 92 and 226.

higher motives than the comparative pleasure they receive. They should take a conscientious view of the vast importance of what they have undertaken to perform, and always determine to do not what is most pleasing or most natural, but what is most correct. The junior classes form the vast majority of their charge, and, even for this reason alone, they ought to receive the greater portion of their time, as it is in them that the seeds of good or bad habits are sown; in them it is determined whether the children will progress rapidly, slowly, or not at all; whether they will leave school intelligent and educated, or ignorant and disgusted with learning, and therefore it is in them that the teachers must work.

**Senior cannot be neglected.** The senior classes should by no means be neglected; they should receive, however, only that portion of the master's time to which they are fully entitled. It is found, indeed, in practice, that the interests of the low classes never clash with those of the upper. Where the junior are well taught, all are well; when the junior are neglected, the senior classes, though chiefly attended to, are wanting in exactness and depth; for from the badness of the foundation the entire superstructure partakes of weakness.

#### TIME TABLES.

7. I have already shown how the several subjects ought to be taught to each class—to the junior as to the senior; it remains for me now but to say a few words upon the organisation of the school, as much of the value of the results depends mainly upon this point.

Under this head I propose to treat chiefly of the 'time table' of the schools—the document which sets forth the routine of teaching pursued. Everyone who knows anything of this subject will admit that the formation of a time table is one of the most difficult portions of the teacher's duty; and that a good one is rarely found. When we consider the variety of subjects taught, we can easily understand the extreme difficulty attending any arrangement of them that would be deemed correct, and any allotment of time to each that would be adequate and suitable. Dr. Newell, in his Report for 1859, says that upon examination it will be found that eighty out of every hundred are badly and injudiciously constructed; I shall go further, and say that, out of the hundred, ninety and nine are more or less defective.

**What a time table is.** A time table is a written statement of the business actually done in the school, in the order in which it is done, and with the time devoted to each separate portion of it. It is nothing more, and when it records this duty it is, as a time table,

perfectly correct. The system of teaching and organisation may be very bad, and yet the time table which records this may be above censure; and when I say that the documents actually met with are unsatisfactory, I am regarding them solely in accordance with what I have defined them to be. *They do not contain in writing the business of each class.* The verbal statement of the master, of what he does, almost invariably differs from his *written* statement as found on the time table.

**Examples.** I can best illustrate what I mean by time tables which I found in use in schools under my charge.

## No. 1.

JUNIOR DIVISION.			SENIOR DIVISION.		
Time	1st class	2nd class	Sequel	Third	Fourth
10 to 11	Preparing Lessons		Lesson Books and Tasks		
11 to 11½	Lesson Books & Tasks		Writing		
11½ to 12	Rolls called and attendance entered in Rept. Book.				
12 to 12½	Writing on Slates	—	Parts of Speech	Parsing and Derivation	
12½ to 1	Requirements of Programme		Miscellaneous Subjects		
1 to 1½	Adding up numbers		Arithmetic in its more advanced state		
1½ to 1¾	Preparing Lessons		Requirements of Programme		
1¾ to 3	Lesson Books		Lesson Books		

This is a copy of the time table found in the school of a teacher in the service of the Board since 1833. It may be considered in two ways, either as a *written statement* of what is actually done, or as to the system of teaching which it represents. If we take the second view, we find: (1) That the children of first and second classes *idle* (under the name of preparing lessons) for 1½ hour daily. (2) That 'lesson books and tasks' occupy two hours. (3) That writing, mental addition and requirements of programme (whatever that may mean), occupy thirty minutes each. (4) That there is no lesson on *grammar, geography, or slate arithmetic*, during the whole day to the junior division. And (5) that nothing is learned in second class from 12 to 12½ o'clock. If this had been in reality the system in force in this school, the teacher would have been grossly violating his duty; but, upon questioning him, I found, as I have found in the vast majority of cases, that the sheet

which purported to be a time table was no time table at all. The way in which he *actually* discharged the duties of the day was as follows: As each child came in he went to the master to *say* his tasks, or if a boy was saying his tasks at the time, he went to the desk and waited for his turn. After saying them, he went to the desk again, and, under the name of preparing lessons, idled until all the home lessons were over. During this time the junior classes, which had prepared no home lessons, idled also with their reading books open on the desks before them. The fourth class was then called up to a reading lesson, then the third, sequel, second, first, in succession; and as each finished to make room for its successor, the children went to the desks either 'to prepare lessons' or to write. This brought the business of the day up to 11½ o'clock. How very different this is from what was *written* upon the time table! Suppose that the home lessons had been heard in classes (his method of hearing them individually renders any time table impossible), the business of the school for the first hour, as taken down from his own lips, might be tabulated somewhat as follows:—

Time	1st Class	2nd Class	Sequel	Third	Fourth
10.0 to 10.10	Preparing Lessons	Preparing Lessons	Preparing Lessons	Preparing Lessons	Tasks
10.10 to 10.20	do.	do.	do.	Tasks	Preparing Lessons
10.20 to 10.30	do.	do.	Tasks	Preparing Lessons	do.
10.30 to 10.40	do.	do.	Preparing Lessons	do.	Reading Lesson
10.40 to 10.50	do.	do.	do.	Reading Lesson	Preparing Lessons
10.50 to 11.0	do.	do.	Reading Lesson	Preparing Lessons	do.

We thus see that the senior classes were engaged at what is called 'preparing lessons' for forty minutes out of the hour, and that this duty was not at all mentioned on the time table, though consuming two-thirds of the time. It is therefore very evident indeed that this document was not a written statement of what was done during the day, and therefore no time table. It not only omitted what the children actually did do, in the shape of preparing lessons, but it deliberately stated what was untrue, for it represented the sequel class children, for instance, as at 'reading lessons and tasks' for forty minutes, whereas in reality they were only engaged at the two for twenty minutes.

The master explained that he did not intend the time as entered in the left-hand column to refer to *each class*, but only to *each division*; he merely wished to state that inside the hour each child

of the senior classes got a reading lesson and said his tasks, while the others were preparing for theirs; but, under such an arrangement, it would be impossible to tell how much time he devoted to teaching, and how much to tasks; and therefore it would be impossible to say whether the time given to each was adequate or not. This time table may be taken as a good example of the majority; but I give, in specimen No. 2, one in which the details are somewhat different.

## No. 2.

Time	1st Class	2nd Class	Sequel	Third	Fourth
10 to 10½	Preparing and up at Lessons	Preparing & reading Lessons	Writing	Writing	Writing
10½ to 11	Writing	Writing	Preparing Lessons		
11 to 11½	Mental Addition		Reading Lesson	Reading Lesson & parsing	Reading Lesson & parsing
11½ to 12	Calling Rolls				
12 to 1	Preparing and Reading Lesson	Sums	Arithmetic		
1 to 1½	Preparing Lessons		Writing from dictation		
1½ to 2	Reading Lesson	Reading Lesson & parts of speech	Reading Lesson and geography	Preparing, Reading, & geography	As 3rd Class
2 to 3	Preparing Lessons	Examining notation tasks	Tasks		

**Defects of.** This, I am happy to say, was not what it really professed to be; for if it did show the routine of duty in each class, the master would have been sadly neglecting the interests of his children. From it, it would be impossible to know how much time the fourth class, for instance, gave to the preparation of lessons in the day; how much to geography, how much to reading, or how much to tasks. The only thing *definitely* stated, and of which, therefore, the true time can be discovered, is that the pupils wrote for half an hour, and counted for a whole one.

**History of these two given.** I need not multiply examples. I shall merely trace the history of these two, as it may be instructive to the teachers for whom I write. In school No. 1, I left the following observations:—

1. Lessons should not be prepared in school. This is a duty



peculiarly adapted for home. But even supposing that it were admissible as a portion of the day's business, the junior classes could not at all engage profitably in it, owing to their inability to study by themselves. Preparing lessons is, therefore, in their case at least, but another name for 'idling;' and certainly one hour and three-quarters is too much to spend thus out of the school day.

2. Lesson Books and Tasks are subjects too dissimilar, and both too important, to be grouped under one time. The principle of grouping such subjects, if once allowed, would by a little extension remove all divisions of time whatever. The time devoted to each ought to have been stated.

3. From 10 to 11 o'clock three classes are on the floor at the same time; and, as there are but two teachers, one of them must idle. This objection applies to the arrangements in force from 12 to 12½ o'clock, from 12½ to 1 o'clock, and more forcibly still to all the remaining divisions of time.

4. 'Requirements of programme' and 'Miscellaneous Subjects' are too indefinite; they would require the teacher to be always at hand to explain what was actually meant, whereas a good time table interprets itself.

5. Half an hour is too long for 'mental addition' at a time, while it is too short for slate arithmetic. Three-quarters of an hour is too long for writing; for, after twenty minutes, or thirty minutes at farthest, it is found in practice that children, especially young ones, begin to idle, and are certain to scribble. One hour and a quarter is too long for a single reading lesson in any class, but especially in the junior classes, whose attention it is so difficult to keep up.

6. No time is mentioned for arithmetic in the second or sequel classes, or for grammar, geography, and writing from dictation, in any class.

**Observations on No. 2.** In school No. 2, I made observations similar to those marked 1 and 2 above, except that under 2, I added, 'Grammar may, however, be joined with Lesson Books in some cases on the time table, as it actually is in practice—these books forming the text from which to point out the parts of speech, and to parse—provided that in a note to the time table the usual plan adopted in teaching grammar, together with the time, as nearly as possible, spent at it, be mentioned.'

I left the following additional observations:—

7. This time table is not practicable without the use of monitors; and, as these have not, as I have been informed, been introduced into this school, the arrangements detailed could not have been carried out. For instance, from 11 to 11½ o'clock the five classes, with all their subdivisions, are engaged at duties which, if taught

as the time table specifies, would require from seven to nine teachers.

8. The time, as entered in the left-hand column, does not refer, as it ought, to each subject in each class, but merely to what the master himself teaches. When, therefore, each class leaves the master, to admit of another's coming up to him, it goes to the desks to perform some business, the nature of which is not stated. The time table is, therefore, no true time table, as it is not a written statement of what is actually done.

9. Too little time is given to 'reading lessons' and 'tasks' in the senior classes; and, indeed, generally, the time allowed to each subject is by no means in proportion to its importance.

**Suggestions left in both cases to assist in making out proper time tables.** In both cases I left, in addition to these observations, the following suggestions as to the method by which the teachers ought to be guided in making out other documents:—

1. There should be just as many classes on the floor, receiving such lessons as are best taught there, as there are teachers and monitors in the school, while the others are engaged at the desks, either at *slates* or *paper*.

2. No 'preparation of lessons' to be permitted in school.

3. The full duty of each class, with the exact time at each subject, to be specified.

4. Arithmetic is to be taught as a desk lesson from text-books, and as a floor lesson without books; and, therefore, it should occur at least twice on the 'time table.'

5. The separate reading classes may be judiciously grouped to receive united lessons in grammar, geography, arithmetic, &c.

6. Home lessons should never be heard *individually*, but always in *classes*.

7. Allow for each subject a time proportionate to its importance. Some subjects may be taught twice a week, others three times, while others should be daily lessons.

8. Do not permit of too many changes during the day.

9. Those subjects are to follow each other which are of different kinds; those that are mechanical to follow those that require much mental effort; that is, as far as practicable. Writing exercises should not be introduced after play immediately; or after the opening of the schools, as the hands of the pupils are then very likely to be unsteady.

10. These suggestions refer chiefly to the system of teaching which ought to be pursued; but to make the time table a record of the exact details of that system, proceed as follows:—

(1) Enter in the proper column the exact duty of the class which the master *first* calls up, and opposite to it, on the left hand, place

the time spent with it. Thus, if he begin a reading lesson in the fourth class, he should fill the columns as follows:—

Time	1st Class	2nd Class	Sequel	3rd Class	4th Class
10 to 10.45					Reading Book

(forty-five minutes being about the time a reading lesson for an advanced class should occupy).

(2) When this is done, the blank spaces should then be filled up. To do so, ask the following questions: 'During the time the fourth class is reading, what is the third class doing?' 'During the same time, what is sequel class doing?' 'What second?' 'What first?' and write the answers to them in the proper places. *But be sure that the answers are taken from the actual business of the school.*

(3) Then take up another class, and mark, in the proper place, what is taught to it, with the time so engaged, and then fill up the blanks as before.

NOTE.—If these three suggestions be fully carried out, the time table will certainly be a record of the duty of each class, whether that duty be correct or not.

**Result of suggestions in the two examples just given.** I regret to say that the time tables made out in place of those condemned were very far from being better. In one of them nearly all the faults previously pointed out occurred again; while, in the other, I found that the teacher had allowed three-quarters of an hour daily to each of the following subjects—writing, mental addition, notation, geography, and mental arithmetic; a time entirely out of proportion to the importance of any of them.

These time tables are taken from schools conducted by highly classed teachers, and the result, after I had taken so much pains, fully convinces me that intelligence, even when accompanied with suitable instructions, is not a sufficient guarantee either that the *system* of teaching and organisation will be good, or that the time table will faithfully record it. A little force is necessary to get what is correct; for in most cases the teachers are very indifferent as to what kind of a document they show. This indifference I could fully establish by extracts from my reports upon schools inspected. It is partially accounted for by the fact that teachers conduct their schools without reference to the time table at all, and they consider that they are doing the best possible for their children so long as they themselves are constantly engaged in some class. But this is a great mistake; the master may be very busy, and yet three-

fourths of his school very idle. If the actual system which they practise day after day were written out in all its details, it would astonish and shock them.

**Remarks on the hints just given.** I shall now take up the 'Hints on making out a Time Table' in their order, for the purpose of explaining each more fully.

**1. Number of classes on floor.** As many classes as there are teachers should be on the floor receiving such lessons as are best taught there, while the others are engaged in the desks either on slates or paper. In reference to this, the word *class* is to be taken as applying to any collection of children under one teacher, receiving instruction on the same subject. Thus, the first and second, if joined together to receive united instruction on any one subject, must be regarded as forming only one class, although generally they form two. The word *teacher* applies to all who teach, whether actually paid and recognised or not. This rule is founded on the principle, that the arrangement of the classes and the sequence of the different duties depend primarily upon the teaching power made use of. This is a principle so manifest as to be almost self-evident, and yet the vast majority of time tables fail from overlooking it.

**Teaching power ought to determine the arrangement and even the number of the classes.** The more classes there are, the less can each receive of the master's personal attention. If there are five classes, he could give to each, out of a school day of five hours, exactly one hour of his own time; but if the classes to be taught separately are eight or ten in number, as they generally are, he could only give from thirty to thirty-eight minutes. The size of the class and the attendance in school have but little to do with the matter. The teaching power ought, properly speaking, to increase not so much with the attendance as with the number of classes. When a teacher is unaided he should always be endeavouring to lessen, as far as possible, the number of his classes. This he may do in the senior division of his school, by making the highest class read in two books alternately—in third and fourth, for instance. I know that an inequality in the acquirements of children grouped together is a serious evil, but it is necessary very frequently to encounter it rather than encounter the more serious evil of making the classification too minute for the teaching staff which the school can support. In the management of primary schools we are often driven to take a choice of evils, as in this case.

**Subjects for floor and desk teaching.** When the classes are on the floor they should receive those lessons which can be given there most appropriately and effectively, such as lessons in reading,

grammar, geography, arithmetic and general science (chiefly principles of), spelling, &c.; and when in the desks they should be engaged either on slates or paper—such as in writing from dictation, in composition, in making figures, in arithmetic, book-keeping, &c.; and, in girls' schools, in needlework. They ought never to be engaged in conning over the reading-books by themselves in the desks. There is no rule so openly and so commonly violated as that which refers to the desk business. But the teacher who finds that his children are not occupied in some such way as that just stated, may rest assured that they are not receiving from his school the benefits it ought to confer. Mr. Arnold says that 'a boy gets on in proportion to the time he is properly engaged at the desks;' without exactly going this length, I have no hesitation in saying that the duty performed there has a most important influence upon the boy's education, for, from being thrown more upon his own resources, he learns the valuable lesson of self-exertion, and acquires confidence in his own powers and a capability of using them in overcoming, or, at least, in struggling with difficulties.

## **2. Preparation of lessons not to be permitted in school.**

This is the duty generally assigned to the children at the desks instead of the duties, mentioned above, which ought to be assigned, and it consists in getting them to pore over the book in which they will be called upon to answer when up at class, under the expectation that they will be better able to pass—at least this is generally the cause given when one enquires as to the expected results, the true cause being, however, that pupils are set to prepare lessons, because the teachers do not know how to engage them profitably while they are themselves occupied in teaching on the floor.

**Mr. Keenan on this.** Mr. Keenan says, in his General Report for 1855,<sup>1</sup> 'I have come to the conclusion, after the most careful consideration, during a long experience of school management and school inspection, that this "preparing lessons" during school hours is the most pernicious and nugatory employment to which children can be put. I have rarely seen children "preparing lessons" in a schoolroom who were not gazing at the book rather than reading it, and who did not rise from the counterfeit afflicted with drowsiness, listlessness, and sluggishness. When teachers are asked why they resort to this baneful expedient, they reply by declaring their inability to invent employment for those classes that are not immediately under tuition; but I cannot but regard this as an exhibition of professional weakness, if not of utter incapacity, on the part of those who state so.'

**Teachers' reasons considered.** Some teachers state that the children are so busily engaged at home in the mornings and even-

<sup>1</sup> Report of Commissioners of National Education, Ireland, for 1855.

ings that they cannot possibly prepare there the reading lesson, or the ordinary tasks, and that therefore some time must necessarily be allowed for this duty in the school. This, however, is not correct; there is no child who could not find some small period of relaxation from work in which, if inclined, he could prepare the usual lessons, and this I have proved to be the case by utterly excluding the duty from the school course in cases under my inspection, and insisting upon its being done at home. I find that it is done now even in the very places where the teachers were the loudest in proclaiming its impossibility. The fact is, that so long as pupils are allowed to prepare the tasks, &c., in school, there is a strong temptation held out to them to neglect their preparation at home. 'To afford children opportunities in the schoolroom to prepare lessons is no encouragement to them to become students at home; and its natural effect is to make the interval between the school hours of to-day and those of to-morrow, an idle, thoughtless, destructive hiatus of daily occurrence in their education.'<sup>1</sup>

**Wholly unsuited for young children.** But however wrong it is in the case of grown boys, it is exceedingly culpable and absurd in the case of young children in the junior classes, as they are quite unable to help themselves. These, however, are the very classes most frequently placed to learn lessons in the seats. The following moiety of a time table shows this. 'It is,' Mr. Sheridan says,<sup>2</sup> 'an exact copy of one which I found in a certain school, and something similar to which I found in at least a dozen others.'

Time	First Class	Second Class
10 to 10½	½ hour writing on slates ½ hour Preparing Lessons	Writing on paper Preparing Lessons
10½ to 12½	Preparing Lessons	Preparing Lessons
12½ to 1	½ hour Lessons ½ hour Recreation	Lessons Recreation
1 to 1½	½ hour Lessons ½ hour Preparing Lessons	Lessons Preparing Lessons
1½ to 3½	Preparing Lessons	Arithmetic
3½ to 4	Preparing Lessons	½ hour Preparing Lessons ½ hour Geography

<sup>1</sup> Report of Commissioners of National Education, Ireland, for 1855. Mr. Keenan's Report.

See also his Report for 1856, for a

description of a school where preparation of lessons is allowed.

<sup>2</sup> Report of Commissioners of National Education, Ireland, 1858.

That is, the lowest class 'prepared lessons' for four hours and a half, and the next for two hours and a quarter. The more utterly unable they were to perform the task, the longer they were kept at it.

**Pupils should be actively employed.** This occupation is so strongly condemned on all hands, that it should no longer be found in any of our primary schools. And the only maxim followed should be, that *'every child at every moment of the day shall be employed at some one of those duties for which a school is properly intended.'* This active employment will not only secure improvement directly, but indirectly also, by promoting good order and checking noise. 'Nothing,' says Lancaster, 'conduces so much to good order, or so effectually prevents the natural vivacity of children from being troublesome in school, as the active employment of every boy in it.'

**3. Full duty of each class and full time at each subject to be specified.** A time table should show to every one capable of understanding it, (1) What each child does during the day; and (2) The time he spends at each subject. Occasionally an exception to this general rule is allowable. Thus, for instance, the 'reading-book lesson' consists of reading, meanings of words, subject-matter read, and spelling, to which is sometimes added an exercise on parsing. Again, the 'home lessons' consist of grammar, geography, spelling book, tables, composition, &c.; and to enter the time for each of these subdivisions is not only uncalled for, but wrong. A strict adherence to a time table drawn out so much in detail would be impossible, or at best it would cramp the action of the master so much and so injudiciously as to interfere with his general usefulness. It is quite sufficient to mark the time for 'reading books' and the time for 'home lessons,' taken as a whole. It will not do, however, to unite subjects which are not generally taught together, or which are in themselves of importance. Thus, it would be wrong to say 'reading and dictation, one hour;' 'geography and arithmetic, one hour and a half,' &c.

**Violations of this rule.** In general, the time set apart for each subject is not accurately stated. The teachers regard the time as referring to *all* the classes instead of to *each*. Thus, suppose the following:—

Time	1st Class	2nd Class	Sequel	Third
10 to 10½	Reading Lesson	Reading Lesson	Reading Lesson	Arithmetic

which in reality means that each of the first three classes receives a reading lesson of forty-five minutes, while the other class practises arithmetic for the same time; but the teachers generally intend such a statement of duty to mean that the three classes read inside the forty-five minutes—that, in fact, the forty-five minutes are divided among them, though not necessarily by giving fifteen minutes to each. They intend, however, the entire time to be understood as given to the arithmetic. We cannot thus find what time is devoted to reading in the first, or second, or sequel; and, generally, it will be found that it is in the reading that the time table is most indefinite. The time spent at writing, arithmetic, geography, &c., is generally entered correctly, but the time for lesson books can only be guessed at.

**4. Two lessons on arithmetic, floor and desks.—Why this suggestion was left.** Arithmetic should be learned in the desks from books, and should be taught on the floor without books by the master himself. This was a suggestion merely to insure the teaching of arithmetic in classes under the master's eye, for the purpose of promoting quickness, testing rules passed over, and teaching notation, numeration, meanings of terms, proofs of rules, &c., which are properly taught in classes. A small portion of the day should be set apart for such purposes; and this should be longer in the junior division than in the senior.

**5. Classes to be grouped.** By referring to a previous observation, it will be seen that one great object ought to be to lessen the number of classes as much as possible. This may be judiciously done by uniting them occasionally. The third and fourth, for instance, may sometimes be joined to receive a lesson on the map, or on arithmetic, grammar, dictation, &c.; while the second and sequel may be united for a map lesson, arithmetic, writing, and, occasionally, for reading, tables, &c; thus forming only two classes out of four, and therefore doubling the time for each. The classes so formed should be treated exactly as if they were learning the same thing. If a class learning Simple Proportion, for instance, be joined with one in Reduction, they should both be taught what both understand. It will not do to give out a question in Proportion to one, and then a question in Reduction to the other; for such a course is not grouping at all; it is virtually teaching two distinct classes, distinct in every way except in the mere accident of standing close to each other on the floor.

**6. Home lessons to be heard in drafts.** See, for remarks upon this, the chapter specially devoted to 'Home Lessons.'

**7. Each subject should get a time in proportion to its importance.** The important subjects are reading, writing, and arithmetic, and these should be taught as daily lessons; the others



may be taught on alternate days, if it is found necessary to do so. Of the three important subjects, reading is the most important, as it is the basis of all teaching. In the junior classes, therefore, it should form the chief portion of the children's duty. As pupils advance, the time for reading may be shortened, as they will have acquired that mechanical dexterity which will prevent the necessity of explanations and minute directions. But even up till the close of the course ample time should be allowed to make the reading intellectual, easy, and fluent. Reading much is an essential element of success. I think the first class should receive three lessons in reading daily; the second, two at the least; and the others, one. It would be better, however, if the first and second could receive three, and the next class two; one, of sufficient length, is, in any case, sufficient for the advanced classes.

**8. Changes not to be many.** The changes frequently recommended are half-hour changes—no lesson lasting longer than this, and all lessons lasting the full time. This is not good either in theory or practice. All lessons are not of equal importance, and, therefore, should not receive equal times. A half-hour is also too little for most subjects. None but a very skilful teacher can teach a lesson well in this time, especially a reading lesson; and as the majority of teachers are anything but skilful, a time table so arranged must prove ineffectual.

**9. Subjects are to follow each other which are of different kinds.** This rule is merely inserted to prevent the children from feeling wearied by the constant strain required when mechanical and mental subjects do not follow each other in proper order.

**10. Method of entering the duty on the sheet explained.**

The three rules given under this head refer to the mere entry of the work on the sheet. They have nothing to do with the quality of the work itself. The difficulty of teaching a school arises from the difficulty of keeping the children actively employed; but the difficulty of making out a time table is in the method adopted. The two are perfectly distinct. To succeed in overcoming the one requires a man of rare ability, of superior professional skill, and great zeal and faithfulness; but to meet the other requires simply ordinary intelligence and care. Teachers, in making out *time tables*, forget that they should be simply copies of what is *actually* going on in their schools. They sit down and devise arrangements on paper, and then try to force the organisation of their schools, to agree with what they have thus planned. This fault is almost universal, and is the fruitful source of so many complaints upon the teachers' part of the difficulty of adhering to the time tables of their schools. If teachers would but remember what a time table is, they would not fall into this error. It is a mere written statement of what is done,

and, therefore, before any can be drawn up properly, the system of which it proposes to be a copy must be in actual work. Some men can draw up a time table without seeing the working of a school, but it is only by forming in their imagination a picture of what they seek to represent. But even in this case the time table is but a copy—a copy of the details of this imaginary picture.

Those who can do this are very few. To do it well requires a mind capable of conceiving, arranging, and remembering the multifarious duties of an entire day's work for every child. A teacher need not place this strain upon his imagination. He has the actual materials upon which to work, and, by availing himself of them, he will be saved a great deal of trouble, and run no risk of failure. The proper course is, first, to teach the school as it ought to be taught, and then to copy the details of that teaching exactly into the time table. To bring the school up to the proper standard, I would recommend a plan like the following to be adopted: On Monday, teach the classes upon whatever plan is considered best, and make an entry on a slate of what each class actually did, the time engaged at each subject, and the nature of the teaching power employed. On that evening look over this; and make alterations wherever such may be considered necessary, either as to the quantity of work done, the time in which it was done, the order of its parts, or the arrangement of the teachers; being guided, however, by the day's experience. On Tuesday try this; on that evening revise it, and so on, until it is certain that every child is actively engaged at the business proper for a school; *that he receives as much as possible of the teacher's direct tuition, and that his time in the desks is profitably spent, under proper supervision.* When this is done, work the school for a few days in accordance with it, and then proceed to copy the details on the proper sheet.

I am not an advocate for model time tables. I think every teacher and manager of a school ought to make out for himself that which is best suited to the circumstances of the locality. I trust that the hints just given will assist them in doing this.

**Concluding hints on time tables.** Before concluding this subject, I may add, (1) that less time ought to be given to 'play' in country schools than in town schools; (2) that it is sometimes found of great advantage to let the junior classes out to play by themselves, so that the room may be quiet, for the better carrying

<sup>1</sup> For systems of organisation, and plans of time tables, see 'Manual of Method,' by Rev. W. Ross, p. 170. Joyce's 'School Management,' part 1. Currie's 'School Management,' chapter on Organisation. Min. of Council, 1848-9, vol. ii. p. 580; 1851-2, p. 310;

1852-3, p. 1107; 1855-6, p. 572; 1856-7, pp. 417 and 729; 1857-8, p. 677; 1859, p. 260. Mr. Keenan's 'Report upon School Organisation.' Report of Commissioners of National School Education, Ireland, 1856.

on of such a lesson as dictation, &c. in the senior classes; (3) *that* when the pupils go home to dinner or luncheon in the middle of the day, what is called the play-time ought not to be given; (4) that in no case should it exceed thirty minutes, and that, in the majority of cases, it should range from ten minutes to twenty; (5) that the children should know all the details for their respective classes; and (6) *that, when the time table is once made out, it must be strictly adhered to.*

**11. Monitors.** In most schools, teachers will be obliged to make use of the assistance of monitors, paid or unpaid; but in doing this they must be careful to use them only when they cannot do otherwise, to appoint none but steady smart lads to the office, and to place them at such duties only as they will be capable of discharging. If these conditions are observed faithfully, a considerable advantage will result to the school in general, and, as a consequence, to each particular child, the monitors themselves among the number.

**Prejudice against.** There is at present a serious prejudice against the use of monitors at all; but this has arisen from ignorance of their true functions, and from their being, in consequence of that ignorance, set to discharge duties for which they are wholly unfitted. The master uses them, not to keep children engaged at some useful occupation who would otherwise idle, but either that he may do little himself under the name of superintending, or that he may devote the principal portion of his time to the advanced classes. When acting solely as a *superintendent*, he is justly regarded by the people as no *teacher*; for it is one thing to make others teach their best—which, after all, may be of small worth—and quite another thing to teach your best yourself. The teacher is paid for his services as a *teacher*, and the people have a right to receive the utmost possible of what they have purchased. A parent knows that he is not entitled to all of the master's time; but he also knows that he is entitled to some of it, and that he does not receive his proper portion under the superintending system. Did he receive it fairly, he could not object to receive, *in addition*, the labours of others, no matter how less valuable those labours may be. It is in thus supplementing the just and adequate exertions of the master that monitors are of value.

**Opinions against monitorial teaching.** The Rev. J. Allen thus writes: 'I have been long desirous to get rid of the use of monitors, except for such parts of school discipline as approach to what is purely mechanical. The advocates of the monitorial system of instruction remind us that it is not their plan that one ignorant child should teach another, but that the schoolmaster

should diligently prepare his monitors, and that these, when instructed by him, should become so many channels through which the teaching, derived from him as the source, should be carried over the whole school. But if it be granted that in ordinary cases the master has energy enough to do intellectually for his monitors what is needed, the most important point yet remains as to the power of moral training which such instructors are likely to exercise over their pupils.' Mr. Cook says: 'We cannot reflect upon the age or requirements of monitors without being struck with the absurdity of expecting any good results from their use.' The Rev. Mr. Moseley gives several examples, derived from his own experience of schools, to prove the following statements: (1) That the means of instruction afforded by the monitorial system in great schools, however well conducted, are inadequate. (2) The unfavourable influence of the monitorial system in small schools is, however, yet more obvious than in large ones. (3) One of the characteristic faults of the monitorial system is the difficulty of getting up, by means of it, the efficiency of a school when it has been allowed to fall, or of creating an efficient school out of a mass of ignorant children.

These objections are against the monitorial system, and not against the occasional use of monitors. The system thus condemned is that of Bell and Lancaster, in which the children were arranged in a number of little classes each with a monitor at its head, and in which the master's duty was confined to the teaching of these monitors, to seeing that they did their duty to the best of their ability, and to the maintenance of order.<sup>1</sup>

**What monitors may be used for.** Monitors may be used to teach a spelling lesson, a lesson on tables, to teach the alphabet,

<sup>1</sup> In the following extract from Mr. Keenan's Report, taken from the Report of the Commissioners of National Education, Ireland, for 1856, the history of monitors as aids to teaching is ably traced from the introduction of the 'monitorial system' into public schools to its rejection, and from its re-introduction in an improved form up to the present time. He says:—

'Large schools are a modern invention. Until the education of the people became a topic of national concern—which is an epoch of no very remote date—the idea of large schools, or of organisation of any kind, or of systems of teaching, occurred to nobody; or at all events it was an idea which no one published to the world. Coeval with the admission of large

numbers of children into the same school, is the discovery of the difficulty of managing them. The individual system of teaching required an enormous staff of masters, and it was a system which educationists universally condemned in relation to public schools; but with one or two masters how were the large schools to be conducted? In the year 1680, the Abbé de la Salle, then a canon in the Cathedral Church of Rheims, after establishing the Brothers of the Christian Doctrine, originated the first great remedy, the system or simultaneous instruction, by which a large class, or sometimes the whole school, could be instructed by the same person. The education of a large number now seemed practicable; the system spread in France; it was

&c., and other minor duties of this sort; or they may be used in superintending children engaged at the silent occupation of the

tried in Germany; and finally, Pestalozzi made it the groundwork of his plan of school organisation, and improved upon it very considerably. The simultaneous system had its defects; it was deficient in exactness from operating upon heterogeneous materials, an equal classification being out of the question; but it was the first great reform in the economy of teaching which was tried and pursued to any extent. Some twenty years before the opening of De la Salle's first school at Rheims, were published the last of the writings of Pietro della Valle (Il Pellegrino), the celebrated traveller in Turkey, Egypt, Persia, India, &c., an English translation of part of which appeared in 1665; French, German, and Dutch translations having also been at various times published. Della Valle describes the habits and manners of the people of the countries in which he sojourned, with ability and accuracy, and amongst customs which he notices as being of ancient origin in the East, is an educational one, according to which children teach one another, that is, practise "*mutual instruction*." Della Valle told the remarkable circumstance with no purpose; and although it circulated in print in many languages, it appears to have excited nothing like attention—a circumstance which, considering the time of its publication, does not strike a person as at all remarkable. In 1780, according to Count Laborde, in his "*Plan d'Education pour les Enfants Pauvres*," the mutual instruction system was, to some extent, tried by the Chevalier Paulet in France. Dr. Bell went to Madras in the year 1789. The Military Orphan Asylum at that place afforded his benevolent disposition a favourable field for its exercise, and whether he had ever heard or read of the mutual instruction principle or not, he at all events struck upon the plan which solved the difficulty as to limited teaching power applied to large numbers of pupils. One day, observing a young Malabar boy, who belonged to the Orphanage, writing on sand, and

thinking the plan a good one for the teaching of writing, he requested the usher of the school to try it. The usher refused to adopt the strange system. Dr. Bell then got one of the senior boys to try it, and the experiment of a boy teaching boys was so successful, that he extended the system until he had the school regularly conducted on an organisation based upon monitorial assistance. This was in the year 1791. The Madras Government, impressed with the utility of the scheme, patronised it warmly, and no experiment was ever tried under more favourable auspices or with more immediate success. Dr. Bell returned to England in 1797, published an account of his system, and even organised a school in London, and another afterwards at Swanage, upon the monitorial plan. In the year 1798, Joseph Lancaster opened the Borough-road School for the instruction of poor children; but he does not appear to have established his school with the view of carrying out any precise educational reform, unless the cheapness of the tuition be called a reform, for he says in his own account of the school, "I knew of no modes of tuition but those usually in practice, and I had a practical knowledge of them." In another place he says, "Though a system of order was easily established, a new system of tuition was another thing, and to do this I found myself most unexpectedly and gradually advancing." In the same account he says, "Many such experiments have been made, which proved quite useless, and such as I should never attempt again. In other cases, I have gone the wrong way to work, and accidentally stumbled on the very object I was in quest of. The result has been a new and efficient system of education; the principle of which is not only adapted to large manufacturing districts, but, with little variation in the mode of applying it, to all the poor of the country, and to village schools." Lancaster soon became an enthusiast about the monitorial system; he looked upon it as

desks. They can also be judiciously employed as monitors of order, &c. But, in my opinion, they cannot teach reading well.

his own offspring, and fought a hard battle afterwards for the credit of having originated it. He certainly was not before Bell, no more than Bell was before the Orientals, among whom an accident had suggested the scheme to him, or before Paulet the Frenchman; but Lancaster was the first to lead people to believe that multitudes could be as easily taught as individuals, and that a school to work well required only a superintendent to start it into motion at first, and afterwards to watch its progress. Prudence is seldom the companion of enthusiasm; and in the excitement of the moment, Lancaster made most extravagant professions as to the magic spell of the monitorial system. In 1803 the following announcement was issued to the public:—

“The boys’ school was instituted as a *free* school, by Joseph Lancaster, in 1801; and is actually extended to *seven hundred boys*, who are instructed upon a plan entirely new; by means of which *ONE MASTER* alone can educate *one thousand boys* in reading, writing, and arithmetic, as effectually, and with as little trouble, as twenty or thirty have ever been instructed by the usual modes of tuition.”

‘The leading men of the time liberally supported the institution, the king himself subscribed largely and became its patron; everybody seemed to believe that a great discovery had been made, and to hope that a grand national amelioration would result from it. Schools were established in various parts of England, Ireland, and Scotland, upon the system, and Lancaster himself was invited to inaugurate and to organise many of them. On the Continent the interest in the new system was as great as at home. In Germany it was taken up with the same warmth as in England; in France it also got a footing; in Switzerland the intelligent and philosophic Père Girard brought the deepest wisdom and coolest investigation to bear upon it. If it were sound in principle, it appeared to have the promise of a bright page in the annals

of education; but enthusiasts often injure the good cause they endeavour to advance, and this truism was never more lamentably exemplified than in the case of the monitorial system. Its supporters professed too much, tried too much, and accomplished too little. The string of a harp at a proper tension gives a pleasing tone when touched; but try to stretch it to an unlimited length, and it breaks and loses all quality of sound. The monitorial system was stretched too far; its promoters in most cases forgot to prepare the monitors properly for their duties, and they destroyed their pupillary capacities entirely by occupying them for nearly the whole length of the day as teachers. The reaction was quite as sudden and forcible as the original adoption of the system; on all sides it was heard that the monitorial system was full of evil; the Prussian Government condemned it; the Germans, in fact, almost universally prohibited it; the French Government pronounced it “la plus mauvaise de toutes les méthodes, celle qui est la cause habituelle de tant d’abus et de désordres;” and Mr. Joseph Kays says that whenever he addressed a German teacher on the subject of supplying monitors, he was immediately answered, “Oh, we had enough of your Lancasterian methods; depend upon it we shall never try them again.” Mr. David Stow, of Glasgow, in his “Training System,” also pronounces very decidedly against monitors. He says, “The attempt to communicate knowledge, or to train by monitors, deceives the public and ourselves, by raising undue expectations.” The supporters and the opponents of the system ran into extremes; one party said that a thousand children required only one adult master, another said that such a number of children required twenty masters; one rejected the master as unnecessary and less useful than the monitors, the other rejected the monitors because their teaching was not as effective as that of the masters; or, as it may be represented, one rejected the gold because it was less

They have neither the skill which is requisite, nor the knowledge of the meanings of words essentially necessary to make reading

*useful* than the iron, the other rejected the iron because it was less *valuable* than the gold; there was no end to the controversy; no mean to be struck between them; and the longer the enthusiasts argued, the more unlikely were they to agree. I believe that the mistakes of the promoters of the monitorial system were, that they did not select children who were sufficiently mature and intelligent for their duties; that they required them to teach more than they were prepared for; that the balance of the double capacity of the monitor, as teacher and pupil, was not maintained; that there was no course of special instruction given to them to qualify them for their duties and to make up for whatever time they were employed in teaching; that they were not required to prepare themselves for the lessons which they were called upon to teach; that they were employed at random, had charge of no particular class, and had no set course of instruction to impart; that the teachers were not properly drilled, trained, or qualified to control or prepare the monitors for their duties, and, above all, that the main, the higher, the essential part of the education of the pupils, was not given by the teachers themselves. These were grievous errors to have made; errors which show it to be no wonder that the monitorial system came into disrepute. The most fatal error of all, however, the error from which all the other evils sprang, was that alluded to above, in respect to the double capacity of the monitor as teacher and pupil. Immediately that the pupil's employment as a monitor interfered with his business as a pupil, the fabric began to totter; when the monitor remained teaching for the whole length of the day, the old structure was doomed, it soon crumbled away, and lay in ruins and unrespected dust. It is, however, no imputation upon the strength of a horse, if you place an overload upon his shoulders, and find him unable to carry it; it does not reflect upon the floating quality of a vessel, if you add pile upon pile to the cargo, and find

it at last to sink; it does not prove a carpenter to be worthless, if he fail to slate the house, chisel the cornice-stones, and paint the panels of the doors; and it certainly was no stigma upon the monitorial system to have been so roughly handled, so inconsiderately and absurdly tested, and so immoderately employed, whilst so egregiously misunderstood, and then to have experienced failure, and a general loss of public confidence. The schools of those who are indisposed to avail themselves of monitorial assistance are, as might naturally be expected, exhibiting the deficiencies and imperfections of the large school with an inadequate teaching staff. Mr. Kay observes, "The teachers are not assisted by monitors in Germany as in Switzerland, France, and England; and this, I think, a very great error. I have often been in schools in Prussia, where the teacher had about 100 children of different degrees of proficiency, to instruct in the same class-room, without any assistance whatever; the consequence was that while he was teaching one class, the others were in disorder, and making noise enough to distract the attention of the children who were receiving instruction, as well as that of the teacher who was giving it." Unless the children are permitted to remain uninstructed, in a school where the attendance is large, and the monitorial system not resorted to, a large staff of competent teachers must be employed to do a great deal which could be as well, if not better, done by monitors; and this involves the country in very considerable expense. Mr. Kay refers to this point. "In Prussia," he says, "where they have no monitors, they are obliged to augment the number of their teachers very considerably; and I have found in a small school, which could have been very easily managed by one teacher and some well-trained monitors, as many as three teachers, for each of whom good salaries had to be provided, as well as houses and gardens." Thus the strong reaction against the monitorial system was nearly as deep an error as the ori-

intelligent. They fail also in zeal and earnestness. I have found the following plan of using them very good. Suppose there were

ginal mismanagement of the disciples of Lancaster and Bell. It is quite evident, however, from the tone of recent writers, that the Germans and others are coming to a sense of their long-standing mistake on this question. Mr. Kay, speaking of the Prussians, says, "They have resolved, as I have already mentioned, to employ no monitors in the schools; and as they are conscious that without them they require a much greater number of teachers, they have directed the inspectors to inform the county magistrates when two or more teachers are required by a parish, and the magistrates are, in these cases, authorised to oblige the parochial authorities to elect and support as many additional teachers as are necessary. It often happens, however, that a parish, although very populous, is very poor, and unable to do more than support one teacher, even when the number of its children, of an age to attend school, is 120 or 180. In these cases, all the children, of different ages and different degrees of proficiency, are assembled in one school-room under the care of only one teacher. Now it is evident, that no matter how clever such a teacher may be, it is utterly impossible for him to conduct such a school properly. Even if the children were all of the same degree of proficiency, it would be impossible for one man to promote the individual development and education of so many scholars; how much more so, when they are of different ages, and of different degrees of proficiency? This is the great fault of the Prussian village schools. They are, at present, actually retarding the progress of their own education by their too blind fear of doing so. They fear the evil effects of our old, absurd monitorial systems so much, as to refuse to reason calmly on the subject of monitorial assistance. But the evil will soon bring its own cure. They find that many parishes, with more than a hundred children, cannot afford to support more than one teacher; they clearly see that one is not enough for so many; and that, owing to this paucity

of masters, the education of the less intelligent children is neglected. They are really anxious to perfect their schools; and where there is such a will, and such an experience as is possessed by the educational authorities in Prussia, or, in other words, by the Prussian people themselves, there the remedy will soon be applied. They are already, in some few quarters, beginning to see their error, and not many years will pass ere a change will be introduced." The Commissioners of National Education have always encouraged monitorial teaching; they have seen that a child who is employed, at stated times, in the teaching of a class of his fellow-pupils is rendering most valuable assistance to the master, is improving himself in knowledge, and is obtaining a taste, and undergoing the best possible training for becoming a teacher. They approached the consideration of the question with the greatest care. They never contemplated conducting a large school solely by monitorial assistance; nor did they ever permit their monitors to forget that they are pupils. The first regular monitors in the service of the Board were those in the Model Schools, Dublin, so far back as March 1833. Some were paid, and others acted gratuitously. One of the greatest prizes and highest distinctions in the school was to attain to a monitorship. At one time during school-hours the monitors taught some of the classes, and at another time they were themselves instructed; and, before school-hours there was a special course of instruction always given them. The Commissioners, in their Report for 1837, refer to a new system of remunerating this class of young persons, in the Model Schools they were intending to establish throughout the country, which shows the permanency of the monitorial system at that early period in the history of the Board. They say, "that the money so paid (in school fees) shall constitute a school fund, and that it shall be divided into such proportions as we may determine, between the head master, his assistant, and the most



three drafts in the lowest class, which is the number that ought to be in it, and suppose that these were on the floor to receive 'a reading lesson' of 45 minutes in a school in which there was but one teacher. Two monitors would be necessary, and these could assist in the following order. In draft 1 the master could teach *reading* for, say, fifteen minutes, the time varying by the circumstances of the class—during this time one monitor would be teaching draft 2 to spell on and off the book, and the other would be teaching draft 3 to count or add mentally. The master could then move from draft 1 to draft 2, and teach the children in it to read, the monitor of draft 2 going to draft 1 and giving out the spelling, while the boy in draft 3 could change from mental addition to the teaching of the alphabet, &c. The

advanced of the monitors whom he may employ." The system was always worked with moderation; it was free from the wild pretensions of the plans of Bell and Lancaster; and the pupillary and the monitorial functions were happily coalesced. It was the first rational trial, in my mind, which was given to monitorial teaching in these countries. In their Report for 1846, the Commissioners refer to the fruits of the system; they develop its organisation, and they announce their determination to extend it to the ordinary National Schools throughout the country. Each monitor was to serve for a period of four years; at the end of each year there was a sifting examination as to his proficiency; his teacher was required to employ him moderately as a monitor, and freely as a pupil; and his income increased each year up to the last of his service. Then the system received a further development, by the institution of a small staff of pupil-teachers in each of the Model Schools, who, in most cases, were the élite of those monitors who had completed their fourth year of service. It should be remembered that the functions of the pupil-teacher and the monitor are very different; the former is more of a teacher than a pupil, the latter more of a pupil than a teacher. In 1855 the monitorial system received a still further extension of its usefulness, by the appointment of a number of junior paid monitors, commencing at eleven years of age, and serving for three years; to receive 2*l*.

for the first year, 3*l*. the second, and 4*l*. the third. If the conduct and attainments of a junior paid monitor be satisfactory at the end of his period of service, he is then drafted into the ranks of the senior paid monitors, to serve for four years more, and receiving respectively each year, 5*l*., 6*l*., 8*l*. and 10*l*.. The paid monitor is now eighteen years of age, and should he persevere in his intention to become a teacher, and exhibit the necessary qualification, he may then be appointed to a pupil teachership in a District Model School, in which he remains for twelve months or two years. In this last stage, his professional education is carried to such a degree, as to qualify him in the most superior way for the offices of teaching; and at the expiration of his stay in the Model School, he is very likely at once nominated to the charge of an Ordinary National School. After serving a year or two as teacher of a school, and becoming acquainted with the difficulties and the responsibilities of the position, he is then brought up to Dublin to receive a final course of training in the Central Institution, Marlborough Street. \* \* \* \* A monitorial system, such as I have described, can hardly fail: the country may, I think, well be proud of it; and the more that it is developed, the less likelihood is there of hearing complaint or cavil at its arrangements, or suspicion or hesitation as to the soundness and judiciousness of the principles upon which it is established.'

master might then pass to draft 3 and teach it, while the monitor of that draft might teach tables, &c. to the class thus left vacant. The three drafts should be so near each other that, without actually interfering with each other, the master could make himself certain that the lads were working correctly. Occasionally he could take up spelling, tables, &c. and see that these subjects were going on well. Paid monitors, pupil teachers, &c. may of course be employed in higher duties.

**Extra hour's teaching requisite.** Monitors must be taught after hours, both as a compensation for the time they give in teaching, and as a preparation for that teaching. They should also continue to discharge the same duties in the same class for a month at least. Change of teachers is bad for any class, and a continuance in office until some result could be shown is a good means of stimulating the monitor to faithfulness in performance of his duty.

**12. Order, value of.** When anything is to be done, it is best to do it in an orderly manner. There are also many things in which attention to order not only is the best course to be adopted, but in which success would be impossible without it. Among these may be reckoned the teaching of a primary school. Children are naturally restless, noisy, and prone to irregularity, so that when many of them are together it would be impossible to direct their efforts to any good end, unless under a proper controlling and governing power; but by strict attention to the rules of order and discipline we can make even their natural restlessness contribute to their advancement.

**Order may be carried too far.** Order may, however, be carried too far, and in that case it is an evil. Too many arrangements to secure precision, attention, silence, &c. clog the wheels of the machine and destroy its usefulness. The advantage of order and discipline is in *facilitating* the performance of the day's duties, and therefore there is an error in every system in which time is spent on the mere maintenance of order, that could be given effectively to the real business of the school. *Over-drill* is very often practised, and, though drill is very good, it becomes when in excess a nuisance. The following style, which I have sometimes met with, I consider exceedingly objectionable, from the unnecessary loss of time involved. A class, for instance, engaged at arithmetic in desks is about to be taught a reading lesson on the floor. The master gives the following orders:—

*Attention.* Boys look at the master.

*Pencils down.* They place the pencils at the top of the desk.

*Prepare slates.* They grasp the slates by two corners.

*Show slates.* They turn them round, and slope them a little towards the breast.

*In.* They place them in the grooves made in the desks for their reception.

*Hands up.* Both hands extended upwards; to show, I suppose, that the slates and pencils are laid down.

*Down.* Hands placed on the knees.

*To the left (or right) face.* Turn to the side mentioned, half round.

*Hands up.* Both hands raised again.

*Horizontally.* Hands extended slightly above, and parallel to the desk.

*Down.* Placed, one on the desk the boys sit in, and the other on the back of the next. This is generally done with a smart noise.

*Out.* Pupils, supporting themselves on their hands, spring out of the forms and stand upright between the desks.

*Fold arms.* They cross their arms on their breasts.

*Slow march.* They move one after another to the place indicated, keeping step, and making a distinct noise with their feet.

These orders may seem exaggerated, but I have met with them in most large schools, chiefly model schools, and in some smaller country schools whose masters imitate 'not wisely but too well.' But, bad as these are, the case is often even worse, for some teachers who are extreme lovers of regularity and precision give the orders over and over again until they get perfect uniformity of action from the whole class. Thus, if the slates at the order '*show*,' or '*in*,' are not placed where desired so simultaneously as to produce but one effect, those fastidious persons will go over the performance for many minutes, often wasting as long in this as would serve to teach an ordinary school lesson. Children so drilled must be disgusted with order. It must be a sad bore to them. They who adopt this system mistake order for the *end* of education; and it will be found in such schools that not only is every movement and motion made by rule, but every answer is generally by guess.

**Defects of over-drilling in the example just given.** In the example just given, what the master wanted was (1) that the slates and pencils should be quietly and quickly put into their proper places, and (2) that the children should form round himself on the floor rapidly, but without confusion. Will anyone say that these objects were best effected by the method he adopted? In my opinion he not only took the longest plan of arriving at the desired result, but he impeded the business of the entire school, for no business could possibly go on in any class so long as another class was obeying such multifarious and noisy commands.

**What ought to have been done.** The class should have been so trained to *habits* of order and obedience that, at the simple telling of them what they were to do, either verbally, or, better, by a signal known to all, such as a *single* touch on a small bell, they would do it, when left to themselves, exactly as it ought to be done. Giving boys instructions regarding every step necessary to attain the desired end is simply to drill them, and to do so at such time is a violation of the great rule—a time and a place for everything, and everything in its proper time and place. Boys thus in leading strings can no more be said to possess habits of order than the recruit as yet in the hands of the drill-sergeant can be said to be a disciplined soldier. Suppose the master had said to the class, 'You are to form here for a reading lesson,' the boys should, of *themselves*, have placed the pencils and slates in their proper places, got out, and moved (not marched, for I do not approve of that solid tramping of the feet which is called marching) one after the other to the draft circle without noise or confusion. When so left to themselves a boy may indeed be, now and then, a little behind the others, but the fault is of much less consequence than the extreme waste of time which absolute precision requires. It is an error, too, whose punishment, if it is thought necessary to punish for it, should fall upon the boy himself and not on the whole class, and one which ought to be corrected by remarks directed personally to him.

**Objections considered.** It will be said that it is by such orders that boys are taught. I answer that it is not to teach them that this system is in general practised, being used even when boys are already fully drilled; and (2) that it is not the best way to teach them. The best way to teach a child how to do anything is to give him, at first, general hints for his guidance, then leave him to do what he can, and point out to him whatever defects were noticed in his method. Depend upon it such a system of multiplied directions is wholly unnecessary, and I am particular in condemning it because it is very generally practised, and very far from being agreeable to the parents of the children. I have known several schools that became highly unpopular from this cause alone.

This is an instance of the evils of excess; but though the excess of order, like the excess of everything, is in reality a fault, it is not so frequently met with as is the entire absence of order, or of attention to its chief rules. The point to which teachers ought to attain is that which lies between too great formality on the one hand, and too great freedom of action on the other.

**Principles of order in one rule.** The whole principles of order may be embodied in the one sentence—'a *proper* time and place for everything (and every person), and everything in

its own time and place.' There should be a proper time for everything included in the school business, and everything should be done in the time thus set apart, and in none other. There should also be a proper place for everything, and everything should be kept in that place. There is no better test of a master's skill, ingenuity, talent, and general fitness, than his adherence to this comprehensive rule.

**Violations of this rule exemplified.** Every article in the school should be easy of access, yet not loosely thrown aside. In some schools the copybooks are thrown into the press; the slates left here and there; the books lie scattered, like litter, over the benches and in the windows; the tablets are hung in numbers upon one or two pins, so that all have frequently to be disturbed before the one sought for is procured; the black-board is left to lie in some neglected corner of the room, or, as I have sometimes seen, made to screen the sweepings of the floor, or the fuel, from the gaze of strangers; and the maps are suspended behind desks, so that a class could not be formed before them. All these are gross violations of the principles of order, and impede the progress of the school more than it is easy to calculate.

**Remedy.** The *copybooks* should be kept as I have previously explained;<sup>1</sup> there should be a double supply of *slates* for the desks and floor—the one should be kept always in the desks, and the other in some convenient corner of the press or of the room; each *tablet* should have a pin for itself, and this pin should not be driven into the walls, but into rails put up for the purpose; the *black-boards* should be suspended from hooks in each draft space, one, however, being left on the easel: a piece of sponge, or other suitable rubber to remove the chalk, should be attached by a string to each; the *pens* and *pencils* should be kept in separate boxes, and the *ink bottles*, as before stated, should be fixed in the desks; the *books* of the school should be arranged in the press as books are on the shelves of a library, so that they may be got without trouble; and when the children bring books daily to school, they should be kept with them, so as to look as little confused as possible, and to be easily available when wanted.

**Pupils should not bring books to school.** But as a general rule, I do not think the pupils should bring any books to school with them. They are not permitted to use the *reading books* except when up in class, and there should always be a stock on hand for this purpose; and when saying the home lessons, one book, in the hand of the master, is sufficient. *Arithmetics*, &c., should always be supplied from the school stock; they should be given out daily, and collected back when not in use. When children bring their

<sup>1</sup> Pp. 74 and 89.

own books they must either carry them about wherever they go, which is in most cases unsightly, inconvenient, or impossible, or they must place them on one side. If they place them on the desks, they create confusion and disorder; if in receptacles set apart for the purpose, time is wasted in going for them—when called to class they cannot come, they must go for their books. Straps and bags are encumbrances, and, in country schools, very rarely seen.

**Necessity for cap rack.** Another source of disorder is in the manner in which children throw their caps about. No place is set apart in many schools for them, and, in consequence, they, and the cloaks and bonnets of the girls, are thrown in a heap in one corner of the room, scattered over the desks, hung on the tablet pins, or else left in the windows. In such cases the appearance of the room is always unsightly, and when allowing the children out for play or any other purpose, the utmost noise, confusion, and waste of time invariably are met with. A cheap cap rack is very inexpensive, and there are few teachers who could not make one for themselves. A very convenient one consists of six or seven rails, about three inches broad, and of adequate length. In these there should be placed suitable pins to hold the articles. Nails are not good, but will answer if nothing better can be readily procured. These rails should be attached to the wall near the door, so that the children going in or out can reach them without trouble.

**Tablets and maps, how to suspend.** The tablets and maps should be suspended where they can be got at without going through the desks, and, if possible, where a class could form round them, in order to prevent the waste of time that otherwise takes place in unhooking and removing them. In fact, it may be laid down as a general rule, so far as maps are concerned, that there should be as many places of suspension as there are *draft* spaces. If there are many maps, they can be suspended over each other.

The maps in ordinary use have to be rolled up by hand. This is not always easily done, as they are sometimes placed high up, and very frequently it is the cause of great confusion and waste of time, and of injury to the maps themselves, from the tendency to leave them exposed to the sweepings of the room. To remedy this, detach the round roller from the bottom and place it at the top of the map, and the board at the top place at the foot. This allows of the suspension of the map in a little frame, and, if provided with mountings, as in window blinds, it can be easily rolled and unrolled by merely pulling a string. If the frame be made large enough two or more maps can be mounted in it, and this will economise the wall space considerably.

**When walls are damp.** Owing to the dampness of the walls

of some houses, maps, tablets, &c., cannot be suspended from them without immediate damage. In this case, long pins should be used, so as to prevent the maps from touching the walls in any place; but the best plan is to mount them in a movable stand, something like a clothes' horse—on the roller system—placing two or three, or more, to each stand. This will almost effectually preserve them, even in the dampest houses. The black-board can be inserted into the lower part of this frame, if found necessary.

**Pointers.** These are indispensable for map teaching. They should be made neatly, and suspended close to the maps themselves, so as to be always at hand. Teachers should get over the idea that anything—a rule, a pen, a pencil, a walking-stick—will do for a pointer. Nothing should be used but what has been specially made for the purpose. It will in general look best; and from being used for but one thing, it will be less likely to require always looking for. In fact, unless *every article* necessary for the progress of the children is in its own place, time will be wasted, and the rules of good order violated.

**Evil of pupils moving from their places when they like.** In some schools, pupils go out, or to the fire, or to any other place in the room, when they please. This is exceedingly objectionable. It not only creates irregularities of various sorts, noise, and confusion, but in the case of going out it sometimes leads to serious improprieties. Pupils should not be allowed to leave their proper duties except by the consent of the master, or of some responsible person appointed by him. And no more than one, or, at the most, two, should be permitted to go out at a time. When more go out, the companionship protracts their stay; and this is not only an injury to themselves, but an injustice to the others, and when they are seen by persons passing the school-grounds, it is a certain means of gaining a bad character for the establishment.

Pupils who go to the fire at pleasure can settle down steadily to nothing. They are always either at the fire, or anxiously waiting an opportunity to go to it. A crowd in such a school always gathers round the fire, and idleness, talking, scrambling, and pushing are the consequences; and, in the struggle, the small children—the ones to whom the fire is the most necessary—are shut out. No child should, as a general rule, be permitted to go to the fire, for the room should be heated to the temperature that would make their going unnecessary. In cases, however, where an exception to this rule is called for, the draft to be taught may be assembled in front of the fire, for they will thus be warmed without interfering with their duties.

**Calling out for what is wanted.** In other schools, when

boys wish for anything, they either call out, or else come up to the master, interrupting him, no matter at what business he may be engaged. This is not only disorderly, but *unmannerly*, and should be commented upon from both points of view. A breach of good manners should never be allowed to pass unnoticed, were it only for the purpose of preserving good order in the school. A classical teacher of my acquaintance maintains silence by simply convincing his children that noise is a breach of good manners. He represents to his children that they are in his house, under his roof, and that, if noisy and inattentive to what he says, they will be guilty of conduct that he himself would not possibly be guilty of under theirs. He asks them how they would regard him if, when at their father's house, he talked so loudly as to disturb every person near him, and so unceasingly as to attend to nothing that others said. They know that such conduct is wrong in the extreme, and they soon learn the lesson he seeks to teach them.

**Remedy.** When boys have any request to make, they should hold up a hand, and the master or monitor should attend to them as quickly as possible. It is a bad thing to try the patience of children too far. If it is absolutely necessary for them to speak to the master, they should be taught to wait quietly until he is disengaged.

**Monitors of order.** In other schools, when pens, pencils, &c. are required, or when books, &c. are to be collected, the children do not know upon whom falls the duty. There should always be a person distinctly appointed for such offices. The *last* boy in the class is the best to depute; better, I think, than the *first* boy, as choosing him will impede the business of the class less. The pupils, suppose, stand in class. The last boy gets the books, and gives one to each, beginning with the first, and retaining one for himself as he falls into his place. When about to collect them, he stations himself at the top of the class, and as the boys pass him in going to their seats, he receives the books which they deposit in his hand. Little details of this kind afford, as Mr. Keenan says, 'invaluable opportunities to an intelligent teacher for the cultivation of habits of taste, and business, and accuracy in his pupils.'

**Trifles most important.** It may appear to some that these details are too minute and trifling, but what are often called trifles are in reality of great importance. 'It is only an inspector that can accurately understand the inconvenience which results from inattention to apparent trifles. These arrangements often make all the difference between an ill-conducted and a well-conducted school; and I have known a master's labours entirely thrown away, and himself worn out and dispirited, from a mere neglect and in-



difference to such slight matters.' So writes Mr. Mitchell, in his Report for 1848; while Mr. Kennedy, in his Report for 1859, bears testimony to the value of 'trifles' in the following words: 'If I were to name any one point of excellence more than another to which I think the success of the Lancaster and Rochdale schools is owing, and in which their merit lies, I should say that it was *an attention to minutiae*.'

**13. Discipline defined.** With regard to *discipline*, it may be said 'to secure from the pupils subordination to the authority of the teachers, submission to the rules and regulations of the school, respect for superiors, the cultivation of decorum, and devotion to study; and the best system of discipline is that which secures most of these advantages with the least amount of restraint, harshness, or chastisement.'<sup>1</sup> Discipline also secures good conduct, gentleness of disposition, and kindness of manner and behaviour. It is chiefly instrumental, in fact, in forming the *character* of the child. He who would seek to form this correctly has to contend with anger and violence, with a proneness to wrangling, and with the many difficulties attending on the inculcation of truth, frankness, honesty, candour, and obedience.

**Anger and passion.** Anger and passion are naturally found most where the governing powers of the mind are weakest, and hence they are, almost universally, met with in children. But children are angry from imitation, as well as from mental defect. They witness angry outbursts of passion in their parents, in the servants, their friends and acquaintances; and as they are ever open to impressions for good or ill, similar faults are rapidly developed in themselves, and become apparent in rough contentions with brothers and sisters, or with school companions. It is incumbent, therefore, upon all persons in charge of children—but especially upon those in whose hands is the chief formation of their character, and to whom they look instinctively for guidance—to refrain from angry expressions, and even from angry looks.

When children are detected in bursts of anger among themselves, in quarrelling, in speaking harshly and cuttingly to each other, the master should reprove them; but he should do so with mildness and temper, for otherwise he may do harm under the hope of doing good. If he command them to cease, speak to them dogmatically and dictatorially—he may gain obedience for the time, but he will merely cover over the angry fires. They will smoulder, and be ready to burst out again with violence when opportunity offers. He must extinguish the evil, and not merely repress it; and this he can do only by appealing to the higher portions of their nature,

<sup>1</sup> Rep. of Nat. Educ. Ireland, vol. for 1855; Mr. Keenan's Gen. Rep.

to the kindness of disposition which lurks more or less in the breast of everyone, to their sense of right, to their reverence for Him who said, 'The children of God must not strive.' They must learn the great lesson that, as quarrelling is sinful in itself—quite irrespective of what they may be contending about—they are not to indulge in it, whether their side of the dispute is right or wrong. 'The boy,' says Mrs. Fry, 'who is accustomed to maintain angrily the superiority of his top, will when a man angrily maintain the superiority of his creed; the girl who is allowed to quarrel for precedence in the use of a toy or book, will when a woman disturb the peace of her family by jealous contention and pertinacity.'

Quarrelling among children often proceeds from their unwillingness to make those little concessions which grown people find incumbent on them to make in social intercourse. The important lesson of *mutually yielding a little*, if once learned, would prevent many a contention. It cannot, therefore, be commenced too soon. When teachers find that two opposite opinions are angrily maintained in their entirety, they should endeavour to bring about those small concessions which will make them coalesce, and so produce peace and harmony.

Every outburst of passion may be made a means for the improvement of all. It therefore should not only be privately but publicly checked—not necessarily punished, but stopped—and occasion should always be taken to obtain an expression of regret from those who are in error, and while condemning the fault, the manliness of confessing it ought to be praised. Children should, however, not only *avoid* the fault of quarrelling, but they should act with openness of heart and with good nature towards each other. To refrain from error is but a negative virtue after all.

**Truth.** Children should also be carefully brought up to habits of truthfulness, until they would as soon think of committing a theft as of telling a lie. To speak what is quite untrue, knowing it to be so, is not only a wicked and mean act, such as no man with love for God or for himself would be guilty of, but it is a silly act. It is *mean*, because it proceeds from a cringing spirit. The liar's mind is always sordid and low; and the liar himself, though he may be successful through his cunning, can never be great or noble. It is *wicked*, because an evil in itself, as well as a perversion of the great gift of speech with which God endowed us, and intended as a blessing. It is sinful, because strictly forbidden by Him who is the Father of Truth. But it is a *folly*, inasmuch as it generally defeats its own purpose. Very few believe a wilful lie, and the habit of lying is very easily detected. He who gains the reputation of telling lies cannot hope to be believed even when

speaking truly. None but a fool would willingly lie. There are so many circumstances connected with even the simplest narrative, that any misstatement is easily detected.

**Equivocation and exaggeration.** Again, though a child may not speak what is absolutely incorrect, he may *equivocate*—he may use a set of words whose meaning may conceivably be true, but which in their ordinary acceptation express what is false. This is a want of sincerity, of that openness of character and ingenuousness that ought always to characterise childhood, and must be as strictly checked as even direct falsehood. Those who commit this fault are very prone also to the fault of *exaggeration*. If relating any circumstance they will not confine themselves to the incidents as they occurred, though these may be sufficiently wonderful in themselves; they will add or diminish, in order to increase the effect. If six men were fighting, it is related that there were ten or twelve; if a dozen of birds were killed, the number when told is a dozen or two, &c. This fault, as Dr. Johnson says, is more the result of ‘carelessness about truth than intentional lying,’ but it is nevertheless a fault strongly deserving of censure and correction.

**Attention and perseverance.** Discipline may also be made the means of forming habits of *attention* and *perseverance*, two virtues which, probably more than any others, are to the student the conditions and causes of his success. These virtues are not natural to children; they require special cultivation. Children, generally, attend to what is new; but when the novelty disappears, they become careless and indifferent, listless and apathetic. They are too energetic at first, and too sluggish in the end. The master ought to restrain this excess of zeal at the commencement, to treasure up the energy they would squander themselves if permitted, and to sustain it when about to flag. He should create in his children purity of motives. He should accustom them to do a thing simply because it is *right* to do it, and not because it is pleasant or novel; and he should not be too ready in rendering them assistance in overcoming whatever little difficulties present themselves. Every effort should be made by the student himself, of course encouraged and directed by the master, before he can legitimately claim help, and, before giving it, the student should be called upon to explain what he has done himself to attain success. If the efforts prove to have been desultory and weak, he should be encouraged to try again; if they have been continuous and intellectual, but unsuccessful, their defects should be pointed out, and he should then be left to reach the goal himself by the light thus thrown before him. A child ought not to be allowed to leave a thing unfinished. Whatever he begins to do, he should be caused

to complete, no matter how much he may come to dislike it. He will thus learn habits of perseverance, and the value of prudence and forethought when about to undertake any business.

**Obedience.** This is a most important virtue, and in children it is most essential, for without obedience from them we are powerless. Obedience, however, to be thoroughly valuable, must be cheerful and willing. It very often is tardy, hesitating, languid, dilatory, and often is the result either of threats or of punishment. It may, on the other hand, be brought about by entreaty, by argument, by persuasion, or from a strong liking for the duty assigned. But obedience so produced is not the kind with which the teacher ought to rest satisfied, or by which he will succeed in governing his school.

**Kind of.** The obedience of a child should be prompt, active, and unhesitating; it should command his whole attention, and be the result neither of threats nor punishment, argument nor feeling, but it should spring solely from a sense of duty in *submitting to authority*. When told to do anything, it ought not to enter into his head to sift the why and the wherefore. He should feel that he cannot but obey. Children are not sufficiently rational, nor are their motives sufficiently pure, to make an appeal to their judgment judicious. 'It is impossible,' as Abbot says, 'to govern a child by mere argument; many cases must occur, in which it will be incapable of seeing the reasonableness and propriety of the command, and often its wishes will be so strongly opposed to duty, that all efforts to convince it will be in vain.' The first thing, then, to be aimed at, is to bring the child into perfect subjection; to teach him that he must obey, and to accustom him to immediate and cheerful acquiescence in the will of his teacher. This is true obedience, and this is absolutely necessary to good government. Children very often resist, but when they find that resistance is useless, they soon sink down into submission; and when the habit of obedience is once formed, it smoothes the way to the attainment of the most perfect discipline, unaccompanied with trouble or crossness, and to the acquisition of every legitimate success.

**How to govern.** But the question arises, 'By what means are pupils to be taught submission to authority?' I give the answer in the words of another, 'By kindness, patience, undeviating firmness of purpose, and a strict regard to principle in all our dealings with them.' Never treat a child harshly, for *love* is a great incentive to obedience. Never manifest impatience at its little efforts, or any want of forbearance, for *gratitude* is a great incentive to obedience. Never show a want of principle—*faith* in the person who issues the command generally secures promptness in complying with the orders; and finally, never give a command which

you do not intend to be obeyed to the letter, for there is no more certain way of habituating a child to disregard of instructions and neglect than this. No matter how trifling the command may be, see that it is fully and implicitly obeyed, and see also that the obedience, when it ought to be so, is continuous. In many cases I have seen masters call for silence every minute or so. The pupils obeyed him for the instant, but relapsed immediately afterwards into noise and confusion.

Again, when disobedience leads, as it often does, to mischief, to the destruction of property, infliction of pain, &c., do not punish so much for the effect as for the cause. Appear always as if you were noticing their efforts to do right, for a consciousness of having our good actions known is a most certain stimulant for prolonging them. Children exhibit every diversity of temper and disposition. A kind look or a pleasant word will be sufficient for one; another may require gentle admonition; in another case severe rebuke must be resorted to; in a few cases—and I am happy to say that it is only in a few—corporal punishment must be inflicted with more or less severity.

**Punishment.** In the selection of the punishment, and in its mode of administration, the teacher should exhibit peculiar judgment, but, above even it, he should exhibit temper and humanity. Corporal punishment cannot be wholly dispensed with, but it should not be inflicted until all other methods have failed. Teachers are by no means careful enough in obeying this rule. It is very common to see them striking the boys on the head or across the fingers with a cane or pointer, or boxing their ears with violence, and this, perhaps, from some very trifling cause. Such conduct is unpardonable. Corporal punishment ought not to be inflicted hastily, or with an improper instrument, or on a wrong part of the body—*never about the head*; but it is wonderful how very little of corporal punishment is required for the maintenance of order and discipline. In the very best schools with which I am acquainted, it is almost unknown.

**Punishment is often a substitute for discipline.** ‘Discipline,’ as Mr. Keenan says,<sup>1</sup> ‘does not necessarily imply *correction*.—it is only when discipline *fails* that correction becomes necessary. The infliction of punishment, if it show anything in relation to the system of discipline in a school, it is that the system is bad or ineffective. In nine cases out of every ten, punishment is resorted to as a *substitute* for discipline, rather than as a means of sustaining it.’ If the government of a school is unvarying and correct, severity will very seldom be required; and if, when required, the punish-

<sup>1</sup> Rep. of Nat. Educ. Ireland, vol. for 1855; Mr. Keenan's Gen. Rep.

ment is inflicted more in sorrow than in anger, and with the necessary solemnity, the necessity for it will soon disappear. Children should not be punished when the wrong was not intentional, otherwise they would soon see no difference between voluntary and involuntary acts. Their sense of justice would be blunted, and their faith in correctness of principle would be destroyed.

**Should be by the principal teacher.** The chastisement of a child should in all cases be inflicted by the *principal* teacher. When a pupil misbehaves, the duty of an assistant teacher is simply to represent the misconduct to the principal teacher, on no account taking on himself the function of measuring or inflicting the punishment, or in any manner abusing or ill-treating the offending child.

**Rewards.** As children must be reprimanded and otherwise punished for faults, so ought they also to be rewarded for good actions, not as a motive for the performance of them, but as a means of marking how highly good actions are valued. Remember, however, that a frequent recourse either to rewards or punishments deadens their effects. A child who is frequently subjected to punishment will, in the end, become hardened and callous; and he who is always receiving rewards will be always expecting them. He will grow so accustomed to these stimulants that he will soon be unable or unwilling to act without them. Praise and blame are species of rewards and punishments, and, therefore, they also must be administered sparingly. A child may be called good or bad, pleasing or disagreeable, until he will listen to either character with indifference.

**Value of discipline.** By the steady and temperate enforcement of discipline, some of the greatest of the benefits of education are produced. The habits of regularity and discipline which pupils acquire in a well-governed school, are even more valuable than their literary advancement. Reading may lead to mischief, knowledge may be abused, skill may be misdirected, but the fruits of early obedience, regularity, and discipline are everlasting and ever beneficial.

**Constant employment a good means of discipline.** Much of the failings of discipline and order in a school would be removed were the children kept constantly employed: it is the best way to prevent talking, confusion, restlessness, mischief, and bad habits. They should, therefore, never be allowed to idle, yet never be allowed to grow weary by detaining them too long at one subject. This is difficult. Proper organisation is the basis of success, but it is the master's *eye* which should control the school. It should be everywhere: the pupils should feel its influence continually, and be convinced that they cannot possibly idle or talk without

discovery. It is in this that the whole secret lies. The teacher should be able not only to keep up the attention of the particular class to which he is giving instruction, but should at the same time possess an accurate perception of everything that is going on around him. If he would have the hearty co-operation of his children, pupil-teachers or monitors, he must impress them strongly with the idea that he can do this, and that because he possesses the power he can, at any time, appreciate the exertions they are making. To do this effectually requires a keen eye and a master mind; to accomplish it in its fullest extent is what few attain to, and many are prevented from attempting it owing to the defective organisation of their schools.

**14. Neatness and cleanliness closely connected with good order.** These are very intimately connected with good order and discipline. Whatever value they may possess in other cases, they are beyond price when exercising their influence over a school. Children living for many hours of the day under the immediate influence of neatness and cleanliness, become gradually and unconsciously affected by them. Their good qualities become a part of their very nature, and are as certain in their action afterwards as the mental culture they receive. Dr. Newell says: 'Spelling, reading, writing, must be taught to each succeeding generation, and to every individual of it, but the inculcation of habits of cleanliness and decency carries with it an *hereditary* morality, if I may so speak, that descends from parent to child, and whose influence is felt by succeeding generations.' Children who have acquired in school orderly and cleanly habits will, when they become parents, be almost certain to impart these virtues to their children by precept and example, and these in their turn will do the same to the next generation. A filthy, disorderly, irregular school will form habits just as lasting as the habits of neatness and tidiness. It is difficult, therefore, to say how much harm is in reality done by the influence of such a school, or how much good by one whose aspect, general appearance, and arrangements are what they ought to be.

**Fourfold consideration of this subject.** We may consider this subject under four heads: (1) as to the cleanliness and neatness of the teacher's own person and dress; (2) as to the children; (3) as to the school-room; and (4) as to the school-grounds.

(1) **In reference to teacher.** As the master is placed so very much above his children, he is naturally accepted by them as a proper model for imitation. They imitate his looks and gesture, his dress and manners, and are negligent or attentive just as he is himself. If he come to school unclean or untidy, the chances are that they will act in the same way. Besides, a dirty, slovenly man

cannot enforce cleanliness and neatness; he cannot preach these virtues any more than a drunkard can enforce or preach temperance, except, indeed, that he inculcates them by holding himself up as an example of the injurious effect of their neglect.

**Examples of carelessness on masters' part.** In my experience of teachers, I have had frequent occasion to call their attention to their personal appearance. I have met men with shoes unbrushed apparently for some days—with trousers upon which the traces of many a muddy walk still remained visible; with coats out at elbows, and waistcoats unbuttoned and slovenly; in fact, with a dirty dress untidily put on: their faces unshaved—I shall not say unwashed—with hair either uncombed or carelessly arranged, and in all other ways so little different from the peasants whom they taught, that it required some difficulty to say who was the *educator* and who the *educated*. For these men I will quote what Addison has written upon cleanliness. He says: 'It is a mark of *politeness*, for it is universally agreed upon, that no one unadorned with this virtue can go into company without giving manifest offence. The different nations of the world are as much distinguished by their cleanliness as by their arts and sciences. The more they are advanced in civilisation, the more they consult this part of politeness; secondly, cleanliness may be said to be the foster-mother of affection. Beauty commonly produces love, but cleanliness preserves it. Age itself is not unamiable while it is preserved clean and unsullied. I might further observe, that as cleanliness renders us agreeable to others, it makes us easy to ourselves; that it is an excellent preservative of health, and that several vices, destructive both to body and mind, are inconsistent with the habit of it. In the third place, it bears a great analogy with purity of mind, and naturally inspires refined sentiments and passions. We find from experience that through the prevalence of custom the most vicious actions lose their horror by being made familiar to us. On the contrary, those who live in the neighbourhood of good examples fly from the first appearance of what is shocking, and thus pure and unsullied thoughts are naturally suggested to the mind by those objects that perpetually encompass us, when they are beautiful and elegant in their kind.'

He, therefore, who is unclean, is deficient in politeness, cannot enter society without offence, is uncivilised, loses the affection of his friends, and his own self-respect, injures his health, and, insensibly, contracts vices injurious to both body and mind. A teacher, therefore, habitually so, is in my opinion unfitted for his office, even if he had all the learning of Newton and all the 'didactic' art of Pestalozzi.

**Dress of teacher.** The income of the teacher prevents his



dressing expensively, but certainly it does not prevent his dressing neatly and tastefully. The clothes may not be good, but they can be well brushed and mended. Many teachers have an idea that anything will do for the school, even what they would be ashamed to wear in other places; but this is very incorrect. The school dress should be clean and neat, and such as will not lower him in his own opinion or in the opinion of his visitors or children. One of the maxims of dressing is, that the apparel must possess a certain degree of suitability; that is, it must be adapted to the circumstances of the wearer—to his profession and his income. A man who holds a humble position is not expected to dress richly; and no man who holds an important office, and respects himself, ought to dress lightly or rakishly. The teacher is generally compared with the clergyman, and his dress should be in keeping with this estimate of his character. It should not be gaudy, flimsy, extravagant, or vain; his head-dress should be plain, not ultra-fashionable, and worn without affectation or foppery. Dress is a key to character; and no one respects those who dress unsuitably.

**(2) In reference to the children.** In reference to the children themselves, cleanliness and neatness are of the greatest importance. These virtues in the master are valuable, chiefly from his serving, as I have said, as a model; but it is the children themselves whom we wish to influence. It is exceedingly difficult to make them attend properly to personal cleanliness. They are too young to value or feel its influence upon the health, and too thoughtless to understand or care for the favourable impression it makes upon those with whom they associate.

The history of many schools throughout the country abundantly proves that it is possible, however, to create in children a proper regard for neatness and cleanliness, and that they can be made to exhibit these in their own persons, even when dwelling, as many of them do, in smoky, unhealthy-looking cabins, and occupied in the rough work at which the children of peasants are so frequently engaged. All that is necessary is a proper appreciation exhibited by the master himself of the beauty and value of cleanliness, and a determination to have it carried out in his school as far as practicable. When children are not clean and neat in school, the teacher is chiefly to blame. He will be found either not to value these virtues or not to enforce them. I have often thought, when I have met with school-boys with dirty hands and faces, with hair uncut and uncombed, and with unbrushed clothes, how extremely little their teacher regarded their welfare. It is only from supposing an indifference to the true interests of his pupils that we can at all account for this neglect, for every man is fully aware of the

importance of neatness and personal cleanliness; and it has always been a question with me whether one so indifferent is not wholly unfitted for his office.

**Requires a constant watchfulness.** Cleanliness will not be produced by a mere enunciation of its advantages—for children, as I said before, cannot appreciate the force of such an argument—nor will it be produced by general directions to come clean to school. There must be, *in addition to these*, a constant watchfulness to detect and remove every individual instance of neglect. Five minutes are supposed in most cases to be set specially apart for this purpose, before the business of the day begins; but in country schools, and indeed in the majority of town schools, this arrangement is nugatory, for the simple reason that, owing to the extreme irregularity of attendance, at least one half of the pupils, are thus passed over, and that half the very portion which most requires supervision, from being generally detained at some manual labour. At whatever time the pupils come before the teacher, in the class, in the desks, in the gallery—and all ought to come before him daily—his eye should be always searching for breaches of cleanliness and neatness, and, when detected, he should at once endeavour to remove them, and take such steps as would prevent a recurrence of the faults. Children, in fact, will be clean only from habit; and the habit of cleanliness can only be formed by repeated admonitions, *and by never permitting* an instance of its neglect to pass unnoticed and unreprieved.

(3) **In reference to the school-room.** Cleanliness in the school-house is almost as essential as cleanliness in the person of the teacher and his children; but happily it is more easily procured. All that is required is a little exertion and some taste. No lumber should be permitted to lie in the apartment; no broken and useless slates, no torn and soiled papers, no scraps of anything should be allowed to remain one moment longer than they could conveniently be removed. Everything, in fact, ought to be removed from the school except what is absolutely necessary for the business of each day.

**Sweeping and dusting.** The room should be swept each evening, and dusted each morning. To dust a room just after sweeping it, is useless. Time should be allowed for the settling down of the dust. Before sweeping the floor, if very dry, it ought to be sprinkled with water, the maps rolled up, and all tablets, likely to be injured either turned, taken down, covered, or otherwise protected. All books, copybooks, &c. should also be previously put into their proper places. In dusting the school next morning, never omit to remove the dust from the tablets, maps, charts, &c., and from the desks, forms, windows, and the

other woodwork of the school. Proper cloths should be kept for this purpose. Be careful also to remove all cobwebs, to clean the windows, and, when occasion requires it, to have the floor thoroughly washed out.

**Spitting and throwing ink on the floor.** The filthy habits that some children have of spitting on the floor, or of throwing the ink on it when they take too much in their pens, should be fully repressed. Such habits are serious breaches of good manners; and one at least of them would entirely unfit them for any but American society. From the other the teachers themselves are not entirely free. On the days of their examination the boards of the floor are, near some of them, completely dotted over with spots of ink thrown out of the pen there, *instead of back again into the bottle*. Both habits are offensive. They are produced, as all habits are, by a continuous repetition of the same acts, and must be put down early, or they cannot be put down at all. Before dusting the room, the fire should be lighted, and the windows and door opened, in order that an abundant supply of pure air may circulate through the room.

(4) **In reference to premises.** Do not permit the dust to lie near the door. All ashes, dust, and refuse should be carefully carried out of sight; for neatness and cleanliness should be quite as characteristic of the grounds as of the school itself. These grounds should not be allowed to go out of order. If not cultivated, they should be kept dry and clean, and in serviceable condition. Broken stones covered with small gravel or sand form an excellent yard. Those portions not used for a playground, or for walks, should be dug up and planted with flowers and shrubs. The primrose, the cowslip, the wall-flower, the variegated daisy, convolvulus, lupin, &c., are common, and easily procured, and yet pretty. The ordinary shrubs are also very inexpensive. Some few of these and creeping plants should be seen either against the walls or in the grounds of every primary school. How very rarely anything of this kind is seen. The expense is quoted as the great stumbling-block; but I agree with Mr. Porter when he says<sup>1</sup> that 'the plea of expense is only an excuse for avoiding a little labour and attention. The real cause is a want of taste, absence of habits of neatness and order, the results of early education and associations. The eye which from youth up has been accustomed to the broken and unwashed window feels no repugnance at the sight. The bare walls, unadorned by rose-tree or creeping-plant; the premises untidy, and unrelieved by a flower or a shrub, are familiar objects, and therefore excite no disagree-

<sup>1</sup> Rep. Com. Nat. Educ. Ireland, vol. for 1859; Mr. Porter's Rep.

able associations. "It is hardly worth while; they will be as bad in a week or two"—a reply once made to me when requesting to have the windows washed—is merely the expression of a sentiment which influences a large number of the teachers.'

**Glazing.** In connection with the subject of cleanliness, I may add a few words upon the three important items—glazing, painting, and whitewashing.

When panes are broken, the appearance of the house is very objectionable, even when satisfactory in other respects. To have the windows, therefore, fully glazed is essentially necessary; but to secure this object the teacher must, now and then, put in a pane for himself. In towns and villages there are tradesmen who can glaze: even then, however, it will be cheaper to do it oneself; but in country places no such person is to be had, and, if one is sent for, the expense is often serious, especially when only one or two panes are required. It may happen, also, that the man cannot always be had, or be found sufficiently willing to undertake a trifling job, when at a distance from his home. To be unable to put in a pane entails the following inconveniences: expense, loss of time, a character for untidiness and neglect; censure for this neglect, a risk of the master and children catching colds, and a risk of becoming accustomed to defects.

The last is a matter of some importance, as the eye readily gets accustomed to irregularities, and ceases to notice them at all. No time should be lost in putting in a pane when required, especially in the schools of Ireland, a country where the broken windows of the peasants' homes are patched with paper or cloth, or the vacancies filled up with an old hat, a slate, or a board, and where, therefore, the necessity for a good example is so strong. If the boys saw how easy it is to put in a pane of glass, and saw also that the master was not above this business when necessity required him to perform it, they would, as an inevitable consequence, readily do likewise in their own houses.

**How to do it.** Glazing does not require any lengthened apprenticeship. It requires a knowledge of the method, and a little handiness in bringing that method into practice, and these can be learned after a few trials. Putty is made from 'boiled oil,' thickened with whiting, and is so easily made that no teacher ought to be without it. It can be bought at a very trifling cost. Panes of glass to suit the compartments of any frame can be had at a small cost also; and teachers, when they come to town, should purchase what would do for a year, as buying them in large quantities cheapens each pane considerably. The cost should not be more than from three to four shillings, and very rarely indeed will it be so much. To put in the pane: *First*, Remove very

carefully all the old glass and putty, leaving the wood clear and comparatively smooth and clean. This can be done by the knife which glaziers use (to be procured for a few pence), or by an oyster knife, or old chisel. *Secondly.* Place a *thin* coating of putty round the groove of the window where the pane is to lie. *Thirdly.* Press the glass firmly against this, so as to embed it in it, and then put on the outside as much putty as will hold the pane firmly in. Be guided in this by the appearance of those glazed by the proper tradesman. *Fourthly.* On the next day, but not till then, when the putty is set, the whole is to be made water and air tight. A little practice soon renders the thing exceedingly easy.

**Considered in reference to the manager.** It may be said, however, that it is not the business of the teacher to keep the windows in repair, but of the manager through local aid. There is no doubt but that it is his business, and that of the locality, but there are so many who neglect their duty in this respect that the teacher must do it, or else the school will fail, and the inconvenience will be most felt by the teacher. It is a bad thing, however, to be continually calling on the aid of the manager for trifles. It is better to do those small things oneself, and use the manager's aid when his assistance would be of real value. On this subject I shall quote what Mr. Irvin says. This gentleman is now an inspector, but he was formerly for many years a zealous teacher, and, as he knows thoroughly the difficulties under which the teaching body labour, it is not likely that he would write anything against their interests, or require of them anything beyond their abilities. He says: 'A good teacher gives his manager little trouble; but there are many who expect everything to be done for them—men who would not put a nail in the latch of the door, until the manager would see it. I have found teachers at broken windows in the winter season, with the cold wind blowing about them, and over the heads of the children—teacher obliged to wear hat or cap, and children shivering and coughing—thus exposed, day after day, to the dangerous influences of such draughts, thoughtless of the effects, waiting till the manager might come and get a pane or two put in, the whole expense of which would not be over sixpence. I found fault with such, and advised them to put to their own hands, and manage those trifling matters themselves.'

I know several schools suffering much from this defect. The teacher thinks the manager should glaze the windows, the manager thinks the landlord should do it; and as the landlord refuses, and looks upon giving the school at all as a compliment, the houses are rarely fit to be seen. I have given invariably to these teachers the advice that Mr. Irvin gives, 'to put to their own hands, and manage those little matters themselves.' The man who is always

saying, 'It is not my duty to do this, or that,' is very worthless as a public servant. He who merely does his duty may be paid for his services, but he can never expect to gain the friendship and esteem of his employers. A man should be always seeking for opportunities to exert himself, and make himself more useful. It is by works of supererogation that we advance.

**Painting.** The woodwork, when not stained, should always be painted. The tablet rails ought to be painted black, as this colour forms a good contrast with the white walls. Red, green, or blue look, however, very well, especially green and blue. The desks, presses, &c. are generally painted brown. Just as in glazing, the teacher ought to do this himself, unless when regularly done for him. The expense is very little when dry colours are purchased, and when the teacher can mix the paints himself. In the foot note,<sup>1</sup> I give recipes for the mixing of those most commonly met with. To put on colours is very easy. Every teacher should have a supply of brushes and paint constantly on hand, and be always touching up a place here and there, where he thinks an improvement in the appearance of the house might be thus effected. The woodwork of the windows ought to be white. When I find a man who thus helps himself, I am always more anxious to reward him than even the man who would lay out five or six pounds in paying regular tradesmen. I can have more faith in the continuance of his exertions, and I prize highly the example of self-reliance thus set before his children.

**Whitewashing.** But little need be said upon this point. The more frequently it is done, the better the schools look, and the more wholesome they are; for lime not only cleanses, but purifies.

<sup>1</sup> The following recipes may be found of advantage:

**Black paint:** Lamp black burnt on an iron until it quits smoking (about half an hour), thoroughly mixed with boiled oil (this is done with a knife on a plate) to the consistency of putty. Thin this at pleasure with oil and turpentine.

**Green paint:** Take dry green paint ground in the same way as above, but use turpentine instead of oil.

**Stone colour:** Umber and white lead. Thoroughly burn the umber (about half an hour or more on an iron plate will be sufficient), grind it well with boiled oil. Mix with this the white lead previously mingled with oil. If it be too dark, put in white lead; if too light, put in umber.

**Dark brown:** Umber dried, and

mixed with oil.

**White paint:** White lead and turpentine (oil darkens too much).

**Red paint** is procured dry. Grind with oil.

**Blue paint:** Prussian blue, ground with oil, and then thinned.

**Venetian red:** Venetian red, ground in oil.

**Yellow:** Chrome yellow. Mix with turpentine.

**Mahogany colour:** Ground of red. When dry, rub well with emery or glass paper. Give a second coat of red (finely prepared); polish with paper as before. Third coat of same kind, and shade with rose pink, using the ordinary graining brush.

These colours are very inexpensive, and will be found to answer all ordinary purposes,

The lime should be mixed with glue to make it adhere better, and thus last longer, and be less liable to soil the clothes of the children. An unwhitewashed house not only looks gloomy, and impresses a person unfavourably, but in it the charts, maps, &c. are generally disfigured and injured. In whitewashing, avoid dirtying the woodwork inside, or the creeping plants outside. Both should be carefully covered during the time.

**15. Attendance, irregular and unpunctual.** The attendance of the children is marked by two serious faults: it is *irregular* from day to day, and it is *impunctual* in the mornings. Both these retard the progress of the school, create confusion in the arrangements of the classes, and both tend, when once allowed in the school, to reproduce themselves. The masters have but little direct influence over the first, though there are several steps which they might take which would prove more or less effectual.

**Remedies.** The most important of these consists in *making the schools popular*. The statistics of organised schools have clearly proved that the more valuable the school is, the more regular will the attendance be. In many cases parents send their children to school at a serious inconvenience and loss to themselves, and this they will not do unless they really value the kind of education which is given in the school. Another remedy, based on this, is, *exclusion of all who attend badly*. But in very few cases will the master find himself so popular, or have so complete a monopoly of the education of the district, as to make so extreme a measure judicious. When the regulations are too strict, the parents are displeased, even when they feel that eventually good will arise. *The system of payments* has a great deal to do with the character of the attendance. If the pupils pay weekly, or do not pay at all, the attendance is almost certain to be bad.

**Opinions showing that the system of payments influences attendance.** As this statement can only be proved satisfactorily by the actual working of schools, I will quote here the following authorities:—Mr. Fletcher says:<sup>1</sup> ‘If a boy be kept at home for a day or two at the beginning of the week, the mere feeling to have value for their money induces the parents to keep the children at home a day or two longer rather than pay the pence for the broken week.’ Mr. Bellairs says:<sup>2</sup> ‘Among the different causes which have made the poor indifferent to education, there has probably been none more effective than that which has reduced to its lowest minimum the school payments of their children.’ Dr. Woodford says:<sup>3</sup> ‘I have reason to think that the system of weekly payments, and which is naturally followed by an understanding of

<sup>1</sup> Minutes of Council, 1846–7, vol. ii. p. 14.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 1852, p. 486.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 1854, p. 708.

weekly engagement, is one great source of irregular attendance.' 'I have,' he adds, 'accumulated evidence of the fact, mentioned in former reports, that when a child is kept at home in the beginning of the week, from whatever cause, he is not sent to school till next Monday, because some part of the penny would be paid without its corresponding value in time, the incomparably greater loss to the child, especially in habit, being entirely lost sight of.' Mr. Morrell lays it down as the result of his experience,<sup>1</sup> (1) that gratuitous instruction seems to fail; (2) that in some cases an increased rate of payment seems to augment the attendance, especially if accompanied by superior instruction. The remedy is in the hands of the managers and teachers. The payments should be made *quarterly in advance, no allowance being made for absent time.*

**Rates should be in accordance with the circumstances of the people.** The system of paying by what is learnt is now almost exclusively condemned, and is rarely practised except in very inferior or very exceptional schools. Mr. Moseley says:<sup>2</sup> 'It is far the best arrangement, and one which, wherever I have known it to be tried, has worked well, to give all the children equal advantages of instruction, but to fix the scale of payments according to the stations in life of the parents. The principle which affixes an additional payment for every additional subject taught, offers to the master a temptation to neglect the children who pay him least, for those who pay him most; and it is a system by which a child who learns one subject is deprived of that assistance in learning it which he might derive from a knowledge of others.' Mr. Mitchell says:<sup>3</sup> 'Payments for extras, as geography, writing, &c., are objectionable. Each child should be taught all that his capacities fit him for.' Mr. Kennedy calls this system,<sup>4</sup> 'a most pernicious system in schools for the poor.'

<sup>1</sup> Min. of Council, 1859, p. 220.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 1847, p. 387.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 1848, vol. i. p. 318.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. 1848-9, vol. ii. p. 177.

Mr. Jones, in his Report for 1849 (Min. of Council, vol. ii. p. 196), gives the following as what is adopted in a poor parish of Anglesey:—

Parents assessed to the poor rates at 50*l.* or upwards, pay—

For 1 child, 5*s.* per quarter.

For 2 children, 4*s.* each, do.

All above 2 children, 2*s.* 6*d.* each, do.

Assessed to 30*l.* and under 50*l.*—

For 1 child, 4*s.* per quarter.

For 2 children, 3*s.* each, do.

All above 2 children, 2*s.* each, do.

Assessed (or rented) to 10*l.* and under 30*l.* (tradesmen)—

For 1 child, 3*s.* per quarter.

For 2 children, 2*s.* 6*d.* each, do.

All above 2 children, 1*s.* 6*d.* ditto.

Assessed under 10*l.*—

For 1 child, 1*s.* 6*d.* per quarter.

For 2 children, 1*s.* each, do.

All above 2 children, 6*d.* each, do.

If day labourers and others under 5*l.* a further reduction is made according to circumstances.

A day or two before the coming quarter, tickets are issued and paid for according to the above scale.

The more destitute are supplied with money to buy tickets. And this in a parish where the labourers



The system of paying according to the circumstances of the parents, and not according to what the children learn, is adopted in all our model schools, and found to be a complete success.

**Parents of children who are irregular should be written or spoken to.** Another course to improve the attendance is to write or speak to the parents on the subject. Speaking is better whenever it can be done, but writing is a good substitute. There should be a printed form to be filled up when the absence or irregularity of any child is very marked. 'A master who makes a point of doing this assures me that the gradual difference in the character of the notes which the parents return is most remarkable. At first their notes are not only badly spelt and expressed, but often *rude and discourteous*. After a time there is a marked improvement in them; they gradually become both creditable in style and civil in tone.'<sup>1</sup>

There are various other means which, although they will be more or less incomplete, will prove, if seriously attempted and faithfully carried out, of considerable benefit. In fact, there is no remedy wholly effectual, but none without some advantage attending it.

**Punctuality.** With regard to the want of punctuality, any remedy which acts upon the irregularity just treated of will also act more or less fully upon this; but, in addition, the teacher may make the attendance a great deal more punctual than it now is, (1) by being punctual himself, and (2) by going on with the business exactly at the moment marked on the time table of the school.

(1) In the first place, he should not appear to give countenance by his own deficiencies to the shortcomings of his children; and to make his admonitions thoroughly of use, he should himself practise what he inculcates. The Commissioners of National Education in Ireland oblige the teachers to be in attendance half an hour before the time marked on the time table for the commencement of the day's business; and in several schools in England the managers carry out this rule also. It enables the teachers to prepare fully for the arrival of their scholars, and to begin the duty of teaching without loss of time. When parents see that the teachers are thus punctual, they generally manage to make their children attend punctually also.

(2) In the second place, I find that in most schools, when pupils come an hour or an hour and a half late, they are allowed to be gi

at the best season do not receive more than 8s. weekly.

See also Min. of Council, 1851-2, p. 600; 1856-7, p. 620, Report of

Education Commissioners, 1861, vol. ii. p. 188.

<sup>1</sup> Minutes of Council, 1859-60, p. 190,

at the beginning of the day's duty, exactly as if they had been in at the proper time. This, of course, prevents all order—all adherence to the *time table*, all economy of the master's time—interferes with the attention which he should pay to other children and is, moreover, a *premium upon irregularity*. If children who thus attend receive all the lessons they would otherwise have received, what is to induce them to attend earlier? And, again, if pupils who attend punctually are obliged to sit, as they often are, until their class-fellows arrive, and thus receive no more benefit than those who come late, is it likely that they will continue to attend so satisfactorily? Decidedly not. The only course is to go on with the duty, no matter how many or how few are punctual, and let those who come late lose the benefit of the lessons passed over. By this means many will be induced to attend regularly who otherwise would not exert themselves to do so.

**Appeal to the children themselves.** In addition to the means already stated, the teachers will sometimes be very successful if they directly appeal to the scholars themselves. This will be especially the case if their children look up to them with respect and confidence. When children are treated rationally, it is well known to those who have much dealings with them, that they often take a pleasure in co-operating in any task. The confidence reposed in them, and the tacit flattery that they are worthy of that confidence, are powerful stimulants to exertion, and will often succeed when all other remedies have failed. Children are very grateful; and gratitude will induce them to accomplish much. The grown boys may be the first convinced, and their example will aid in convincing the others. Parents, moreover, not only like to be consulted themselves, but they like their little children to do from kindly motives whatever it is right for them to do.

**Influence of parents not sought sufficiently by teachers.** The influence of parents is one of the agencies for their own good, and for the well-being and advancement of their schools, which teachers too frequently overlook. This is partly the result of Government aid, which, by rendering the teachers to a certain extent independent of the good-will of the people, has lessened the intimate connection which ought to exist between them and the parents of the children. The masters neglect to solicit the influence of the parents, and the parents, in their turn, refuse to use this influence either for the teachers' good or for the good of the schools. Those two agencies, which ought naturally to co-operate in the education of the children, thus remain at variance. But if the teachers will only consider that there are three parties concerned in the success of every school—*themselves, the parents, and the children*—and that the institution can never attain to its highest

point of excellence without the joint and willing aid of all, they will see that they are acting not only wrongly, but foolishly, in neglecting to seek the good-will and assistance of the people and the children—of the children probably even more than of the people, for it is upon them that all agencies must ultimately act. The influence of the parent and the influence of the master are nothing in themselves, but only as they are capable of producing activity, zeal, and steadiness in the pupils. If a master act by himself in trying to secure these, neglecting the aid of the parents, he employs the least valuable means of success. There can be no agency so potent as the natural influence of the father and mother, and no teacher ought to neglect to cultivate it. Even for his own sake, he ought not to do so; for the better he is liked the better he will be paid, and the more there will be to pay him. The confidence of the people, which can never be thoroughly secured except by personal intercourse, invariably increases the attendance, and induces them to pay more regularly and more liberally.<sup>1</sup>

**Advantage of personal intercourse with parents.** This intercourse, in a friendly spirit, tends also to remove many of the difficulties under which teachers sometimes labour, from the undue interference of parents, in the management of the schools. I am aware that parents are sometimes exceedingly unreasonable, and that it is difficult, even with the best management, to deal satisfactorily with their whims and fancies; but I am also aware that good teachers seldom or never complain of this matter. They appear to be either wholly free from the annoyance, or to be able to overcome objections and difficulties without much trouble. Whenever I hear much stress laid upon the objections of the parents, I am always inclined to doubt the efficiency of the schools, and, for the most part, I find that I am correct. There is a *general* deficiency in such schools; and as the parents falsely attribute this to the attention given to extra subjects—as grammar, geography, history, &c.—to the exclusion of the more important subjects of

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Sheridan, writing upon this subject in his Report for 1859, says, 'Teachers can do a good deal towards improving their own position by labouring steadily and perseveringly to render their schools more efficient, and by manifesting a zealous interest in the progress of their pupils, and in this way increasing their own influence with the parents. When a pupil has been irregular in attendance, or neglects to prepare his tasks properly at home, how very rarely does the national teacher take the trouble to call upon his parents, and speak

in a friendly manner to them on the subject. And yet it were well worth his while to do so (besides being his duty); for this is one of the main causes of the popularity of the "hedge" schoolmaster, who never loses an opportunity of manifesting to the parents the interest he feels in the progress of their children; and this, too, is doubtless the reason why parents who grudge a halfpenny or a penny a week to the national teacher willingly pay threepence or fourpence to the "hedge" schoolmaster.'

the school-course, they begin by finding fault, and end by objecting to the study of all except reading, writing, and arithmetic; and, in some cases, even of one or two of these. Had the defects never existed which first aroused the attention of the parents, the teachers would have been left undisturbed in the management of their schools.

**How to meet their objections.** When the schools are efficient, most of the difficulties will be overcome by a little address on the teacher's part; but where the parents insist upon what they have no right to get, there is but the one course. Their children must be refused admittance: the common good requires such a course. 'The function of the parent is to select a good school for his child; but once the child has been delivered over to the charge of the teacher, the parent's directing or controlling power ceases. I do not mean to deny to the parent an *interest* in the regulations of the school; but I do mean to deny him all power of *interference*. We never hear of a parent directing the professor of a university as to the portion of the college course which he desires his child to study, and a stronger reason holds for the parents of children attending elementary schools to abstain from all interference with the duties of the teachers, on account of their greater ignorance, and therefore greater inability to make a wise suggestion, or to have any control at all in the technical part of education. There is a certain minimum course of secular knowledge which every child that enters an elementary school should be *compelled* to learn, over which, and all the school arrangements connected with which, the parent should have no control.'<sup>1</sup>

**Refusal the best of all.** A firm, but polite, refusal where parents go to extremes, is the only true course. It will even be the best means of raising the teacher himself in the estimation of those whom he apparently thus disobliges; for as the parents, if wrong, will gradually come to see their error, they will be certain to respect him who maintained the right, even at a sacrifice. In some cases, teachers of a yielding disposition give way to this undue pressure. Being afraid to oppose, where they know that opposition will produce trouble and pecuniary loss, they bend to the storm, and, as a natural result, the schools become disorganised and confused, and retrograde daily. In the end, the masters are blamed by all; even by the very persons they sought to please. They succeed in pleasing nobody, and lose their professional character into the bargain.

**Another fault.** Another fault, something akin to this, is where the masters do not indeed give up the teaching of the sub-

<sup>1</sup> Rep. Nat. Educ. Com. 1859; Mr. Keenan's Rep.

ject to which the parents object, but devote to them much or little time in proportion to the opinions which the most influential entertain of them. This also is an undue yielding to the interference of the people, and should be firmly opposed. The masters should weigh well the relative importance of each subject, being guided in this a good deal by the circumstances of the localities, and then devote to each the exact time they think correct.

**Exceptional cases.** There will, however, occasionally arise a few exceptional cases, no matter how well the general rule has been studied. It is in dealing with these that the teacher shows his tact and ability. It is by judiciously varying the general rules, when no principle is involved, to suit peculiarities daily arising, that schools are made popular.

**16. Importance of the teacher's office.** There is scarcely any office under the Government which tends more directly to produce the social well-being of the people than that of the teacher. A good school prevents crime, and thereby adds to the value and security of property, and forms beneficially the manners and character of the people. A teacher has it in his power to plant sedition and discord, to sow treason and corruption, irreligion and immorality, and, frequently, to unite the people together for evil; or he may cultivate allegiance to the sovereign, obedience to God, and respect for our fellow-man; and he who has so much in his power for good or evil, and chooses the right course, is deserving of the highest respect of his fellow-citizens—respect in proportion to the power he possesses without abusing it. 'But the amount of honour and emolument actually attached to their calling depends, as is the case with other callings, not upon its intrinsic importance, but upon the feelings with which it is regarded by society at large. If not taught to view the matter in this light, there will always be a considerable risk that the efforts of the Training College authorities to impress the students with a sense of their responsibility, and the fact that the course of instruction is carried on by the stimulus of literary examinations, may produce a combination of zeal—half professional, and half religious—with personal ambition which can lead only to disappointment and discontent. The occupation of an elementary schoolmaster is not well fitted for a young man of an adventurous, stirring, or ambitious character, and it is rather a misfortune than otherwise, when persons of that temper of mind are led into it by the prospect which its earlier stages appear to afford of rising in the world socially as well as intellectually. It is a life which requires a quiet even temper, patience, sympathy, fondness for children, and habitual cheerfulness. It wants rather good sense and quiet intelligence than a very inquisitive mind or very brilliant talents, and the prospects which it affords appear

well calculated to attract the class of persons best fitted for it. A schoolmaster is sure of a good income (in England), a great deal of leisure, and moderate labour as long as his health lasts. If his prospects are not so extensive as in some other walks of life, they are more sure. He is never out of work. He is affected only casually and indirectly by the vicissitudes of trade, and he fills a position which, if not socially all that he could wish, is universally recognised as respectable and useful.' <sup>1</sup>

A great deal of the respect given to his office depends upon the teacher himself. All persons acquainted with the habits of the poor, know that they respect persons rather than systems. They value the teacher and not his teaching, or rather they confer upon his office the respect they have for the man. Teachers, therefore, should live uprightly and honourably, so as to deserve and gain the good-will of those amongst whom they are placed.

<sup>1</sup> Report of Education Commissioners, 1861-2, vol. i. p. 162.



## APPENDIX.

---

### ON MUSIC.

THE PRACTICE of Vocal Music, so humanising in its effect, is, I am sorry to say, very much neglected in the majority of National Schools. It must be allowed, however, that it is not always possible to have music properly taught, or indeed taught at all, in such schools. A man may be an excellent teacher of every other subject of the school course, and yet not have the slightest ear for music; and in this case it would be useless for him to attempt to teach what he could not have possibly learnt himself; but where there is ordinary musical ability sufficient to enable a teacher to learn 'Wilhem's system' as adapted by Hullah for the use of schools, he should be encouraged to study it earnestly, in order that he may be able to give his children a good theoretical and practical knowledge of Vocal Music.

If closely followed out, there is no system of teaching singing more easily progressive or more successful than that explained in 'Hullah's Manual,' and I would advise a teacher to confine himself strictly to the lessons contained in it until the children are able to *sol-fa* with ease and quickness, read any simple piece in time *without* singing, and sing the common scale in different keys, both in *sol-fa*ing and *vocalising*, to the sound of A, which latter practice teaches the children to open their mouths sufficiently, a thing they seem very unwilling to do in country schools especially.

**The scale.** 'It is important that the teacher should render the study of the theory of music applicable alike to vocal and instrumental. He should begin by explaining the alphabet of music; making the children familiar with the Italian syllables, representing the names of the notes of the scale, as well as with the corresponding letters C, D, E, F, &c., which are generally used for these in the practice of instrumental music in Great Britain.

'Let the terms *scale* (from *scalum*), which is used in vocal music, and *gamut* (from *gamma*), which is used in instrumental music, be then explained, and shown to be equivalent in meaning. Repeated exercises on ascending and descending the scale should next be practised, until the



pupils can run up and down by the syllabic and alphabetical names, and also by vocalising the open vowel sound of A.

'At this stage of instruction I would not advise any reference to the distinctions of *tones* and *semitones*, as I deem the introduction of these terms more correct when the pupils are far enough advanced to understand what is meant by *sharps* and *flats*.

**Musical Notation.** 'Take a well-known melody—say the second part of "God save the Queen." Sing it over for the pupils, and enquire if they distinguish anything remarkable in its composition besides the difference in the sounds of the notes. You will get the answer, that in "Long to reign over us," the notes are sung *quicker* than in the previous part of the melody. Explain then that while difference of sound or pitch in musical notes is denoted by the *position* of the note on the *stave*, difference in duration is represented by the *shape* of the musical character. Begin to teach the table of time, by drawing, at the left-hand corner of a black-board, a round open note between two short vertical lines, which you term a *breve*, and explain that the breve is seldom used in modern notation, being confined to such as chant-music, where a number of syllables are consecutively sung to the same note. The longest note in ordinary use is the semi-breve or oval note, to which the nominal value of four seconds may be given. Each gradual alteration in shape of this note diminishes the length of the note one-half; thus, adding a stem to it forms the minim, valued for two beats; filling up the head of the minim forms the crotchet; adding a hook to the crotchet gives the quaver; and a second hook to the latter forms the semiquaver, &c. &c. The duration of the notes is thus in the order of 4, 2, 1,  $\frac{1}{2}$ , &c., and intermediate lengths are designated by means of the *dot*, which has the power of prolonging the length of the note to which it is affixed, by one-half of its previous length. The *tie* or *bind* is used instead of the dot when the last note of a bar is to be united to the first, if of the same name, in the following bar. It is also used in cases where the dot would be inapplicable, as in prolonging a minim by a quaver, &c. When the tie unites notes occupying different positions on the stave, it is then called a *slur*. The *rests* corresponding in name and duration to the different lengths of notes should be next drawn on the right side of the board, and exercises, in which they occur, should be frequently practised by the children. The pupils should now be made familiar with the application of the relative lengths of notes and rests by a systematic repetition of the exercises on common time, as given in Hullah's sheets.

**The different musical times.** 'Different kinds of musical time are expressed by figures arranged in the form of a fraction; and in explaining these to the class, care should be taken to suit the instruction to the capacities of the different pupils. The figure below the line in the fractional index representing the time, always shows the value of a semibreve expressed in a lower denomination; while the figure above the line shows the number of such divisions to be found in each bar. For instance, in time represented by the fraction  $\frac{6}{8}$ , the figure 8 shows

that the semibreve is divided into eight parts (quavers), and the 6 shows that six of these must be counted in each *bar*. This should be proved by actual estimation of the value of each bar in carefully selected pieces of music. The complement to the first bar when deficient, as so often occurs, will be found in the last bar of the passage.

**Reading in time.** 'While referring the teacher to the text-book for the different modes of beating time, I would direct his attention to the following suggestions:—

'When children are sitting in desks, beating time in the ordinary way creates too much noise, and is therefore incompatible with order and progress. To avoid this, make the pupils sit up straight, keep the right elbow close to the side, and make the necessary indications with the hand alone, using the wrist as fulcrum.

**Intervals.** 'The sheets on this division of the subject should be progressively employed, taking care always to vary the dry theory with occasional vocal exercises more interesting to the children, and requiring less mental exertion.

**Sharps and flats.** 'The scale of Do should be artistically drawn on a board, with the half distances accurately marked between the third and fourth (Mi and Fa) and the seventh and eighth (Si and Do).

'The wide distances on the figurative scale represent tones, and the narrow intervals semitones. Between each pair of notes, a tone, or wide distance, apart, a mid-note can be introduced which is known by either of two names—one derived from the name of the note immediately below, and the other from that above. The mid-note in such cases is termed the lower note *sharp*, or the upper *flat*. The *sharp* raises a note half a tone, the *flat* lowers it the same distance. Hence Do sharp and Re flat would be one and the same note; so also would be Sol sharp and La flat, &c. (The teacher who has studied acoustics is of course aware that this is not mathematically true.)

'As the semitone is the smallest interval represented in musical nomenclature, it will be evident that no new note can be introduced between the natural semitone-distances of the third and fourth, and seventh and eighth, of the model scale. The teacher will now best explain the constitution of the scale by a sketch on the black-board of an octave (from C to C) on the key-board of a pianoforte or harmonium. Most children have seen one or other, and must have noticed the black and white keys. The teacher can now explain from the foregoing why the black keys, or semitones, are ranged in twos and threes; no new note being admissible, on a fixed-toned instrument, between the constitutional semitones already existing, namely, between Mi and Fa (E and F) and Si and Do (B and C).

**Necessity for use of different scales.** 'Let the teacher next select any familiar melody, as "God save the Queen," and *pitching* it alternately too low and too high for the voice, require from the class the nature of the defects in either case, getting the class to sing it next in the most appropriate scale; in other words, *pitching* it so that the ex-

treble notes will be neither too high nor too low for the range of their voices. This will prepare the pupils for receiving and understanding the following statements:—

‘(1) That the note Do (C) has a *fixed* pitch, produced by vibrations, as denoted by the tuning fork in general use; and that the pitch of each remaining note of the scale is relatively fixed by the tonic.

‘(2) That the scale of Do may be accurately imitated by selecting any one of its notes with its legitimate pitch as first (or tonic), and continuing to its octave, introducing the semitones in their proper numerical positions. It will be found that the ear will instinctively guide the voice in making the necessary changes, and that with the preconceived idea of *singing a scale*, the apparent difficulty of introducing essential sharps and flats will be imperceptibly overcome.

‘(3) That pitching a piece of music (or raising it, as it is vulgarly termed) is merely selecting a scale, or settling on a tonic, in which, if the piece be sung, the extreme notes will be neither too high nor too low for the compass of the particular voice or instrument, or for the due effect of the music. Thus, “God save the Queen,” if sung in the natural scale, commencing on the ledger Do, would be found to be too low for musical effect; while if it were sung an octave higher, it would be beyond the range of ordinary voices. By taking La or Sol as tonic, the melody will be brought within the power of the voice.

‘(4) The numerical position that each note in a piece bears with respect to the tonic must be always the same, no matter in what scale it be written.

**Construction of Major Scales.** ‘The following method of explaining the formation of the different major scales will be comprehensible to the more advanced pupils: Draw out on a black-board the scale of Do which you designate *the model scale*. Let it be understood that a scale having similar intervals and making a similar impression on the ear, may be executed by selecting the fixed pitch of any note as tonic, and remembering to adhere to the rule as in the model scale, *that the semitones come between the 3rd and 4th and 7th and 8th intervals*. Begin by taking Sol, the fifth of the model scale, as tonic. Ask, what interval should be between the first and second of a major scale?—that is, between Sol and La in the case under consideration. Is there such an interval between these notes (Sol and La) in the model? There is: hence no change in these notes is requisite to the carrying out of the rule; and on continuing in this manner with each consecutive note, it will be found that the only change necessary, in order to bring the semitones between 3rd and 4th and 7th and 8th intervals of a scale commencing with Sol, would be to substitute *Fa sharp* for the Fa natural of the model, thus creating a tone between the 6th and 7th, and bringing Fa within a semitone of the 8th, Sol.

‘The scale of Sol has, therefore, one essential sharp in its signature. By constructing in the same way scales commencing on Re, on La, on Mi, &c., it will be seen that 2, 3, 4, &c., changes will be respectively required on the natural notes as in the model, to conform with the rule

in the new scale. The scales of Sol, Re, La, Mi (and so on by perfect fifths), have one, two, three, four, &c., sharps in their signature, and in each successive scale the new sharp introduced is always placed on the *seventh* or leading note of the scale; hence in the case of music written in a major scale having sharps in the signature, the key note is invariably that *immediately above the last sharp to the right hand*.

Again, selecting the note Fa as tonic, we have tones in the model between Fa and Sol, Sol and La, and La and Si; but as the interval between the latter (3 and 4) must be a semitone in the new scale, it is necessary to lower the note Si half a tone, which is the only change from the notes as in the model, necessary in this case, as the 3rd and 4th of the former become 7th and 8th of the latter. Hence there is one flat (Si flat) in the signature of the scale of Fa. In the same way, the scales of Si flat, Mi flat, La flat, &c., may be constructed having two, three, four, &c., flats in their signatures. From the foregoing it will be seen that the regular progression from Do of major scales containing sharps in signatures, is by *5ths ascending* or *4ths descending*, each successive key commencing on the *dominant* of the last; while in the case of flats, the progression is the converse, namely, by *4ths ascending*, or by *5ths descending*, each successive key commencing on the *sub-dominant* of the last.

**Minor Mode.** 'It will be found rather a difficult task to make children understand the difference between major and minor diatonic scales; but as such a large portion of our music is written in the latter, some at least of its peculiarities must be explained. It will be easy for the teacher to select as an example some familiar air—say, "The Valley lay Smiling before Me," "Silent O Moyle," or "John Anderson, my Jo"—which will convey to the pupils the peculiar mental effect produced by music in the minor mode. Every major scale has a corresponding or relative minor, consisting of the same notes, but whose key note is a sixth above the major tonic, or a minor third below. Thus, the relative minor of Do is La, of Re Si, &c. In singing *down* a minor scale and retaining the intervals of its relative major, the semitones will fall between the second and third and fifth and sixth. In *ascending* the scale, however, the *seventh* or leading note has to be *sharpened* (as in all ascending scales); the interval between the sixth and seventh would be thus greater than a tone, and as this is not allowable in a diatonic scale the *sixth* has also to be *sharpened*, to avoid the disagreeable interval. As major scales and their relative minors have the same signatures, the final note of a melody—which is generally the tonic of the scale in which it is written—will in most cases determine whether or not it be in the minor mode.

**Accidentals.** 'Besides the sharps and flats essential to a scale, and placed immediately after the clef, others, termed accidentals, are often introduced by way of ornament or effect, and are prefixed to the notes which they are intended to influence. The sharp sixth and seventh, peculiar to minor scales, are also marked in this way.

**Modulation.** 'Temporary transition or change of keys occurs even

in the most ordinary compositions: that is, one or more phrases in the course of the music elect a new tonic, different from that at the commencement. This change is always introduced by the employment of some new note characteristic of the scale into which the modulation is being made. When the transition is of a lengthy and important character, the signature is altered; but in ordinary cases, the notes peculiar to the modulation are indicated by accidentals. The transition is generally into scales governed by the fifth or fourth of the original scale.

**Transposition of Scales.** 'The pupils should be exercised in removing a piece of music from a higher to a lower pitch, and *vice versa*. This may be effected by placing after the clef the signature of the required scale, and raising or lowering each note in the original as many degrees as the tonic of the latter is higher or lower than that of the former, paying particular attention in cases where accidentals occur. In this way the semitones will continue in their respective places, and the other intervals will occupy the same relations with the tonic of the transposition that they held in the original. Thus, supposing that the range of "God save the Queen," as written in the scale of Si flat, was found to be too high for a certain voice by a tone and a half: then it would be necessary to transpose it into Sol, which is that interval lower than Si flat. This can be done by placing *one sharp*, the signature of the scale of Sol, after the clef, and lowering each note of the piece *three degrees* or a minor third. As tyros, in playing the flute or violin, generally confine themselves to the Keys of G and D, the process of transposition will be found useful in suiting to their capacities melodies written in other keys.'

**Expression.** When the children are able to sing correctly from the notes, they should be taught, if possible, to sing musically, a thing very much neglected. It is exceedingly disagreeable to hear the harsh tones of a singing class, in which the children scream with the full power of their voices, as if to make a noise were the only object to be attained.

This is a universal defect. The teacher should show them, by example, how to sing a note with clearness and fulness of tone, yet without harshness or screaming; and to do this it is necessary that the chest should be kept fully expanded by taking a full breath, both before commencing and at frequent intervals through the piece, these intervals to be determined by the teacher, and marked on the music by a  $\times$ , for the guidance of the class. It is scarcely necessary to mention, that breath should not be taken in the middle of a word or *bind*, or in singing any prolonged or dotted note. They should also be taught to *open their mouths*, and to sing out from the chest. I think a standing position would improve the singing very much, and it need not necessarily interfere with order. I find that the pronunciation in most school classes is very bad. The broad sound of A is never given out full, and in *sol-fa*ing they are very much inclined to pronounce *Sol* as if it were spelled *Saul*.

<sup>1</sup> Mr. Feehan, Sligo Model School.

which has a vulgar effect in *solfeggi*. Whenever this occurs, it should be corrected.

I find very little attention paid to piano or pianissimo passages in school singing, and yet it is only by attention to those little niceties that you can really cultivate a taste for music in its proper sense. To teach this in the simplest manner, we will take 'God save the Queen' as an illustration.

Let the class sing the first two verses in their ordinary manner, which is generally *forte*; then let them sing the second two verses *pianissimo*, or half the class may sing, the others not joining in until the last verse; the fifth verse should be sung *piano*, and the concluding verse *fortissimo*, by the whole class. This would produce an effect which the children could not fail to appreciate, and would show them at once what you required of them.

**School songs.** I need not enter further into this subject, except to say that in the choice of school songs nothing but what is really excellent should be admitted. It is not enough that the words of a song are good or by a celebrated writer; if the air is commonplace, so far from improving the taste of the children, it will injure it; and really some of the school songs published as musical compositions are exceedingly discreditable. They are very often taught by ear also; a most objectionable plan, and only fit for infant schools. No song should be taught except from the notes, and to sing at sight should be made an object of emulation amongst the class. Where singing in parts has been introduced, the teacher should remember that the voices of children are an octave higher than those of men, and the parts entrusted to them should be those specially written for such voices. A very common mistake in schools, where four-part music is attempted, is to have the *tenor part sung by children*; and I have frequently heard 'Has Sorrow thy Young Days Shaded,' as arranged by Stevenson, for two voices, treble and tenor, so completely metamorphosed in this way that the melody was quite indistinguishable. The employment of the treble clef in all the parts excepting the bass leads to this very serious error; but it may be easily obviated by a study of the section of 'Hullah's Manual' treating of the subject.



# APPROVED SCHOOL-BOOKS

By the Rev. JOHN HUNTER, M.A.

**SELECT PLAYS of SHAKSPEARE**, with Explanatory and Illustrative Notes, Critical Remarks, and other Aids to a thorough understanding of each Drama. Edited for the use of Schools and Pupils preparing for Examination ..... 12mo. ONE SHILLING each Play.

RICHARD II.  
HENRY VIII.  
JULIUS CÆSAR.

AS YOU LIKE IT.  
MEROBANT of VENICE.  
The TEMPEST.  
HAMLET.

KING LEAR.  
MACBETH.  
OTHELLO.

**BOOKS I. and II. of MILTON'S PARADISE LOST**: with a Prose Translation or Paraphrase, the Parsing of the more Difficult Words, Specimens of Analysis, and numerous Illustrative Notes, for the use of Candidates..... 12mo. price 1s. 6d. each Book.

**EXAMINATION-QUESTIONS** on the FIRST TWO BOOKS of MILTON'S *PARADISE LOST*, and on SHAKSPEARE'S *MEROBANT of VENICE*, for the use of Middle-Class Candidates ..... 12mo. 1s.

**MILTON'S COMUS, L'ALLEGRO, and IL PENSE-ROSO**, with numerous Notes, critical, illustrative, and explanatory: adapted for use in Training Colleges and Schools ..... 12mo. 1s. 6d.

**EXERCISES in ENGLISH PARSING**, Progressively arranged and adapted to the Author's *Text-Book of English Grammar*; with Questions suggesting a Course of Oral Instruction for Junior Pupils. Tenth Edition. .... 12mo. 6d.

**PARAPHRASING and ANALYSIS of SENTENCES**, simplified for the use of Schools, forming a Manual of Instruction and Exercise for the use of Students, Teachers, &c. .... 12mo. 1s. 3d.—KRY, 1s. 3d.

**SCHOOL MANUAL of LETTER WRITING**: Containing numerous Models of Letters on Commercial and other subjects; with Exercises in Epistolary Composition, Rules of Punctuation, Explanations of Abbreviated Titles, Commercial Terms, &c. Second Edition ..... 12mo. 1s. 6d.

**INTRODUCTION to the WRITING of PRECIS or DIGESTS**, as applicable to Narratives of Facts or Historical Events, Correspondence, Evidence, Official Documents, and General Composition: with numerous Examples and Exercises. Fourth Edition..... 12mo. 2s.—KRY, 1s.

**BACON'S ADVANCEMENT of LEARNING**, Annotated Summary of Books I. and II. with numerous Extracts from the Work and Specimens of Examination-Questions..... 12mo. 2s.

**JOHNSON'S RASSELAS**, with Introductory Remarks, Explanatory and Grammatical Annotations, Specimens of Interrogative Lessons, Answers to Examination-Questions, &c. .... 12mo. 2s. 6d.

**TEXT-BOOK of ENGLISH GRAMMAR**: a Treatise on the Etymology and Syntax of the English Language; including Exercises in Parsing and Punctuation: an Etymological Vocabulary of Grammatical Terms, and a copious List of the principal Works on English Grammar. New Edition; and thoroughly Revised ..... 12mo. 2s. 6d.

London: LONGMANS and CO. Paternoster Row.



**EXERCISES in the FIRST FOUR RULES of ARITHMETIC**, constructed for the Application of New Artificial Tests, by which the Teacher may expeditiously ascertain the Correctness of the Results. Third Edition.....12mo. 6d.

**SOLUTIONS of QUESTIONS in ARITHMETIC and BOOK-KEEPING** used in the Civil Service Examinations of 1862, and published in the Appendix to the Eighth Report of the Commissioners: with a SUPPLEMENT containing Examples in Account-States, &c. ....12mo. 1s. 6d.

**MODERN ARITHMETIC: a Treatise adapted for School Work and for Private Study**; containing numerous improvements in aid of the Preparation of Candidates for Public Examinations. 12mo. 3s. 6d.—KRY, price 5s.

**MERCANTILE EXERCISES in ADDITION of MONEY** and in the CALCULATION of PER-CENTAGES; including numerous Examples of a General and Simple Method of treating Per-Centage Problems, with Answers to the Exercises .....12mo. 1s. 3d.

**EXAMINATION-QUESTIONS in BOOK-KEEPING by DOUBLE ENTRY**, preceded by full Directions for the True Stating of Dr. and Cr.; with ANSWERS, providing the means of solving all the Problems and Exercises relating to Account-Books in the Civil Service and other Examination-Papers .....12mo. 2s. 6d.

**HUNTER'S EXAMINATION-QUESTIONS and DIRECTIONS**, as above, separated from the ANSWERS.....12mo. 1s.

**RULED PAPER for the various Forms of Account-Books** required in HUNTER'S Examination-Questions in Book-keeping, 5 sorts, price 1s. 6d. per Quire.

**PROGRESSIVE EXERCISES in BOOK-KEEPING by DOUBLE ENTRY**, including Account-States, Partnership Accounts, Private Journal, and Ledger, &c. ....12mo. 1s. 6d.

**An EASY INTRODUCTION to the HIGHER TREATISES on the CONIC SECTIONS**.....12mo. 3s. 6d.—KRY, 2s.

**EXAMINATION-QUESTIONS on COLENSO'S ELEMENTS of ALGEBRA, PART I.** .....12mo. 2s. 6d.

**ELEMENTS of PLANE TRIGONOMETRY**, for Beginners; with numerous Problems, and Tables of all the Natural Sines, &c. required for the Solution of the Exercises .....18mo. 1s.—KRY, 9d.

**ELEMENTS of MENSURATION**, simplified for the use of Beginners; with numerous Original Problems and Progressive Exercises. New Edition, Revised and Stereotyped .....18mo. 9d.—KRY, 8d.

**TREATISE on LOGARITHMS: with Copious Tables of Selected Logarithms**; explaining simply the Nature and Use of Logarithms and Logarithmic Tables, the Principles and Methods of their Construction, and their Application: with numerous Examples and Exercises .....18mo. 1s.—KRY, 9d.

London: LONGMANS and CO. Paternoster Row.





